

Foreword

Thank you for your purchase.

Please read the Manual carefully prior to the use of the vehicle for the first time. The Manual is applicable to BJ2030 series light-weight off-road vehicles and their derived vehicles. The Manual will help you get familiar with the structure of the vehicle, various functions and modes of use as well as the relevant provisions of the company as soon as possible. The user will lose the right to claim for any losses arising from his use due to the failure to comply with the guiding opinion of the Manual or from the refit without the approval of the company, and any application for warranty will be refused by the service provider authorized by the company. The contents included in the manual will help you understand how to drive and maintain your vehicle correctly, allowing you to fully enjoy the fun of driving.

The Manual aims at providing the user with the guiding instructions relating to use and maintenance of BJ2021 and BJ2030 series light-weight off-road vehicles and their derived vehicles. For specific configuration of the vehicle you purchased, please read your purchase contract for more information. If you have any questions about this car and this manual, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC


In view of our company continuous retrofit and improvement of vehicles, the equipment and performance of subsequent models will be changed without prior attention. Please do not compare the equipment and performance of vehicle purchased by you with those as described in the User Instructions of any other version nor make any requests for supplementary equipment based on the differences between their both. If you have any questions about this car and this manual, please contact the BAIC authorized dealer

Drivers should strictly observe all laws and regulations relating to motor vehicles. The relevant laws and regulations currently in effect have been fully considered and complied with when the Manual is prepared. However, some clauses herein may comply with the latest revised laws and regulations when you purchase the vehicle.

When you resell the vehicle, please keep the manual in the vehicle where the manual is stored and remind the purchaser so that he/she can obtain the relevant information in the manual.

Foreword

Warnings, attentions, tips and some special symbols frequently appear in this manual. Special attention should be paid to these. Ignoring these Warnings may cause personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

 "Warning" means that if you don't follow the instructions during operation, it will probably lead to serious personal injury or even death;

 "Attention" means that dangerous or unsafe operation will cause personal injury or vehicle damage;

 "Tips" gives useful information.

* All the contents with the symbol * indicate that the equipment and its functions referred to are optional parts or functions.

As the company continues to improve all models, please understand that we reserve the right to make changes to any part of the vehicle, equipment or technical specifications at any time. The contents related to the scope of delivery, appearance, performance, size, weight, fuel consumption, specifications and data related to vehicle functions shall be subject to the contents as of the date of printing. Some of the equipment described in this manual may not be available for your vehicle (you may contact the authorized dealer of BAIC for details).

It is not allowed to reprint, copy or translate any part of this manual, copy and store this publication in the public retrieval system, or spread it in electronic, mechanical records or any other form without the written consent from BAIC.

The company solemnly declares that it is fully responsible for the revision, interpretation and explanation of this user manual, and reserves all rights and interests and the right to make changes as stipulated in the copyright law.

BAIC International Development Co., Ltd

July 2020

Table of Contents

1. Safe Operation Instructions	003	3. Drive Guide	169
Safe driving	004	Starting and Driving	170
Seat belt	010	Drive system	188
Airbag System	021	Cruise Control System (Type I)*	189
Child safety	033	Cruise Control System (Type II)*	192
Safety Labels	039	Park Assist System and Back-up rear-view system* ..	195
2. Operating system and equipment	040	Brake System	205
Cabin	041	Driving skills	217
Start and stop the vehicle	097	4. Maintenance	221
Car lights and visual field	117	Safety maintenance	222
Seats and storage facilities	139	Fuel system	225
Accessories and Modifications	157	Interior maintenance	226
A/C system	159	Exterior maintenance	230
Radio navigation entertainment system	168	Engine compartment	237

Contents

Engine oil.....	242	6. Technical data.....	301
Coolant.....	248	Identification number.....	302
Brake fluid	252	Vehicle parameters.....	307
Power steering fluid	255	7. Breakdown Call	315
Battery	257	Breakdown Call.....	316
Windshield washer fluid and wiper blades	261	8 Maintenance information.....	317
Tire.....	264	Maintenance Specifications.....	318
5. Accident Handling.....	272		
Emergency triangle	273		
Spare tire and in-vehicle tool	274		
Fuse replacement	283		
Replace the bulbs.....	295		
Emergency start	295		
Emergent traction.....	298		

1. Safe Operation Instructions

Safe driving	004
Seat belt.....	010
Airbag System.....	021
Child safety	033
Safety Labels	039

Safe driving

General Introduction

Attention

Before driving, the user shall correctly identify the names of the parts of the car; understand the correct use of various switches and know the methods of correct use involving in accelerator pedal, brake pedal, steering wheel, transmission and ABS system.

This section mainly introduces important information, operating instructions, recommendations and safety precautions for safe driving. Please carefully read and follow relevant regulations for the safety of you and your passenger.

Warning

Please be sure to bring this Manual with your car. If you lend or resell your car to other person, please make sure that this Manual is delivered to its new owner.

Adjust front row seats correctly

Before the vehicle is running, all occupants shall make their backrest upright, adjust their backrest and wear their seat belt correctly.

Wear seat belts while driving and riding in vehicles

Seat belts provide the best protection in all types of crashes. Airbags are designed to inflate only in the event of a moderate to severe front collision (within 30 degrees to the left and right of the positive direction), although they can be used to supplement seat belts. In addition, if the safety belt is not fastened before the collision, the driver may be injured when the airbag is activated. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, you must also make sure that you and all passengers wear seat belts correctly.

Properly position all child passenger

Children should be seated properly in the rear seat, not the front seat, for the safest. When children are too young to wear seat belts, they must be properly placed in the child restraint device, and the child lock should be set to the LOCK state.

Special precautions for the hazard of airbags

Airbags will also cause serious or even fatal injuries to occupants sitting too close to them or not properly protected although they can make a protective effect. It is most dangerous to infants, young children and short adults. Please be sure to follow all the instructions in this manual

Do Not Drink and Drive

You shall not drive after drinking because your response speed to environmental changes will be reduced. The more you drink, the slower your response will be. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive.

Control the driving speed

Speeding is the main cause of casualty accident from collision. The faster the speed is, the greater the risk is. Do not ignore the specified maximum speed limit and the safety conditions for speeding during driving.

Ensure the vehicle is in the safety driving state

Tire burst or mechanical failure are extremely dangerous. In order to reduce the possibility of such problems, the tire and vehicle conditions should be checked frequently, and complete the regular maintenance specified in the Maintenance Schedule.

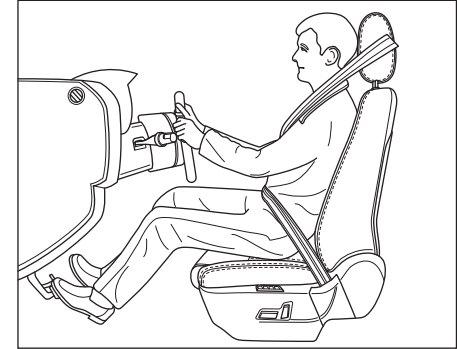
Warning

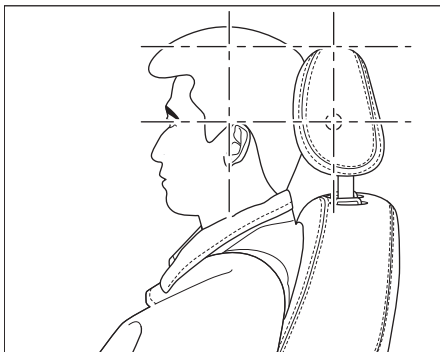
- **When driving, do not distract from external factor, for example, talk to passengers or make a telephone call;**
- **Do not drive your vehicle when your reaction capacity weakens. Medicines, alcohol, drugs and other will undermine your reaction capacity.**
- **Follow the traffic laws and speed limits strictly.**
- **You should always pay attention to reduce the speed, so that the speed is in a running state that matches the road conditions, traffic flow and weather conditions.**

Driver's correct sitting gesture

Driver's correct sitting gesture

Correct driving posture has a direct influence on driving safety and fatigue.





For your and passenger's safety and to reduce injury and death risk during accidents, we recommend driver to operate as follows:

- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the chest and the steering wheel is at least 25cm.
- Move your seat back and forth to a proper position, so that you can make your knee slightly bent to fully step down the accelerator pedal, the brake pedal and clutch pedal.
- Make sure that your elbow is slightly bent to hold the highest point of the steering wheel.

- Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge of the head restraint is as high as the top of the head, and the back of the head is as close to the head restraint as possible.
- Adjust driver's seat backrest to the proper position, and make driver's back and seat backrest well contacted.
- Buckle up correctly.

⚠ Warning

To reduce injury and death risks in accidents, do follow the following precautions strictly:

- **If your chest is too close to the steering wheel, you cannot get effective protection from airbags, and can be seriously injured by an inflating front airbag.**
- **Your hands should always hold the steering wheel outside edge (Location between 9-10 point on the left hand side and between 3-4 point on the right hand side) to ensure you can see all meters and indicators on the combination instrument.**
- **Adjusting the steering wheel until it faces your chest, and confirm that the adjustment mechanism is locked firmly, which can effectively reduce the injury caused by an inflating front airbag.**
- **While driving, do not recline the seat-back too far. Wear the seat belt correctly and keep correct sitting posture to avoid injury caused by emergency braking.**

Front passenger's correct sitting gesture

To ensure front passenger safety and reduce injury and death risks in accidents, the front passengers shall operate as follows:

- The front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible, leave ample space between his/her chest and the dashboard, so as to get the most safety protection by an inflating front airbag.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge of the head restraint is as high as the top of the head, and the back of the head is as close to the head restraint as possible.
- - Adjust the backrest so that the back fits with the seatback.
- Wear the seat belt correctly.
- Keep his/her feet in the foot room in front of the front seat.

Warning

To reduce injury and death risks in accidents, do follow the following precautions strictly:

- **The front passenger shall not be too close to the dashboard, otherwise, the ABRs system will not provide effective protection and may even cause more serious injury to the front passenger.**
- **Do not put your feet on the dashboard, stretch your feet out the window nor sit cross-legged on the seat in the course of driving, you must always keep your feet staying in the foot space, otherwise, it is vulnerable for you to injure in case of emergency braking or an accident.**
- **While driving, do not recline the seat-back too far. Wear the seat belt correctly and keep correct sitting posture to avoid injury caused by emergency braking or an accident..**

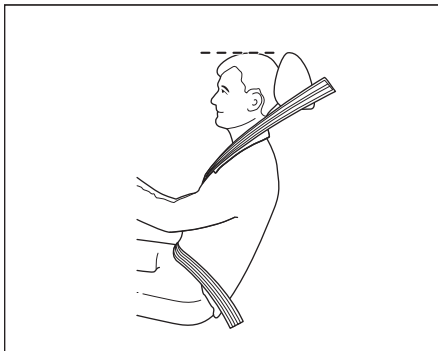
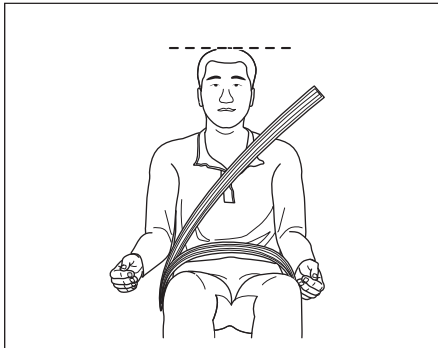
Rear row passenger's correct sitting gesture

For the safety of rear seat passengers, to reduce the risk of accidental injuries and deaths, have rear seat passengers do the following:

- Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge of the head restraint is as high as the top of the head, and the back of the head is as close to the head restraint as possible.
- Sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Keep his/her feet in the foot room in front of the rear sea and on the floor.
- Wear the seat belt correctly.
- When carrying young passenger, related regulations must be followed to take proper protection measures.

1

Adjust head restraint correctly



Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge of the head restraint is as high as the top of the head, and the back of the head is

as close to the head restraint as possible.

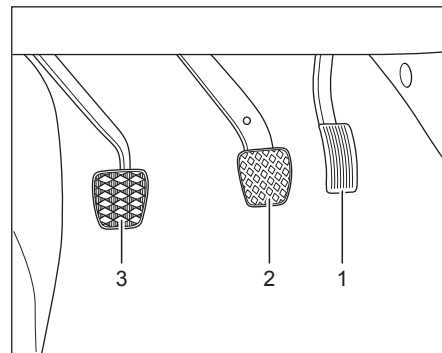
Warning

In case of driving under the condition that the headrest is removed or is improperly adjusted, the occupant may be highly vulnerable to serious injury or even death in case of emergency braking or an accident. To reduce injury and death risks in accidents, do follow the following precautions strictly:

- The head restraints must always be in their mounting positions and adjusted correctly.
- All the passenger must adjust their head restraints to their correct positions according to their own body types. The upper edge of the headrest must be as high as possible with the top of the head, and the back of the head must be as close to the headrest as possible.
- Do not adjust your headrest in the course of driving, if you feel that your headrest needs to be adjusted while driving, you shall stop driving immediately, adjust it to a correct position and then start to drive.

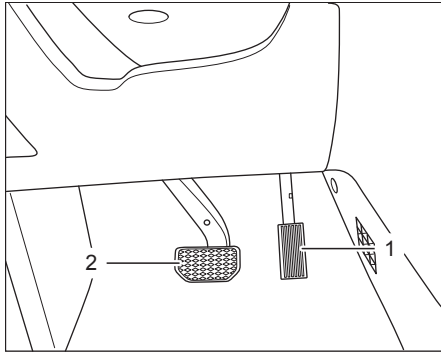
Pedal area

Equipped with manual transmission models



1. Accelerator pedal
2. Brake pedal
3. Clutch pedal

Equipped with auto-transmission models



1. Accelerator pedal
2. Brake pedal

When the vehicle is running, it must be ensured that all pedals can be pressed to the bottom without any obstacle and return automatically.

When the brake system fails, it may be necessary to apply more pedal force on the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.

Warning

If being obstructed, the pedal is easy to cause serious accidents and even damage to personnel.

Do not store any items in the driver's side footwell as items may slip into the pedal area and obstruct pedal movement. Once the driver cannot operate the brake pedal in case of emergency braking or an emergency, it is very easy to cause an accident.

Driver's pedal mat

The foot pad should be fixed in the footwell, and cannot interfere with the pedal movement.

Warning

- **Make sure the foot pedal pad is fixed in the footwell securely.**
- **Do not lay other mat or covering on the foot pad installed in place. Doing so can shrink the pedal travel, hindering the pedal movement.**
- **After cleaning the foot pedal pad removed from the vehicle, be sure to re-fix it during re-installation.**

Seat belt

General

Life is paramount, please wear your seat belt correctly!

The chapter has introduced that how to use the safety belt correctly can significantly reduce the risk of injury.

- Wear a seat belt in accordance with the requirements described in this manual.
- Make sure that the seat belts get ready and have no damage.

Warning

To reduce injury and death risks in accidents, do follow the following precautions strictly:

- To wear your safety belt incorrectly or not wear your safety belt will increase the risk of serious injury.
- To wear your safety belt correctly may reduce the risk of serious injury in case of emergency braking and an accident. For the sake of safety, be sure you and your passengers wear seat belts properly as long as the vehicle is moving.

Warning

- Be sure the pregnant women or the disabled wear seat belts properly. If not wearing seat belts properly, these passengers may also be seriously hurt. The best way to protect an unborn baby is to protect the mother throughout pregnancy.
- The protective effect of seat belt can be reached only when it is worn correctly. Failure or incorrect wearing of seat belts will increase the risk of injury and death.
- Make sure to wear your safety belt prior to every driving and so do the passenger in the front and row seats even in urban traffic, so as to keep you and your passenger safe.
- Two people (including children) should NEVER use the same seat belt. If you wear your seat belt while you hold your child on your lap, it is very dangerous.

 Warning

- Do not loosen your fastened safety belt in the course of driving.
- The safety belt cannot go by any fragile objects(for example, glasses and ballpoint pens) , because doing like that may result in injury.
- The seat belt tab must be correctly inserted into the buckle and locked. Wearing the seat belt incorrectly will affect its protective effect.
- When you wear the safety belt, you shall take off your loose and heavy clothes (for example, a coat), so as to avoid affecting the fit of the safety belt with your body and its protective function.
- The safety belt must be always kept clean, since a severely dirty safety belt may affect the re-winding function of the automatic re-winder.

 Warning

- Even a pregnant women shall also wear a safety belt at all times. simultaneously, the seat belt must fit down to the hip as much as possible to prevent pressure from being applied to the lower abdomen.
- Pregnant women should sit straight behind and away from the steering wheel or dashboard as far as possible, so as to reduce the injury to pregnant women and fetuses caused by accidents or airbag triggering.
- If an occupant does not wear his safety belt correctly, the safety belt will not play a corresponding protective role.
- The latch socket must not be blocked with paper or the like; otherwise, the latch cannot be inserted into the lock catch.

 Warning

- Serious injury can occur in the event of an accident if the seatbelt is loose or cracked, automatic retractors or locking element is damaged. Therefore, all safety belt components should be checked regularly.
- Do not repair, adjust, install and remove the explosive pre-tightening device of the seat belt or the components on the seat belt by yourself. The seat belt shall not be modified in any way. The components of safety belt can be disassembled and installed only by a BAIC franchised shop.
- The safety belt used and deformed due to stretch at the time of incident must be replaced by a BAIC franchised shop, and must be also replaced even if there is no obvious deformation in appearance. In addition, be sure to check the seat belt anchor.

1

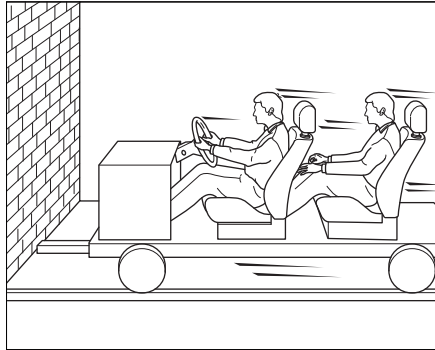
Other parts of this chapter will explain in more detail how to maximize your safety.

However, note that it is impossible to completely avoid casualties in a serious collision even if the seat belt is correctly worn and the airbag has been deployed.

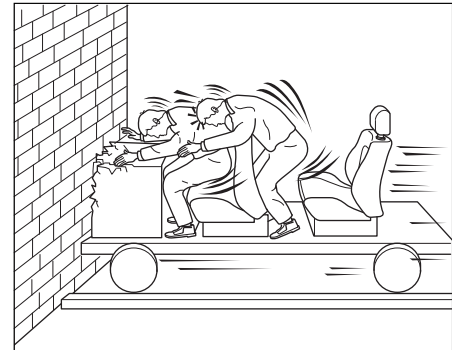
Why always wear seat belt

Seat belt can reduce impact injury of the passenger as much as possible by reducing passenger's forward movement inertia when a front collision of the car occurs.

Physical principles of frontal collision



While driving, both the vehicle and the passenger have energy (kinetic energy) which depends on the vehicle speed and the passenger' mass. The larger the vehicle speed and the mass, the more the energy upon impact. In which, the vehicle speed is decisive. For example, the released kinetic energy at 50km/h is 5 times that at 25km/h.

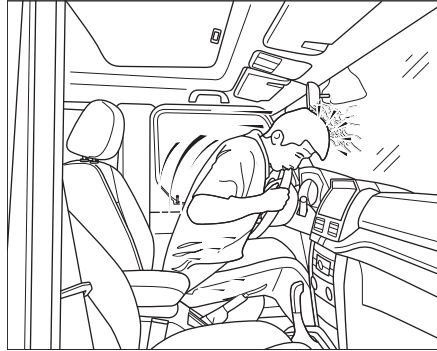


The passenger without seat belts are not "combined" with the vehicle, and still move forward at the speed before the collision during decelerating in the event of a frontal collision. The principle of collision physics described in the example not only applies to frontal collision of the vehicle but also to all the types of other vehicle collisions.

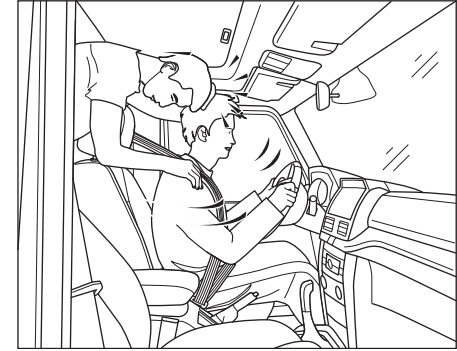
Consequences for driver's and passenger's unbelt Warning light

Many people believe that in the event of a mild collision, they can control their body with their own hands to avoid injury. This is a wrong view!

During a crash, the driver and passenger's unbelted seat belts still move forward at the speed before the crash due to inertia, but the vehicle does not.



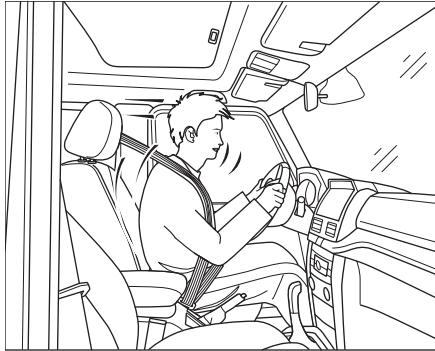
Even if the car is at low speed, the force exerted on human body, when a collision occurs, is big, and the passenger can control his own body by hands. The unrestrained passengers will be thrown forward and injured once colliding with other articles in the car.



Passengers in rear seats also must buckle up correctly, otherwise, they may be thrown forward fiercely in an accident. The passengers who do not buckle up will not only hurt themselves but also hurt the other passengers in the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

- **Do not get your body under control by hand. Doing so can raise the chance of being seriously injured.**
- **Airbags can never replace seat belts. It is necessary to wear seat belts correctly whether the vehicle equipped with airbags or not.**
- **The rear seat passengers must wear the seat belts properly as well.**



Wearing the seat belts properly can restrain the driver and passengers in the desired positions to avoid injury. Wearing seat belts correctly can prevent drivers and passengers from losing control and being thrown out.

Seat belt can absorb most kinetic energy produced by collision. Besides, the vehicle anti-collision area and other passive safety systems can also absorb the energy produced by collision and assist seat belt to further reduce the potential injuries to passengers.

⚠ Warning

- **Make sure seat belts are in place and positioned properly.**
- **Two people should never use the same seat belt. Never let two children use the same seat belt.**
- **While driving, always keep a correct sitting position and wear a seat belt properly. Do not unfasten your seat belt until the vehicle stops to avoid unintentional injury.**
- **Always prevent the seat belts from being damaged or stuck or rubbing sharp edges.**
- **To wear your seat belt properly, try not to wear loose and bulky clothing as far as possible (if you have worn one, take off it.) to ensure the seat belt to fit your body.**
- **Keep the seat belt system clean and in good condition. Never get foreign matter or liquid into the buckles.**
- **Never remove and maintain the seat belts by yourself.**

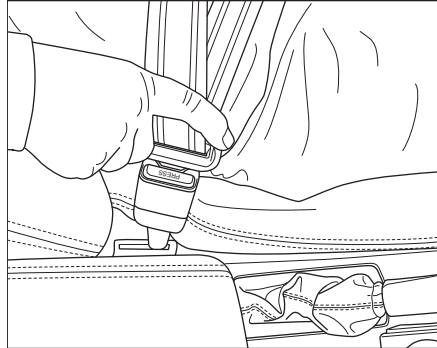
Unfastened seat belt Warning light



When the ignition key is turned to the "on" position or the start / stop button is in the "run" mode, if the driver or co driver does not wear the safety belt, and drives his vehicle at a velocity of more than 25km/h or at a velocity of less than 25km/h and when the driving distance is greater than 500 meters or the duration exceeds 60 seconds, the Warning light will be lit and accompanied by an alarm sound. The driver or front passenger shall wear the seat belt, that is, after the seat belt locking bolt is buckled into the seat belt locking buckle, the Warning light will go out.

Buckle up correctly

How to wear front seat belt?



Adjust the front seats and its headrests correctly, pull the safety belt out of the retractor, insert the latch socket of the safety belt into the lock catch and fasten the safety belt, and the latch socket will give a click when locked into the lock catch.

The seat belt length will be automatically adjusted according to your body size and seat position. In case of emergency braking or collision, the tensioner will lock the safety belt. The retractor also locks up if you lean forward too quickly. You can drag out the seat belt slowly and smoothly to fit your body.

The safety belt shall be pulled out after being fully retracted; if the safety belt cannot be pulled out of the retractor, you may first pull the safety belt with force and then loosen it; and, after that, you can pull the safety belt smoothly out of the retractor.

Warning

If the safety belt cannot be pulled out, it is necessary to send it to a BAIC franchised shop for overhauling as soon as possible under the condition that you pay more attention to safe driving.

Wearing rear seat belts



Adjust the headrest of the rear seat according to your height and comfort requirements of the headrest, sit up straight in the rear seat and make the back fit as close as possible to the seatback. Pull out the seat belt from the retractor located on the upper side of the nearest side, insert the tongue of the seat belt into the buckle, fasten the seat belt, and the tongue will click when it is locked in the buckle.

⚠ Warning

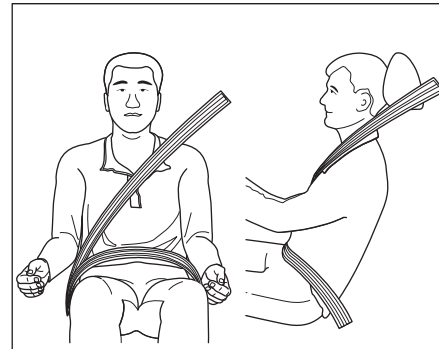
The seat belt not fastened properly cannot provide good protection during a crash, resulting in serious personal injury.

- Not only the passenger is seated correctly, but also the seat belt is worn correctly, in order to give full play to the function of the seat belt.
- Make sure to insert the latch plate into its own buckle.

i Tips

Other precautions for wearing the seat belts of the rear seat are the same as those seat belts for the front seats.

Seat belt wearing part



The seat belt is designed taking full account of the bone structure of the body (such as pelvis, sternum and shoulder).

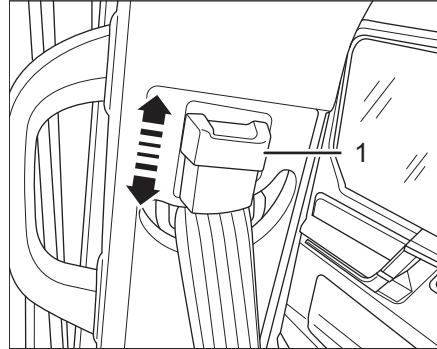
Proper wear of a seat belt can let it play its protective role fully. Improper sitting posture of passengers will reduce the protective effect of safety belt and easily lead to casualties. If the airbag is triggered by an accident, the impact of the airbag may cause serious injury or even casualties to the passengers who sit improperly.

 **Warning**

To get the most protection from the seat belt, be sure to sit upright and well back in the seat and wear the seat belt properly. In the event of an accident, the passenger may be seriously injured if the incorrect seat belt is worn!

- The seat belt must pass through the center of the passenger's shoulder and must not be tied to the neck.
- The safety belt must be flat and close to the passenger's chest.
- The seat belt must pass over the passenger' pelvis rather than the stomach. The seat belt must be flat, close to the pelvis, and tensioned as required.
- If the safety belt is not fastened enough, it will slip to the location of your stomach or neck so that it may do a serious harm to the passenger.

Adjust the seat belt height



Move the seat belt height adjusting device up and down to adjust the seat belt to the correct position according to its own body shape,, so as to make the seat belt fit with your body well.

The adjustment method is as follows:

1. Pinch the seat belt guide part 1-.
2. Move the guiding element down and up to adjust the seat belt to the position that suits your body shape.
3. Loosen seat belt guide part.
4. After adjusting the height of safety belt, you need to pull the safety belt with force to check whether the guiding element is securely locked.

Pregnant woman wearing seat belt

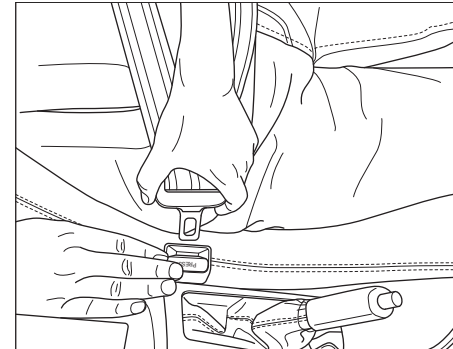


If you are pregnant, the best way to protect you and your fetus is to always wear the seat belt correctly during driving or riding, and keep the belt as low as possible over your hip.

During driving, you should maintain an upright sitting posture and move the driver's seatback to a suitable position to ensure that you can operate the vehicle freely. When sitting in the front seat, you should also move the seat backward as much as possible. This can reduce the risk of injury to the mother and fetus due to a crash or frontal airbag inflation.

At every prenatal check-up, be sure to ask your doctor if you are suitable for driving a vehicle.

Loosen seat belt



1. Press the red button next to the lock catch of safety belt and the latch socket of safety belt will automatically pop up.
2. Hold the latch socket of seat belt and retract it, the retractor will automatically wind back the seat belt.

 Warning

When the vehicle is running, do not unfasten the seat belt. Doing so can cause serious injury or death during a crash.

 Attention

- **It is forbidden to unfasten your seat belt until the car has completely stopped.**
- **When the seat belt is unfastened, after the bolts are unfastened, you need to retract seat belt by guiding with your hands, to prevent passengers from being injured by above metal bolt when the seat belt is fast retracted.**

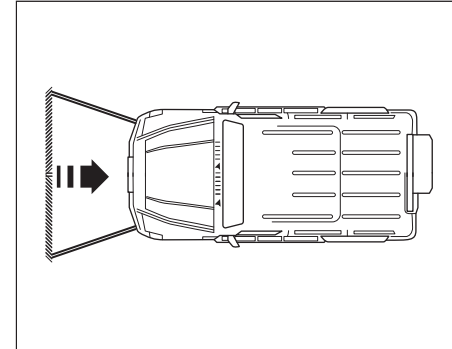
Seat belt retractor

The front-row seat belt in the vehicle is equipped with the blast pretensioning retractor. The sensor activates the belt retractor in serious frontal impact and rear impact. The retractor will retract the belt in the direction of rewinding to slow the forward movement of the passenger.

The explosive retractor can only be used once. In case of minor frontal collision, side or rear collision, rollover and accidents without significant frontal force, the seat belt retractor does not work.

 Attention

- **The seat belt retractor will produce a little smoke when triggered. And this is normal, not a car fire. No need to worry.**
- **The seat belt retractor must be disposed following relevant safety regulations. And authorized dealer of BAIC is familiar with these regulations and may provide you them.**



In case of the following circumstances, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC immediately.

- An accident occurred at the front of the vehicle (The part marked in the figure), but the seat belt retractor did not work.
- Any seat belt tightener or its surrounding area is scratched, broken or otherwise damaged.

1

Recycling and disposal of seat belt retractor

The seat belt retractor is a component of the seat belt system. Any work on the seat belt tensioner or the disassembly and assembly of the seat belt retractor due to the maintenance of other parts must be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC, otherwise the seat belt may be damaged, and the seat belt retractor may not work normally in case of an accident.

The removed seat belt retractor must be disposed following relevant regulations in order to avoid personal injury or environmental pollution. And authorized dealer of BAIC is familiar with these regulations and may provide you them.

Warning

If the safety belt retractor is repaired by a repair shop not authorized by BAIC Motor or professional, or if the safety belt retractor is not used correctly according to the regulations, it will inevitably increase the risk of accident casualties.

- **Do not repair, remove or install seat belts or seat belt retractor components yourself.**
- **Any operations on the seat belt retractor and the seat belt, including the operations required to disassemble and assemble system components due to maintenance of other parts of the vehicle, must be carried out by a BAIC franchised shop.**
- **The seat belt retractor can only be activated once. All seat belt retractor that have been triggered must be replaced.**

Airbag System

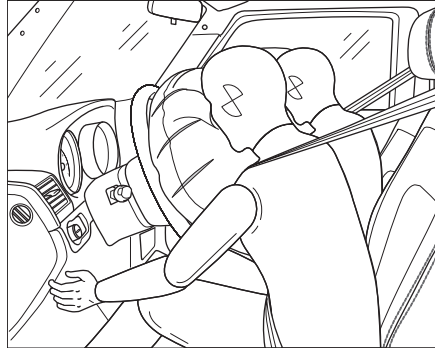
General Introduction

Wearing the seat belts properly can effectively reduce the risk of injury during a crash. To make triggered airbag system perform protective functions fully, driver and passengers shall wear seat belts correctly, adjust driver seat and steering wheel correctly, adjust headrests positions correctly and use suitable child restraint device to protect children in vehicles.

Warning

Dust generated during airbag deployment may irritate skin or eyes, and may also aggravate asthma for some people. After the airbag is deployed in case of an accident, thoroughly wash all exposed skin with warm water and warm soap.

Function of airbags



When the vehicle collides with an obstacle seriously, the ABRS system will quickly open an air-filled cushion to prevent the driver and the passengers from collision injuries due to inertia.

During a severe collision, the airbags will instantly inflate with considerable force. So, to reduce the possibility of injury, the passenger should always sit as far back as practical and sit well back in the seats. If the car has a sharp collision, passengers unfastened seat belt may be thrown away to airbag inflation area, the inflating airbag may cause serious injuries and deaths of passengers, especially the children.

Driver and passengers should keep a max-

imum distance with the front row frontal airbags; thus, the airbag can inflate fully and protect passengers effectively.

The decisive factors of whether the ABRS system is triggered or not are the angle of collision and the magnitude of collision energy when the vehicle has an accident. If the angle of collision and the magnitude of collision energy measured by the control unit are less than the ignition requirements of control unit, the system will not trigger the ABRS system. So even if the vehicle is seriously damaged, it does not mean that the ABRS system shall be triggered.

 Warning

The decisive factor regarding if airbag is triggered is the collision energy when colliding and is relevant to accident type, collision angle, barrier and speed.

Why wear seat belts and maintain correct sitting posture

In order to ensure the best protection after triggering the airbag, you must always wear the seat belt correctly and keep the correct sitting position during driving.

For the safety of you and your passengers, you should pay attention to the following items before driving:

- Always wear seat belts correctly.
- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel correctly.
- Correctly adjust the passenger seat position.
- Adjust headrest correctly

- Keep children in the vehicle safe by a suitable child seat to.

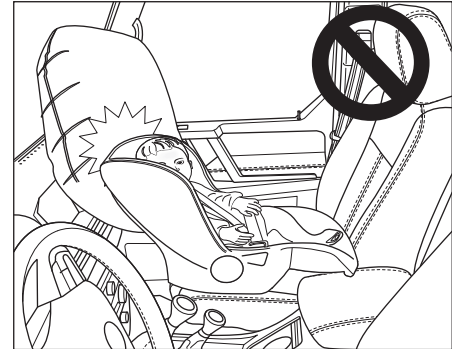
 Warning

The deployment of the airbag is completed at a high speed in an instant. If you have an incorrect sitting posture at this time, it may cause fatal injury. Therefore, it is necessary to ensure that all occupants maintain a correct sitting posture during driving.

In case of emergency braking or collision accident, passenger who have not worn seat belts may be thrown forward to the deployment area of the airbag, which may cause fatal injury to passenger, especially the children.

Keep away from the front of ABRs system as far as possible so that it can provide the best protection when the frontal ABRs system is fully deployed in case of an accident.

The dangers of installing a child seat on the front passenger seat



Forbidden to install a child seat facing away from the driving direction on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the triggered ABRs system of front passenger seat will seriously collide with the child seat, causing a fatal injury to the child.

Airbag Fault Warning light



The Warning light monitors the status of all airbags and seatbelt tensioner in the vehicle, including control units and electrical connections.

Type I*

The airbag malfunction indicator light illuminates for a few seconds and then goes out, indicating that the system is functioning properly. The airbag does not operate when the ignition switch is in the "ACC" position or the start/stop button is in the "OFF" mode.

Type II *

When the Start/Stop button is in "RUN" mode, the Warning light is on for 4-6 seconds and then off, indicating that the system is working properly. When the start/stop button is in "ACC" or "OFF" mode, the airbag does not work.

If the following conditions occur, it means that the airbag system is faulty, and the airbag may not work normally in case of collision. At this time, you must go to the the authorized dealer of BAIC to inspect the vehicle:

1. When the ignition switch is in the "ON" position or the start / stop key is in the "RUN" mode, the airbag fault Warning lamp does not light up.

When the ignition switch is in the "ON" position or the start / stop button is in the "RUN" mode, the airbag fault Warning light is on for several seconds and does not go out.

3. When the vehicle is driving, the airbag failure Warning light is on.

If there is a fault in the system, the airbag will not be able to perform the protection function normally.

Repair, maintenance and scrapping of airbag

The components of the airbag system are installed in different parts of the vehicle. Any work on the airbag system or the disassembly and assembly of airbag system components due to the maintenance of other components must be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC, otherwise the airbag system may be damaged, and cannot normally trigger the airbag or does not trigger the airbag at all in case of an accident.

The seat belt retractor must be disposed following relevant safety regulations. And authorized dealer of BAIC is familiar with these regulations and can provide you with inquiry service.

 Warning

If the maintenance is not carried out by the professional technician of BAIC franchised shop, it will be bound to increase the potential risk of accident casualties. When an accident occurs, the airbag cannot be triggered, or when no accident occurs, the airbag is triggered, which is particularly easy to cause serious injury or even death to drivers and passengers.

- Do not paste or cover anything on the soft plastic surface of the dashboard on the front of the steering wheel and the front passenger side airbag assembly, or make any modification to the above parts.
- Do not install the cup holder or telephone rack and other appliance on the cover lid of the airbag module.
- Do not fix items such as Notepad and mobile phone holder on the windshield above the front passenger side airbag, otherwise they may hurt the personnel in the vehicle once the front airbag triggered.

 Warning

- When cleaning the steering wheel or dashboard, use only a dry cloth or a cloth wet with water, but do not use solvent-containing cleaning agents to clean the surfaces of the dashboard and the airbag assembly cover. Because the solvent will cause the surface of the above components to be loose, once the airbag is triggered, the broken plastic may cause serious injury to the passengers.
- The airbag system can only be triggered once. Any triggered airbag must be replaced.
- Please do not attempt to repair, remove or install components of the airbag system yourself.
- Any work on the airbag or the disassembly and assembly of airbag components due to the maintenance of other vehicle components (e.g. steering wheel) must be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC. Because the authorized dealers of BAIC have been equipped with necessary special tools, maintenance materials and qualified professional technicians.

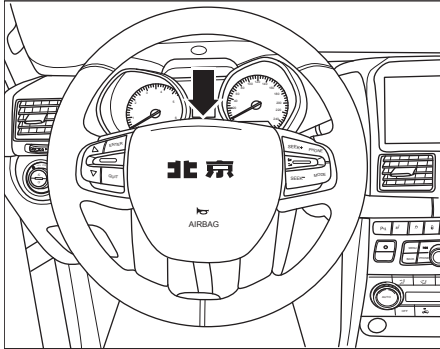
 Warning

- Be sure to check and repair the airbag system at a BAIC dealership.
- Please do not attempt to modify the front bumper or body structure yourself.

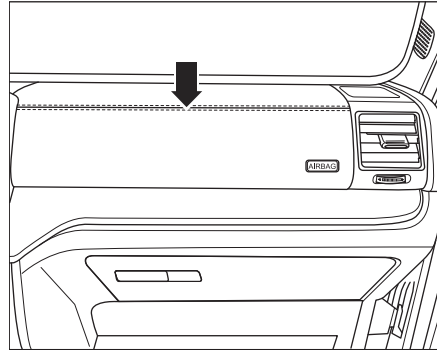
If you want to resell the car, be sure to inform the new owner that the SRS system is installed on the car and the replacement date of the airbag components.

The undeployed airbag is potentially dangerous when disposing of the vehicle. Therefore, before disposing, it must be safely deployed by professionals in a certain environment.

Front row frontal airbag



The driver's airbag is located in the steering wheel and the airbag location is marked "AIRBAG".



The front passenger airbag is installed on the upper instrument panel of the glove box, and the position of the airbag is marked with the word "AIRBAG".

If the front passenger airbag sits correctly and fastens the seat belt correctly, the frontal air bag will provide additional protection for the chest and face areas in case of a serious impact on the vehicle.

The front airbags consists of:

- Electric control and monitoring device.

- Two front airbags with gas generator.
- Airbag failure Warning light located in the display screen in the information center of the combination instrument.

The airbag is monitored by the electronic monitoring system of the airbag control unit. When the ignition switch is in the "ON" position or the start/stop button is in the "RUN" mode, the airbag fault Warning light lights up for about a few seconds and goes out after self-test.

The front airbags supplement the protection offered by lap/shoulder seat belts and help protect the head and chest of the driver and front-row passenger during a severe frontal collision.

The airbag system cannot replace the seat belt, but is an integral part of the passive safety of the complete. Please note that the airbag system is best protected only when the properly worn seat belt and the properly adjusted headrest work together. Therefore, not only because of regulations, but also for safety reasons, seat belts must be worn at all times.

1

Warning

Occupants will be seriously injured when the airbag is deployed if they have not worn the seat belt or worn it improperly even if the front airbag is equipped. Therefore, occupants must wear their seat belts.

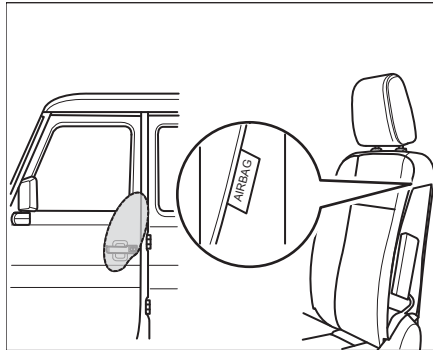
Attention

The deployment and release of the side airbag are completed in a very short time, and can not protect against the second side impact that may occur later.

In order to ensure that the frontal airbag can inflate and deploy normally, there must be no obstructions between the frontal airbag and the occupant.

Attention

Do not place items near or above the in-dashboard airbag assembly above the steering wheel, dashboard and passenger-side glove box. Because when the vehicle has a serious collision enough to cause the airbag to deploy, these objects will fly out and hurt the passengers in the vehicle.

Side airbag

The side airbag is located in the outside backrest cushion of the driver's seat and the passenger's seat respectively, and the label with "AIRBAG" is pasted on the installation position.

The gray area indicates the expansion range of the side airbag.

In the event of a side collision, the side airbag on the accident side of the vehicle will be triggered, thus reducing the risk of injuries to the body parts of the passengers facing the accident side.

Warning

When the airbag is triggered, it will expand rapidly.

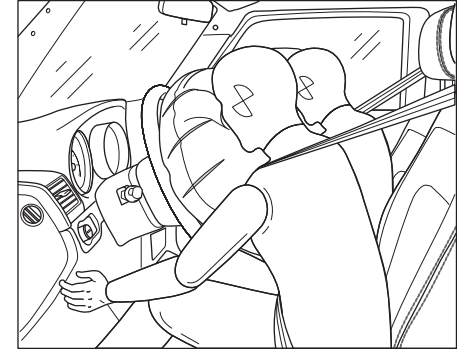
1. Always reserve enough space for the expansion range of the side airbag
2. There shall be no other persons, animals and articles between the passenger on the front seat and the expansion range of the airbag. Please ensure that children and passengers can comply with this regulation.
3. Do not install any accessories on the door.
4. Only seat covers or covers that are specifically approved for use in automobiles may be fitted. Otherwise, the side airbag cannot expand when triggered

Warning

Abnormal operation of the driver's seat and the front passenger's seat may hinder the normal function of the side airbag and cause serious injury.

1. Do not remove the front seat from the vehicle or replace its components.
2. When excessive force is applied to the side of the seat back, the side airbag may not be triggered normally, not at all or accidentally.
3. If the original seat cover or the seam in the area of the side airbag module is damaged, the damaged part must be replaced or repaired at the authorized repair station immediately.

How does the frontal airbag operate



In case of collision, the airbag control unit monitors the deceleration or acceleration caused by the collision to determine whether the front airbag should be deployed.

Whether the frontal airbag works depends not on the driving speed of the vehicle, but on the colliding object, the collision direction and the speed of the vehicle deceleration. Therefore, some minor collisions may cause injury because the front airbag is not deployed. On the contrary, the damage of some relatively small structures will lead to the deployment of frontal airbag.

1

In the event of a severe head-on impact, two frontal ABRs systems and the seat belt will work and provide protection.

Attention

The frontal airbag does not target rear impact, slight frontal impact, or side-impact, nor does it target vehicle capsizing, and it does not work when the vehicle brakes urgently or when driving on bumpy roads or passing through depressions.

Warning

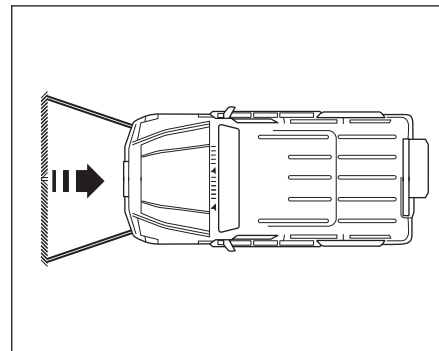
Not wearing a seat belt properly or wrong sitting position can cause serious injury or even death during a crash.

- Before starting driving, make sure you and your passengers wear seat belts properly and sit in correct posture.
- During driving, Please do not let other passengers (children), pets and objects occupy the space between front passenger and airbag. It is forbidden to stick any object on the steering wheel and dashboard surface.
- After the airbag completely inflates, it immediately starts deflating so it won't interfere with your visibility.
- Do not repair, adjust or modify any component of the front airbags without authorization.
- The airbag can only be triggered once. If the airbag is triggered due to an accident, it must be replaced at the authorized dealer of BAIC.

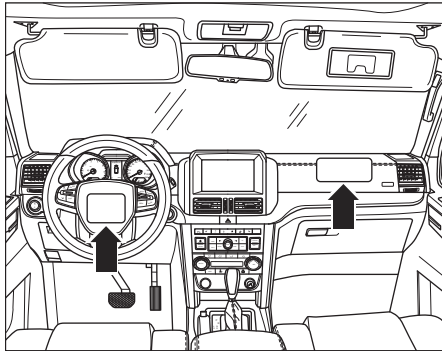
In case of the following circumstances, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC immediately.

The front airbag has been inflated.

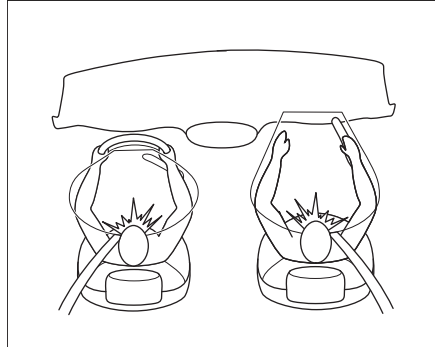
- There is an accident at the front of the vehicle (the part marked in the figure), but the front airbag is not inflated.



- The padding of the steering wheel or the front passenger airbag cover (the area indicated by the arrow in the illustration) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



Airbag Deployment



The deployment of frontal airbag is instantaneous, with great force and great sound. The deployed frontal air bag and seat belt restraint system work together to limit the movement range of the front passenger, thereby reducing the degree of injury to the head and trunk.

Attention

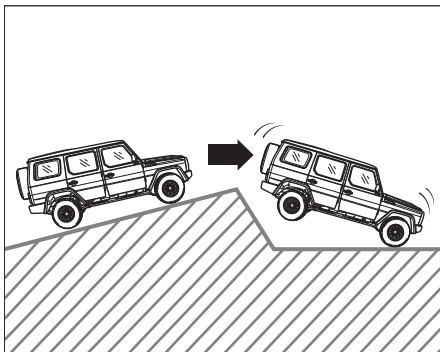
Some parts are hot after the frontal airbag is deployed. Do not touch them before cooling.

The air bag is specially designed to discharge gas under the passenger's inertia forward compression, and gently support passenger's head and upper body. After the accident, the airbag will continue to exhaust and restore a good front view.

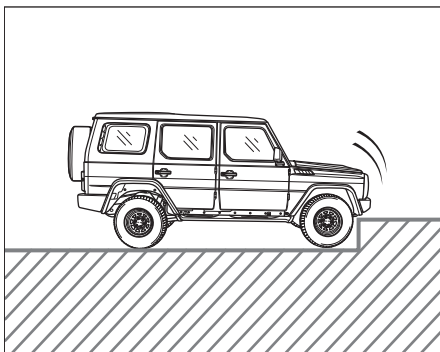
In order to provide timely protection in the event of an accident, the airbag expands at a high speed in an instant. Small smoke and dust will be generated when the airbag is deployed, which is completely normal. Don't think there is a fire in the car.

If the vehicle is subject to a severe impact from the bottom, such as flying over a step, hitting a road shoulder or a hard object, striding over a deep pit or scraping the chassis, even if the vehicle has any slight deformation, but when the deceleration measured exceeds the set threshold due to the impact on the greater rigid vehicle components, the ABS system may also deploy.

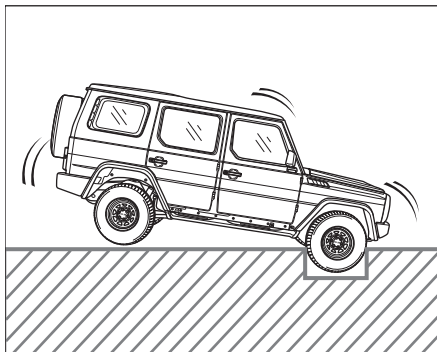
1



Vehicle falling or jumping over steps



Impact on shoulder or hard object



Drive a vehicle across a deep pit

Seating position

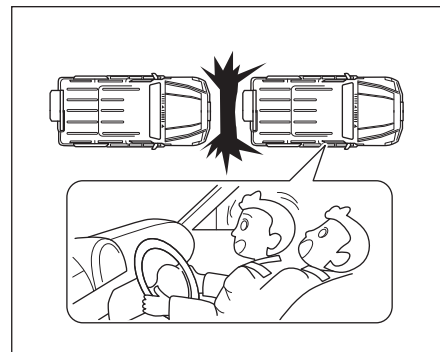
In order to ensure the best protection function in case of severe impact, the frontal airbag must be deployed within a certain period of time.

If the occupant is too close to the front air bag, the inflating front air bag can cause facial chafing or other injuries.

Warning

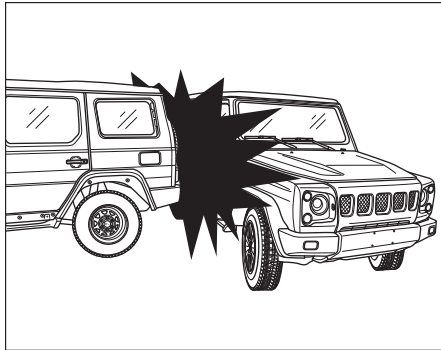
In order to reduce the damage caused by inflating and deploying the front airbag, you must always wear your seat belt. In addition, the driver and front passengers must adjust their seat positions to leave enough distance between the personnel and the front airbag.

Airbag non-deployment conditions



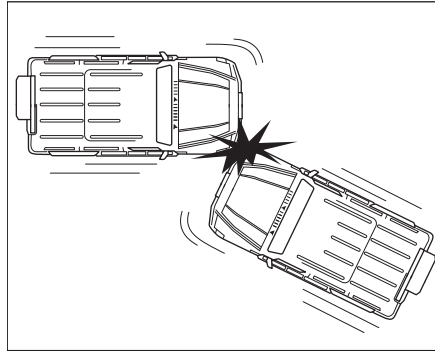
Rear-end collision of vehicle

When working, the front airbag ejects and deploys from the front of the driver's side or the passenger's side. The frontal airbags may not work in case of rear end collision or collision, in which the passengers move towards the backrest under the action of inertial force, and the airbags play no protective effect on the passengers .



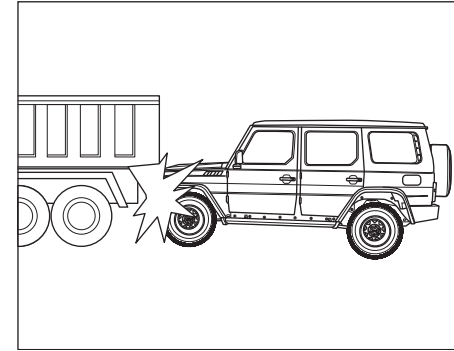
Side collision

When a side impact occurs, the passengers move towards the impacted direction, so the airbag deployed from the front cannot protect the passengers, and the frontal airbag may not work at this time.



Oblique collision (angular collision)

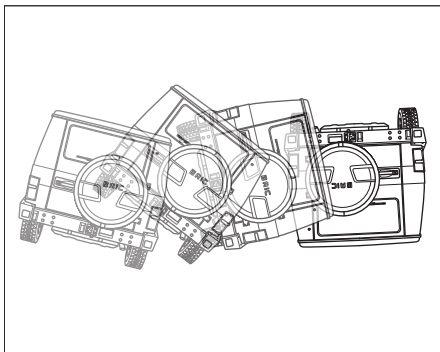
In the event of an inclined plane collision, the collision force will bring the passenger in a direction where the frontal ABRS system cannot provide any additional protection, and the frontal ABRS system will not work at that time.



Rear-end collision

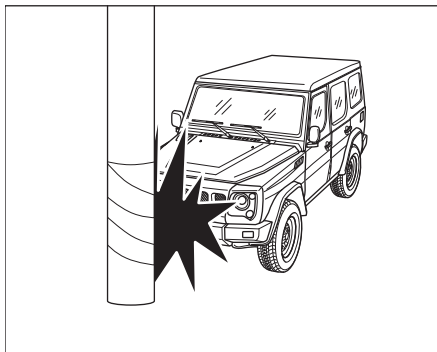
In case of collision accident, the driver instinctively makes emergency braking, and then the diving phenomenon of sinking in front of the vehicle body occurs. The front airbags may not work in case of subduction collision or rear end collision, in which the front of the vehicle inserts under the other vehicle, and the impact energy received by the collision sensor is not large.

1



Rollover accident

The frontal ABRS system does not deploy in a rollover accident, because the passenger cannot be properly protected even if the ABRS system deploys.



Special Collision

The front airbags may not work if the vehicle collides with some object, such as a pole or tree, in which the collision point is at one place and not all of the collision energy is transferred to the sensors.

Attention

In many types of accidents, for example, the rear of the vehicle is impacted or the secondary and tertiary collision in the serial collision accident, or the low-speed collision, etc. even if the airbag is deployed, it cannot provide additional protection.

Child safety

General Introduction

According to accident statistics, children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in the rear seat rather than the front seat.

We recommend that any child who is younger than 12 years old or under 1.5 meters tall shall be seated in the rear seat. Based on the age, height and weight, use the child seat or the existing seat belt to ensure safety of the child seated in the rear seat. For the sake of safety, the child seat should be installed in the rear seat just behind the front passenger's seat.

For the installation and use of child seats, follow the regulations and the seat manufacturer's instructions.

We recommend that you put the instruction manual of the child seat together with this manual and carry it with your car.

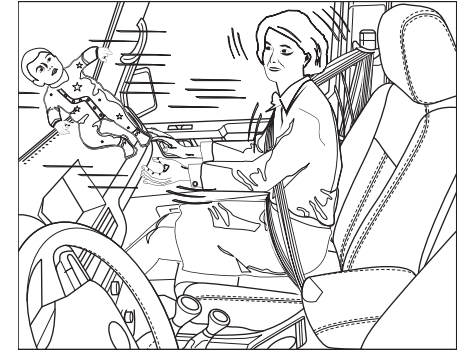
When more than one child crew must be carried

There are three seats in the rear row of your vehicle, that can be properly used to place the child passenger.

When there are more than three child passenger in your vehicle:

- If a child has grown up to wear a safety belt, the oldest child may be placed in the front seat (please make a safe ride according to the relevant national traffic rules).
- Move the vehicle seat as backward as possible.
- Let the child sit straight against the back of the chair.
- Check whether it is worn correctly and fasten the seat belt.

Safety instructions for child seats



Do not hold infants in your arms when driving, otherwise, infants may die.

Proper use of a child seat can reduce risk of injury significantly. As the driver, you should be responsible for the safety of children in your vehicle:

- Select an appropriate child seat and use it properly.
- Pay attention to the child seat manufacturer's regulations and ensure that the seat belt is worn correctly.

1

- Do not distract your attention due to the children in your vehicle when driving.
- Take a rest halfway after driving for a long time, once every two hours at least.

 **Warning**

- **Proper wear of a seat belt can let it play its protective role fully.**
- **Do not hold children or infants during driving, otherwise they may be injured or killed in the event of an accident.**
- **Only a child seat of right size can provide effective protection to the child.**
- **Do not leave children alone in a vehicle. Because of big climate difference from place to place, the in-vehicle temperature may become extremely low or high. A child left alone in a vehicle could be hurt fatally.**

- **Without a child restraint system, do not let a child with a height below 1.5m use the conventional seat belt in the vehicle. Doing so can cause the child's stomach or neck to be injured during emergency braking or in a crash.**
- **Never let two children use the same child seat.**
- **Be sure to read and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions and precautions.**
- **Follow the relevant laws and regulations to install and use a child seat. The national laws and regulations shall prevail.**



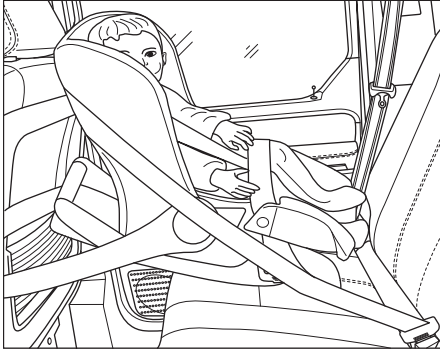
Do not place the child seat facing away from the driving direction on the front passenger seat of the vehicle. Otherwise, when the air bag inflates, it will impact the back of the child protection device with great force, throwing the child toward the door, roof or seat back, resulting in serious injury or even death of the child.

Rear-facing child restraint systems must not be used on seats that are protected by frontal airbags (when activated)!

Children Seat

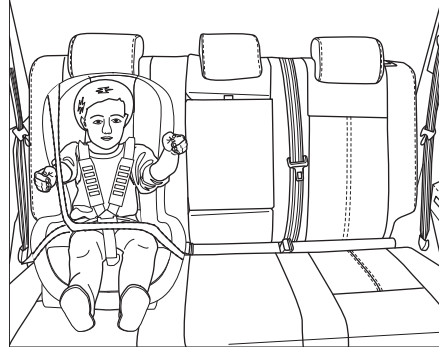
Child Seat Classification (for reference only) :

Class 0/0+ child seat



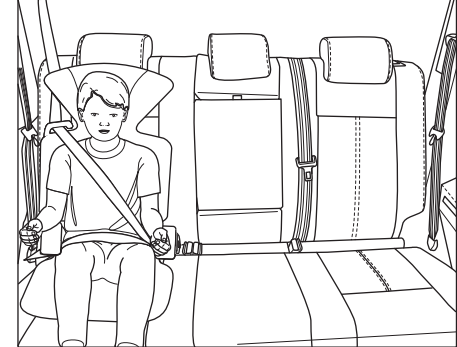
For restraining an infant under 18 months and 13 kg, it is better to use the 0/0+ grade child seat which can be adjusted to the lie-down position.

Class 1 child seat



For infants or toddlers under the age of 4 who weigh between 9-18 kg, a class 1 child seat with a seat belt is best.

Class 2 child seat



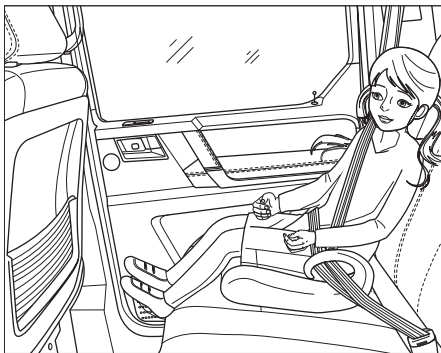
For children under the age of 7 weighing between 15-25 kg, it is best to use a three-point seat belt with a class 1 child seat.

1

 Warning

- The shoulder belt should fit over the collarbone and across the chest. Never allow the shoulder belt to cross the neck. Make sure that the belt fits the body properly.
- Lap belt must cross the hip instead of the belly; it shall be fitted stably and be adjusted when necessary.

Class 3 child seat



For restraining a child over 7 years of age and between 22 kg and 36 kg, with a height below 1.5 m, it is better to use the three-point seat belt together with the class

3 child seat.

 Warning

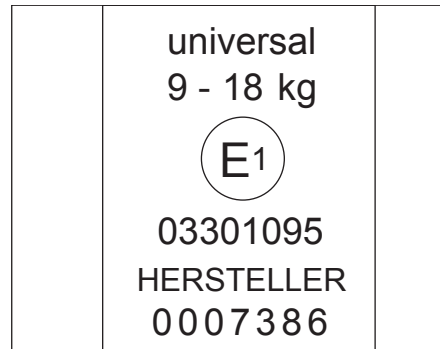
- The shoulder belt should fit over the collarbone and across the chest. Never allow the shoulder belt to cross the neck. Make sure that the belt fits the body properly.
- Lap belt must cross the hip instead of the belly; it shall be fitted stably and be adjusted when necessary.

 Tips

For a child with a height more than 1.5 m, he/she can use the existing seat belt. No child seat is needed.

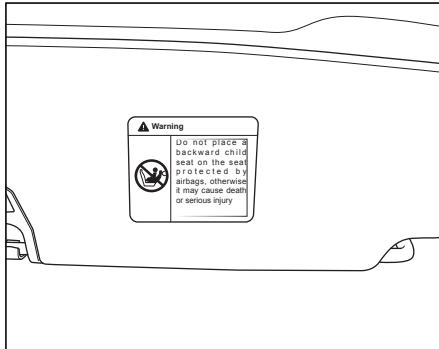
Child seat inspection mark

Child seats that have been inspected to the ECE-R standard have an ECE-R 44 inspection mark on the seat.



Install the child seat correctly

Before installing child seat in the rear row seat, adjust the front row seat to proper position according to child seat size and child body size; in case of a collision or emergency braking, the child who sits in the rear row seat will not be injured by the hard objects in the vehicle. In addition, when child sits in the rear row seat, the child will be injured by the inflated airbags. Never hold an infant or child on your lap.



Warning labels are attached to the front and back sides of the sun visor on the passenger side of the vehicle to remind the danger of airbags. Read these labels carefully and follow their instructions.

Warning

The seat belt of this car does not provide a child seat binding function. Do not use the seat belt to bind the child seat.

Installing an child seat with ISOFIX

The child seats equipped with ISOFIX fixture system can be installed on the seats of the vehicle with the appropriate devices in a quick, easy and safe manner.

Be sure to remove and install the child seats in accordance with the manufacturer's Instructions.

Installation

1. Insert the child seat onto the ISOFIX retaining ring until the child seat is firmly engaged with an engaging sound.
2. Draw two sides of child seat to check whether the child seat is installed firmly.

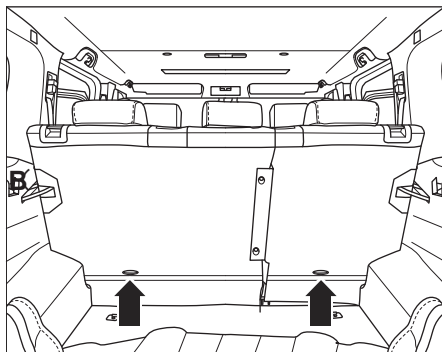
Warning

- **The retaining ring can only be used to connect the ISOFIX child seat.**
- **Do not connect the fastening belt, object or child seat other than ISOFIX one or any other to the retaining rings. Otherwise, it is very easy to cause casualty accidents.**

1

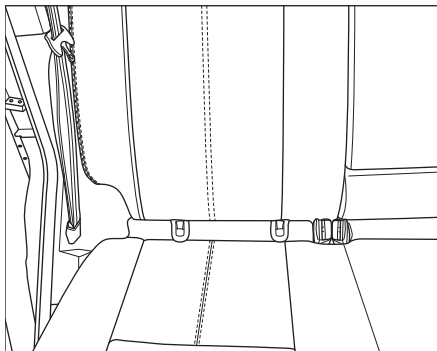
Install child seat with ISOFIX system and top fastening cord

Assemble



1. Push the head restraint behind the child seat slightly upward.
2. Pass the top tether through the head restraint, or place the top tether on both sides of the head restraint according to the structure of the child seat, and then pull the top tether rearward to the rear seat back.

3. Press the ISOFIX child seat onto the retaining ring at the front of the seat until the child seat engages audibly.



4. Draw two sides of child seat to check whether the child seat is installed firmly.
5. Fasten top fastening rope ISOFIX retaining ring (The position of the arrow shown in the figure) and top fastening rope hook on rear seat back.
6. Tighten the top fastening rope so that the child seat is close to the rear-row seat back.

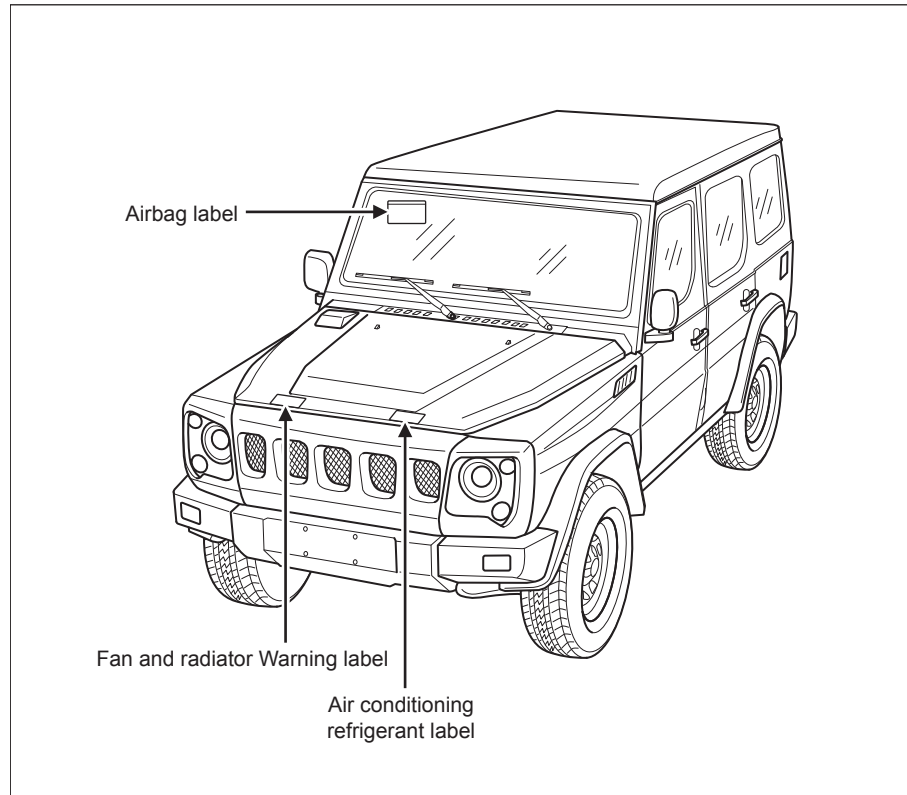
⚠ Warning

- The ISOFIX retaining ring on the rear seat back can only be used for ISOFIX systems.
- Do not connect the fastening belt, object or child seat other than ISOFIX one or any other to the retaining rings.
- Any other ropes (for example, the fastening rope for luggage) shall not occupy the retaining loop, except that only one top fastening rope may be connected to the rear retaining loop of the back of the rear seat.

Safety Labels

The position of the safety label is as shown in the figure. The airbag label is attached to the front and back sides of the sun visor on the passenger side, and the relevant information of the airbag can be read when the sun visor is opened or closed. Air conditioning refrigerant label, fan and radiator Warning label can be seen only after the engine compartment cover is opened.

These safety labels are used to alert you to the potential danger of causing serious injury. Please read these labels carefully. If the label falls off or is blurred, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC in time for replacement.



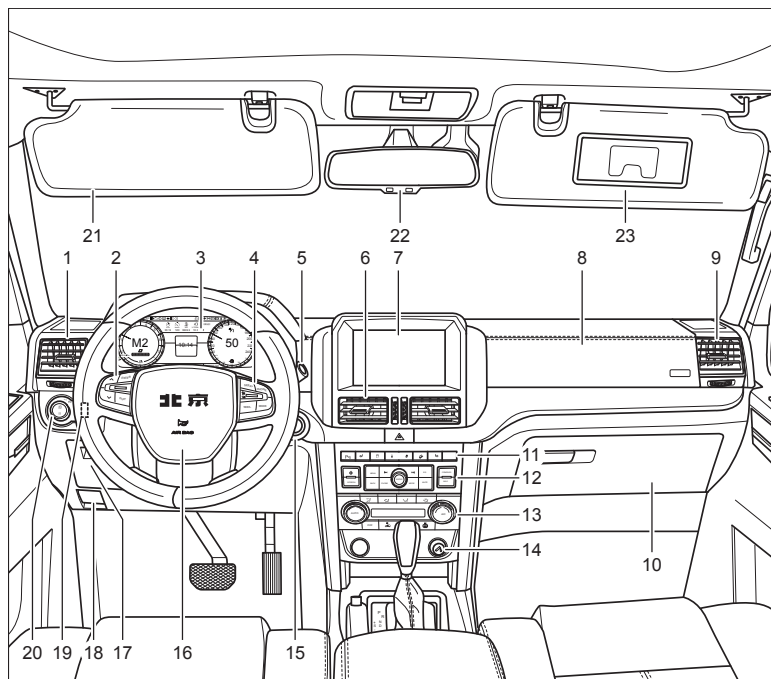
2. Operating system and equipment

Cabin	041
Start and stop the vehicle.....	097
Car lights and visual field.....	117
Seats and storage facilities.....	139
Accessories and Modifications	157
A/C system	159
Radio navigation entertainment system.....	168

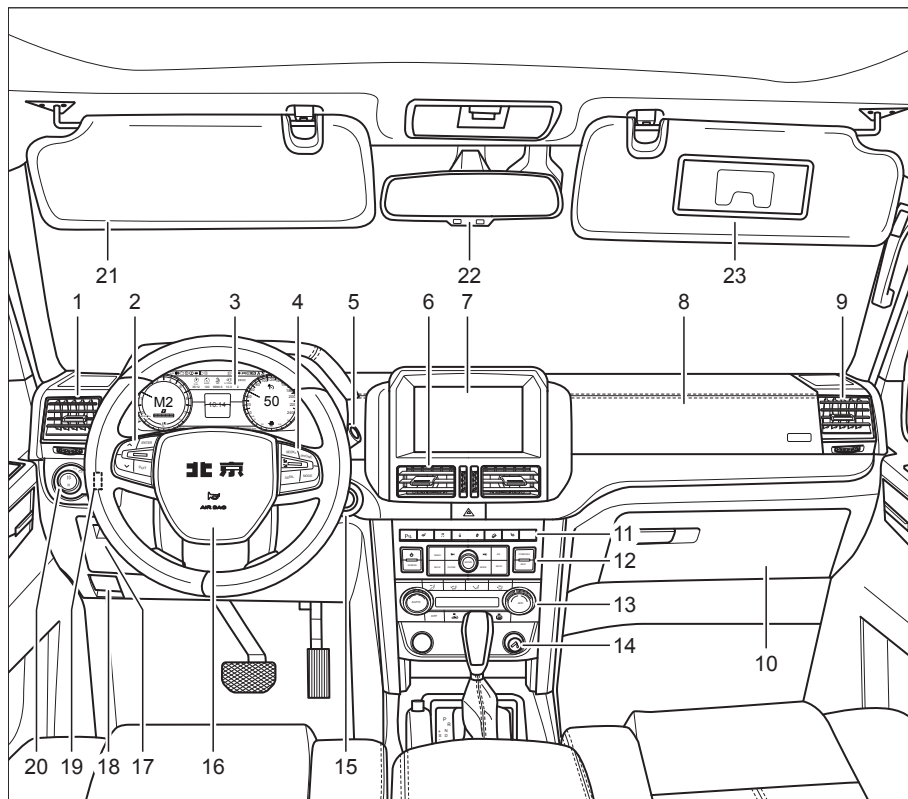
Note: The numerical values shown in the pictures of this chapter are examples but not represent the actual conditions of the vehicle

Cabin

General layout for Instrument and control mechanism (type I)

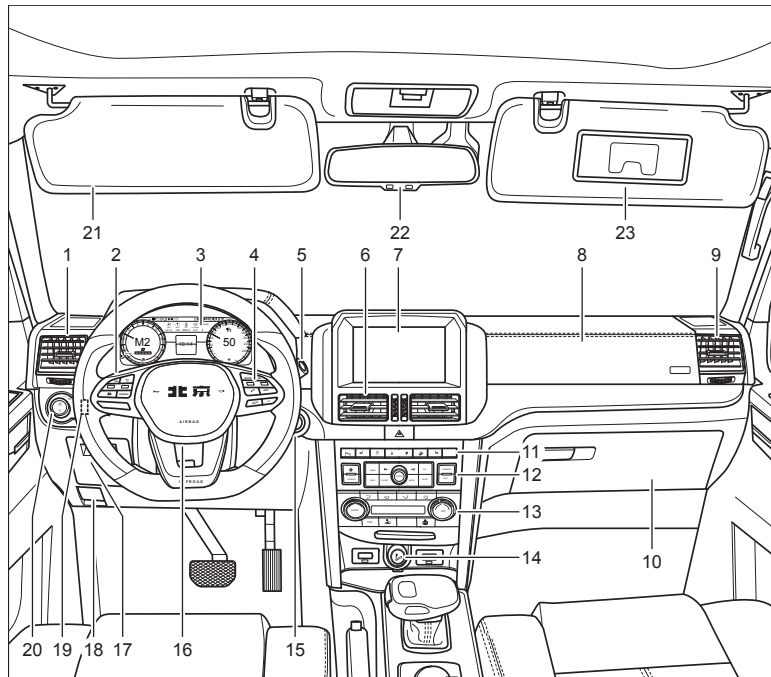


1. Left side air outlet
2. Left steering wheel multi-function button (subject to actual vehicle equipment)
3. Combination instrument
4. Right steering wheel multi-function button (subject to actual vehicle equipment)
5. Right multi-function combination switch
6. Central air vent
7. Radio navigation entertainment system display
8. Front passenger frontal airbag
9. Right air outlet
10. Glove box
11. auxiliary fascia console multi-function operation buttons
12. Radio navigation entertainment system operation panel

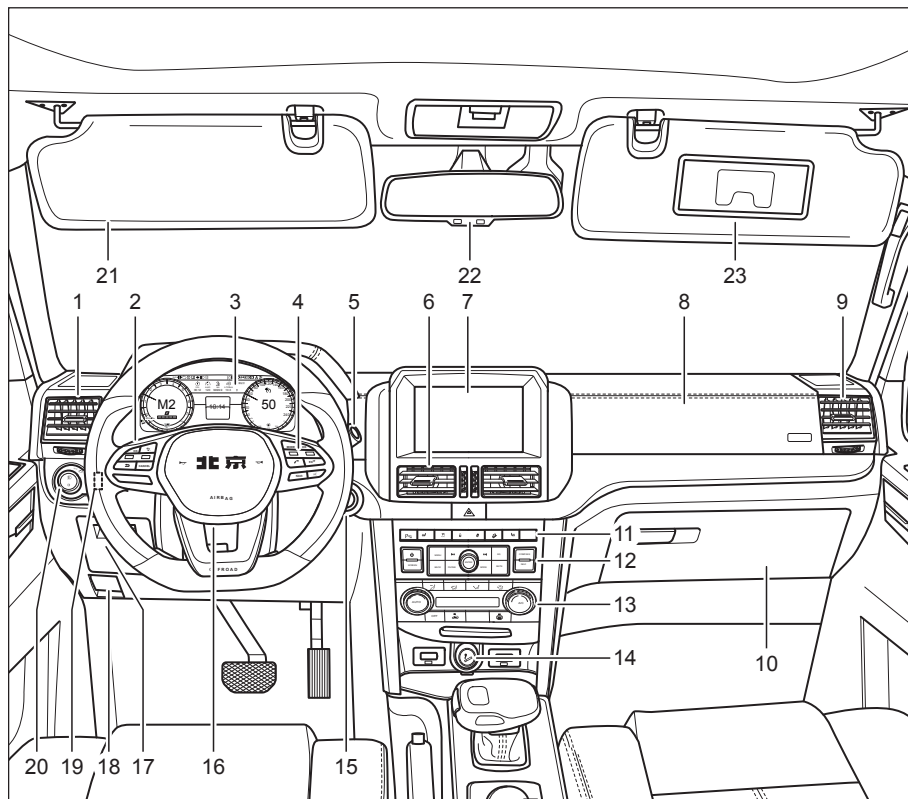


13. A/C control panel
14. Cigarette lighter (central power igniter)
15. Ignition switch / start-stop button
16. Driver front airbag
17. Fuse box
18. Engine hood handle
19. Left multi-function combination switch
20. Lighting switch
21. Sunshade of driver's side (refer to the real vehicle equipment)
22. Interior rear-view mirror
23. Sunshade of co-driver's side (refer to the real vehicle equipment)

General layout for Instrument and control mechanism (Type II)



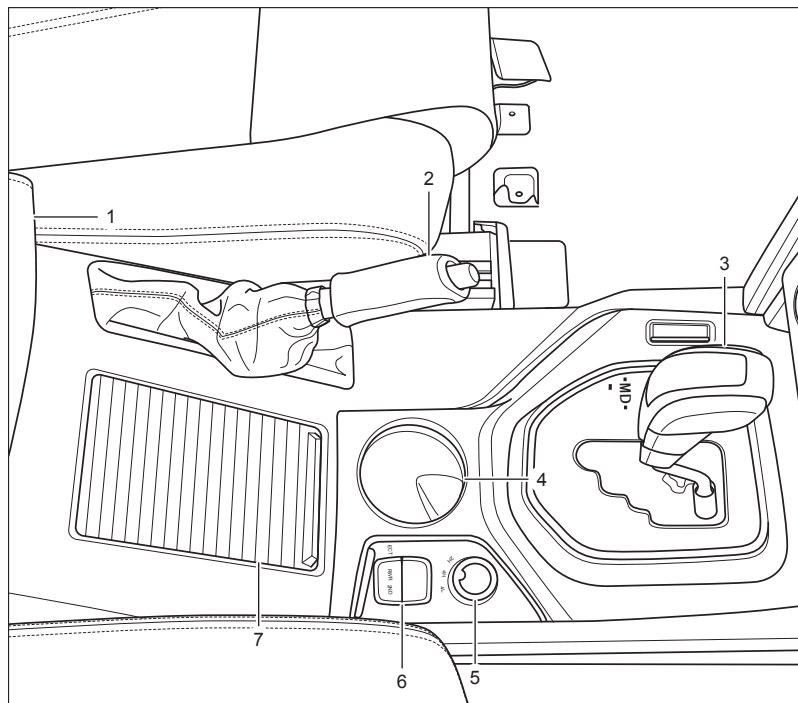
1. Left side air outlet
2. Left steering wheel multi-function button (subject to actual vehicle equipment)
3. Combination instrument
4. Right steering wheel multi-function button (subject to actual vehicle equipment)
5. Right multi-function combination switch
6. Central air vent
7. Radio navigation entertainment system display
8. Front passenger frontal airbag
9. Right air outlet
10. Glove box
11. auxiliary fascia console multi-function operation buttons
12. Radio navigation entertainment system operation panel



13. A/C control panel
14. Cigarette lighter (central power igniter)
15. Ignition switch / start-stop button
16. Driver front airbag
17. Fuse box
18. Engine hood handle
19. Left multi-function combination switch
20. Lighting switch
21. Sunshade of driver's side (refer to the real vehicle equipment)
22. Interior rear-view mirror
23. Sunshade of co-driver's side (refer to the real vehicle equipment)

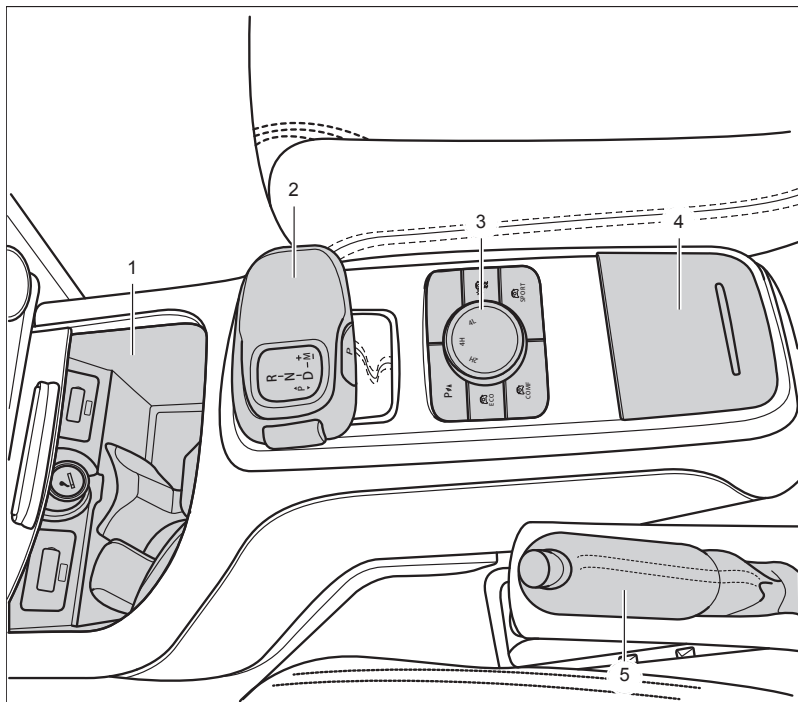
Central channel layout

Central channel of automatic transmission model (type I) *:

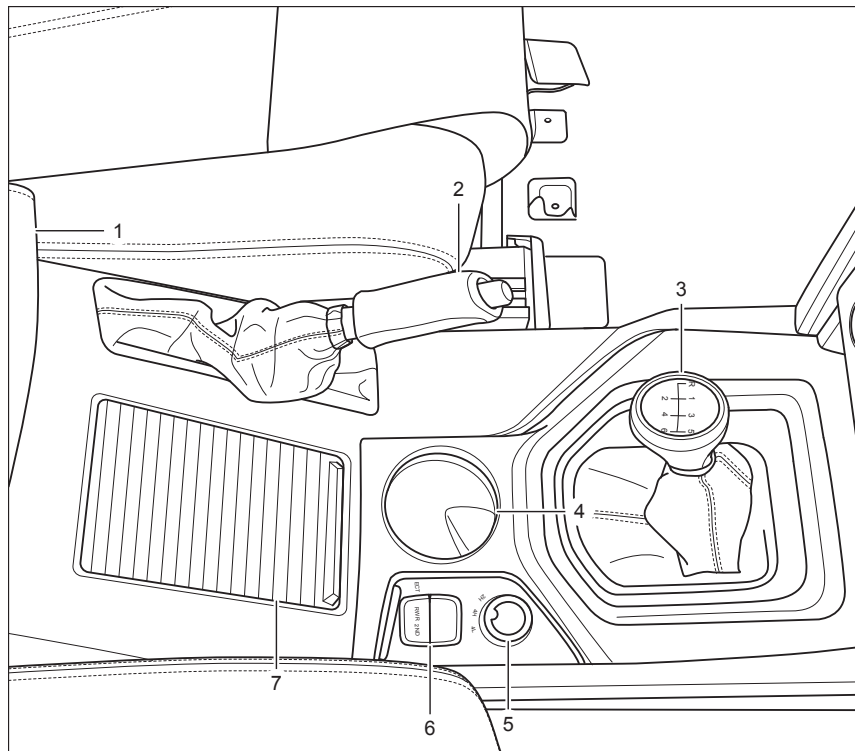


1. Front central armrest
2. Parking brake handle
3. Transmission shift lever
4. Ashtray
5. Transfer case electronic knob
6. Sport mode/ snow mode button
7. Storage space of center console (open the cover plate to see, including a water cup holder and a storage tank)

Central channel of automatic transmission model (type II) *:



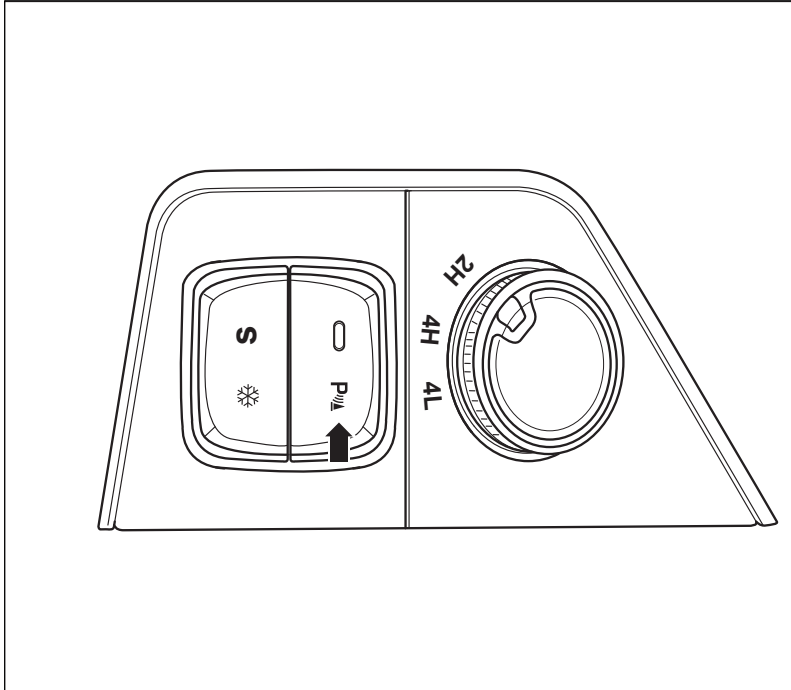
1. Front storage box
2. Transmission shift handle
3. Transfer case electronic knob and multifunctional electrical combination switch
4. Central storage box
5. Parking brake handle

Center tunnel layout for manual transmission models:

1. Front central armrest
2. Parking brake handle
3. Transmission shift lever
4. Ashtray
5. Transfer case electronic knob
6. Sport mode/ snow mode button
7. Storage space of center console (open the cover plate to see, including a water cup holder and a storage tank)

Electronically controlled 4WD switch (type I)*

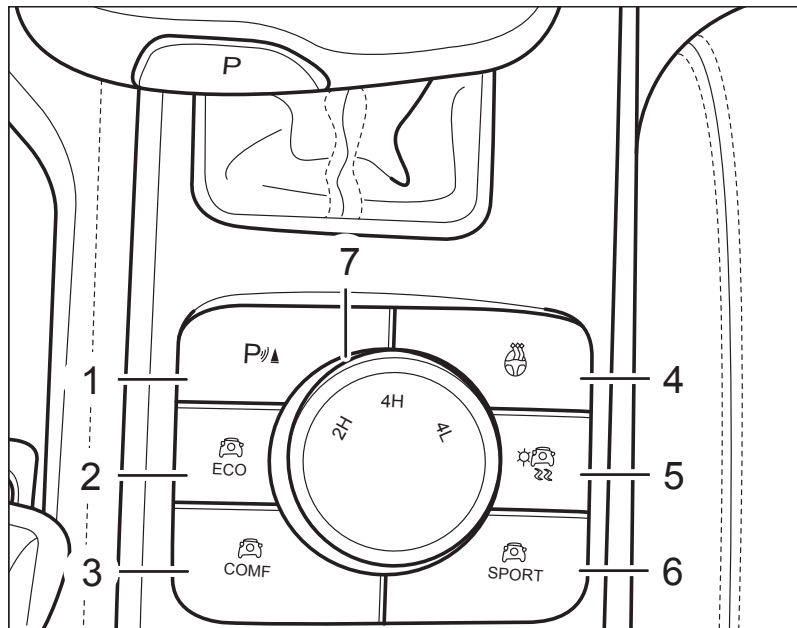
2



1. Parking assist function button

When the start / stop button is in the "run" mode, or when the ignition switch is turned on to the "on" position, the **P** button is off by default. Press the **P** button, and the indicator light will be on at this time, and the parking aid function will be on; Press the **P** switch again, the indicator light turns off and the parking aid function turns off

Electronically controlled 4WD switch (type II)*



I. Front sensor switch

Press the -1- front sensor switch, the indicator light turns on and the parking assist function is turned on; press the switch again, the indicator light goes out, and the parking assist function is turned off.

II. Steering wheel heating switch

Press the -4- steering wheel heating switch, the indicator light turns on and the steering wheel heating function is turned on; press the switch again, the indicator light goes out, and the steering wheel heating function is turned off.

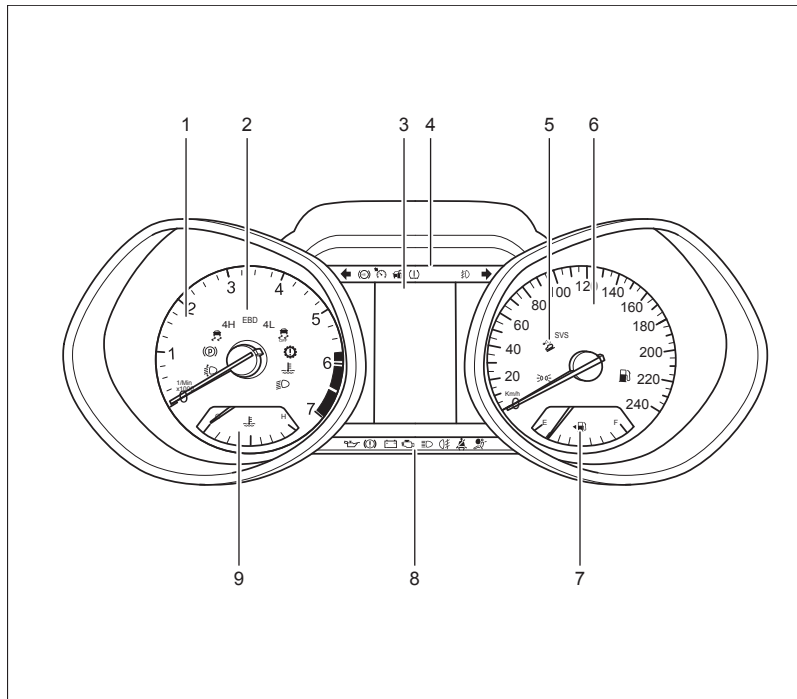
III. Driving mode switch

After the driving mode switch is powered on, it is in the -3- comfort mode switch position, and the switch indicator light is on; press the 2/5/6 switch, the corresponding mode switch indicator light is on, press the same switch again, the switch returns to the comfort mode state.

IV. 4WD switch

The status of the 4WD switch is the last setting status, and the gear indicator light is on; the switch is rotated clockwise, and the gear indicator changes in sequence (2H-4H-4L). After reaching the 4L gear, continue to rotate the knob, the gear position signal will not change; if the switch is rotated counterclockwise, the gear position indication will change in sequence (4L-4H-2H).

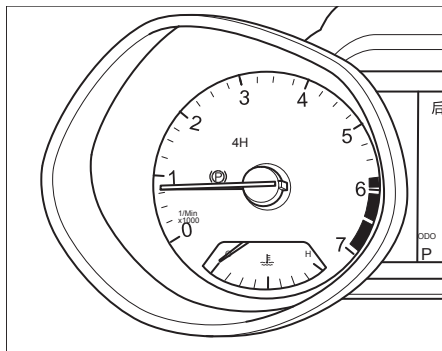
Combination instrument (Type I)*



1. Engine tachometer
2. Indicator light and Warning light display area in tachometer
3. Trip computer display screen
4. Upper indicator light and Warning light display area
5. Indicator light and Warning light display area in speedometer
6. Speedometer
7. Fuel gauge
8. Lower indicator light and Warning light display area
9. Water thermometer

Engine tachometer

The engine tachometer indicates the revolutions per minute (r/min) of the engine.



The starting point of the red area on the dial indicates the maximum allowable speed of the engine. The engine must be run in normally and reach the normal operating temperature before it can run at this maximum speed for a short time.

Attention

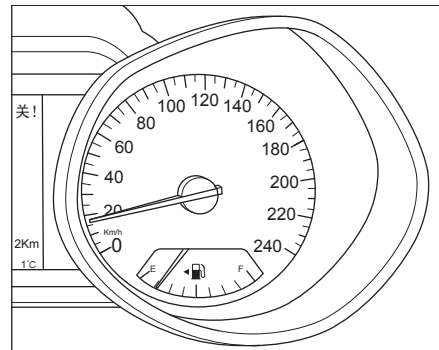
The engine can be severely damaged if the tachometer stays on the red zone.

Tips

Shifting into a higher gear timely helps save fuel and reduce the engine running noise.

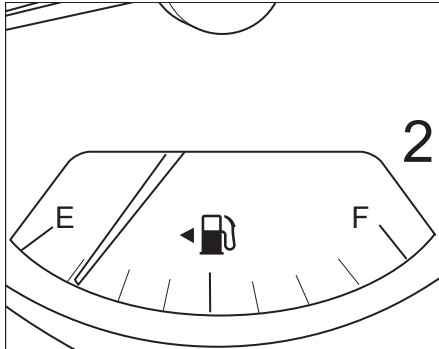
The recommended common working speed range for gasoline manual transmission models is 1900 ~ 2500 R / min.

Odometer



The speedometer indicates the real-time speed of the vehicle in km/h.

Fuel gauge

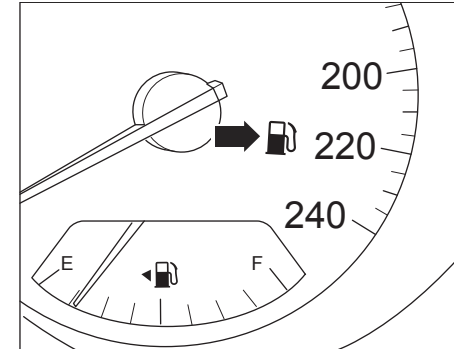


The fuel gauge is located at the lower part of the speedometer. When the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position or the start / stop Button is in the "RUN" mode, the fuel gauge displays the remaining fuel in the fuel tank. From "E" to "F" indicates that the fuel tank is empty to full. When the ignition key is in the "ACC" position or the start / stop button is in the "OFF" mode, the pointer returns to the "E" position and the current remaining fuel quantity cannot be displayed.

When braking, accelerating, swerving or driving on a slope, the fuel in the fuel tank will shake, which will affect the accuracy of the fuel gauge displayed, and you shall stop your vehicle on a flat road to check the amount of fuel.

After filling the fuel, the fuel gauge can reflect the real fuel quantity only after the fuel level is stabilized for a period of time.

Low fuel indicator light



The insufficient fuel indicator light is located in the speedometer. When the remaining fuel in the fuel tank is too low, this alarm light will be on. In addition, an alarm message will also appear in the trip computer display, see "Warning Indicator Light" on page 069 for details.

 Tips

When driving on upward and downward slopes or on bumpy roads, the fuel level will be unstable, which may cause the fuel Warning light to alarm. Please refer to the fuel level displayed in the stable state.

In case of any of the following conditions, please immediately send the car to the authorized dealer of BAIC for testing:

- The low fuel indicator keeps flashing.
- When the vehicle is full of fuel, the fuel gauge shows insufficient fuel, and The low fuel indicator light is on and flashes.

Engine coolant thermometer

The gauge is located under the engine tachometer. When the ignition key is in the "ON" position or the start/stop button is in the "RUN" mode, the engine coolant thermometer will display the temperature of coolant.

When the vehicle is running normally, the pointer of the instrument is generally located near the middle position.

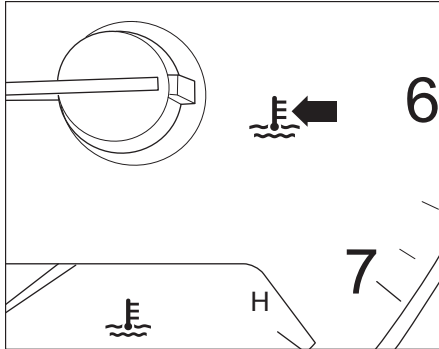
If the pointer deviates to the red area, which is the "H" high temperature direction, it means that the coolant temperature is too high, which may cause serious damage to the engine. If the driving safety is not affected, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection or seek help.

If the pointer deflects several times or stays in the red zone of the water temperature gauge for a long time, the coolant Warning light will be on in the tachometer, you should stop and turn off the engine as soon as possible without affecting the driving safety. Check the coolant level and whether there is leakage in the coolant line.

 Warning

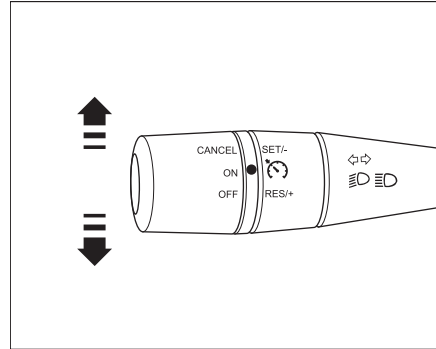
Strictly forbidden to open the cap of coolant expansion tank when the engine is running. Since the high-pressure hot coolant and the steam will spray out, thus leading to a scald incident. Make sure that the engine is completely cooled before the coolant expansion tank is opened; wrap the cover of coolant expansion tank with a large thick cloth during operation to prevent the operator from being scalded by steam; and do not spill any fuel on engine parts or exhaust system when filling with fuel and coolant since a fire may take place and the glycol in engine coolant may be also ignited under certain conditions.

Engine water temperature high indicator light



The engine coolant Warning light is located in the engine tachometer. When the engine coolant temperature is too high, this Warning lamp lights up. In addition, an alarm message will also appear in the trip computer display, see "Warning Indicator Light" on page 069 for details. At this time, stop and extinguish the engine at a suitable position as soon as possible, and check the coolant level and whether there is leakage in the coolant pipeline.

Left turn indicator and right turn indicator light



Move the light control lever downward to turn on the left steering light, while the indicator lamp in the combination instrument flashes; Move the light control lever upward to turn on the right steering light, while the indicator lamp in the combination instrument flashes.

i Tips

If the indicator light flashes faster than normal or stays on without flickering, check the relevant side turn signal bulb or its wiring for a fault.

Trip computer display screen

The trip computer display screen equipped with this vehicle can display the corresponding vehicle information in the relevant interface, the interface includes:

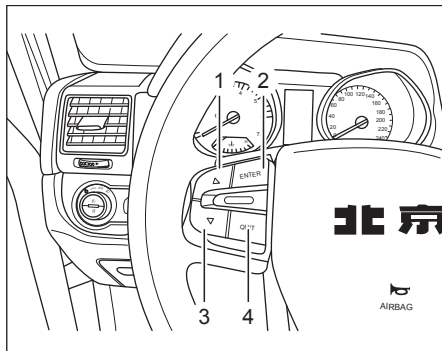
- Functional interface
- Driving interface
- Setting interface
- Tip and alarm information interface

The first three interfaces can be switched and set by the instrument function operation buttons on the left side of the steering wheel; the tip and alarm information interface will be automatically called up according to the state of the vehicle.

Tips

In the case of low temperature, the display screen of the trip computer of the combination instrument may appear delayed or whitish, which is a normal phenomenon.

Instrument function operation buttons



Instrument function operation buttons:

1. Page up button
2. Enter button
3. Page down button
4. Exit button

The trip computer display screen always displays information

1. Total mileage information
2. Outside temperature information
3. Gear information (only for automatic transmission models)

Displayable gear information includes: P/R/N/D/M1/M2/M3/M4/M5/M6

4. Snow Mode/Sport Mode (Only for automatic transmission models)

Snow mode: 2nd (❄️)

Sport Mode: PWR (or S)

Functional interface

Sub-total mileage A	
9999.9 km	
Sub-total mileage B	
9999.9 km	
ODO	11km
P	23 °C

After opening the door with the remote control key, the instrument will wake up and prompt the door opening status. After closing the door, the ignition key is in the "ON" position or the start / stop button is in the "RUN" mode, and the trip computer display screen displays the function interface.

The display information of the function interface of the trip computer display screen includes:

1. Total mileage information (ODO)

Record and display the accumulated mileage of the vehicle.

2. Outside temperature information

This area shows the current temperature outside the car. The data comes from the temperature sensor outside the car, and the displayed temperature is the ambient temperature around the temperature sensor, not the human body temperature.

3. Subtotal mileage interface

The subtotal mileage interface can be displayed, which is subject to the actual vehicle.

Driving interface

In the main interface of the trip computer display screen, press the page up/down button of the instrument function operation button on the left side of the steering wheel to switch the driving interface. The information that can be viewed in the driving interface includes: mileage subtotal A/B, instantaneous fuel consumption / Average fuel consumption, cruising range, digital speed (only for B80C models), TPMS (tire pressure and temperature), atmospheric pressure, relative altitude, incline meter, turbo pressure.

Mileage subtotal interface A/B (vehicles with gasoline engine)

Sub-total mileage A	
9999.9 km	
Sub-total mileage B	
9999.9 km	
ODO	11km
P	23 °C

Subtotal of Mileage

A total of 2 mileage subtotals (A and B) can be displayed, which can be switched by the page up/down buttons on the left side of the multi-function steering wheel (subtotal mileage A and subtotal mileage B are displayed on the same interface). When the battery power and ignition power are cut off at the same time, the subtotal mileage is automatically cleared, any one of the two subtotal mileage can be cleared during driving, and the other continues to be recorded. Alternatively, it can be manually reset in the subtotal mileage reset interface in the "Settings interface" menu of the trip

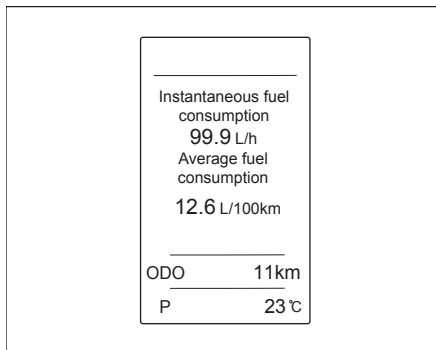
computer display screen.

Total mileage

Record and display the accumulated mileage of the complete vehicle. This mileage cannot be reset.

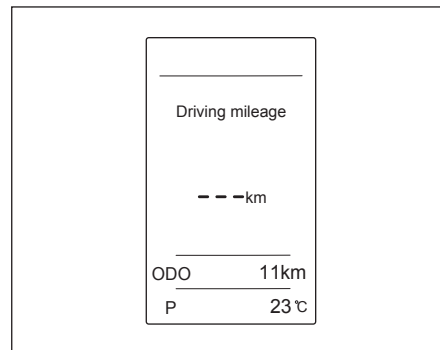
2

Fuel consumption information *

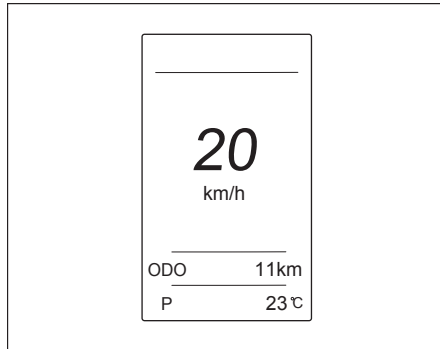


Driving mileage

Display the mileage (unit: km) that the vehicle can run with the current fuel quantity. This data is updated in real time according to the average fuel consumption. If the average fuel consumption decreases during driving, the range will increase. When the range is less than 50km, the remaining mileage will no longer be displayed, but "-" km will be displayed. At this time, please fill the fuel as soon as possible.

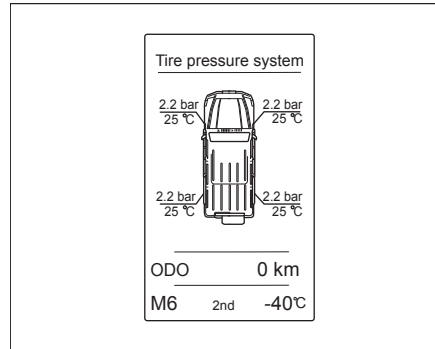


Digital speed display



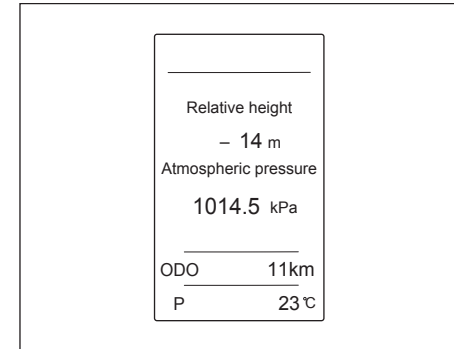
Displays the vehicle speed during driving.

Tire pressure and temperature



By pressing the page up/down buttons of the instrument function operation buttons on the left side of the multi-function steering wheel, the driver can know the current tire pressure and temperature of the vehicle under this interface.

Atmospheric pressure, relative altitude



1. Relative height

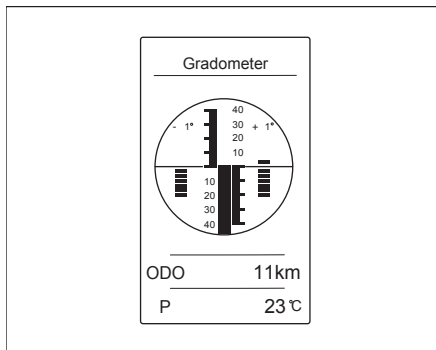
The altitude reference value converted from the difference between the atmospheric pressure detected in real time at the position of the vehicle instrument and the standard atmospheric pressure.

i Tips

Since the real-time atmospheric pressure is strongly related to the changes of environmental factors such as air temperature and wind speed, the relative altitude value is not recommended for altitude measurement. It is only used to display the real-time relative height change during vehicle driving.

2. Atmospheric pressure

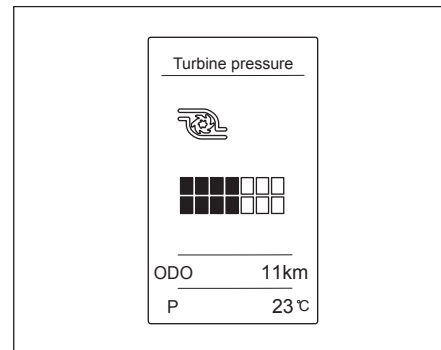
Displays the atmospheric pressure at the current vehicle location.

Gradometer

The gradiometer can display the slope of the current vehicle position.

i Tips

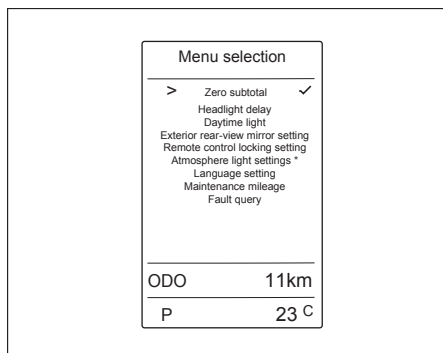
The slope display is based on the acceleration sensor signal conversion. The deviation is large during the movement. Please refer to the displayed value when the vehicle is stationary.

Turbine pressure *

The engine of this vehicle is equipped with a turbocharger. For gasoline engine models, the driver can understand the current working pressure of the turbocharger in this interface. By pressing the page up/down buttons of the instrument function operation buttons on the left side of the multi-function steering wheel.

Setting interface

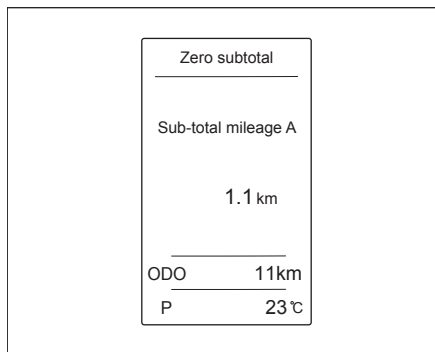
Press the "Enter" button on the left side of the multi-function steering wheel on any interface of the main interface to enter the setting interface. In this interface, functions such as subtotal clearing and headlamp delay can be set. According to different vehicle configurations, the function display of the setting interface is different, and the actual vehicle shall prevail.



The triangular cursor at the front can be moved to the required position through the up / down page turning button of the instrument function operation button on the left side of the multi-function steering wheel, and then press the "ENTER" button to enter the corresponding setting interface.

Zero subtotal

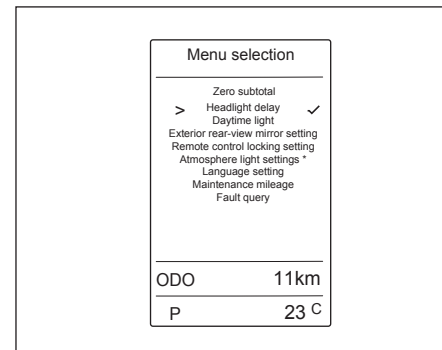
The following figure describes the situation of subtotal mileage a. the clearing method of subtotal mileage B is the same as that of subtotal mileage a.

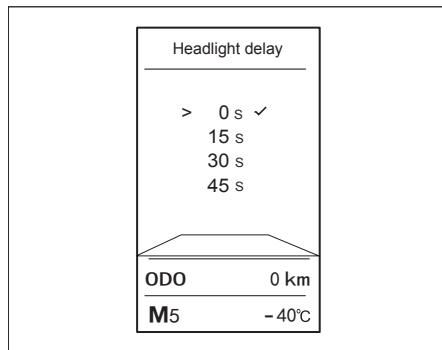


After entering the subtotal clearing interface, press the page up/down button of the instrument function operation button to switch the subtotal mileage A/B, and press and hold the "ENTER" button on the corresponding subtotal mileage clearing interface for about 5 seconds to clear the selected subtotal mileage. Select the "QUIT" button to return to the previous menu.

Headlight delay

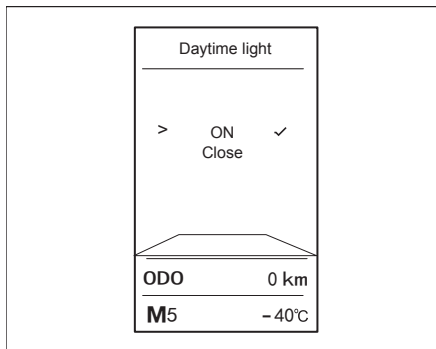
Select the "Headlight Delay" with the cursor by the page up/down buttons of the instrument function operation keys on the left side of the multi-function steering wheel, and press the "ENTER" key to confirm.





After entering the headlight delay setting interface, select the desired delay time by the page up and down button, and press the "ENTER" button to complete the setting. The next time it starts, the delay time that has been set will be maintained. Select the "QUIT" button to return to the previous menu.

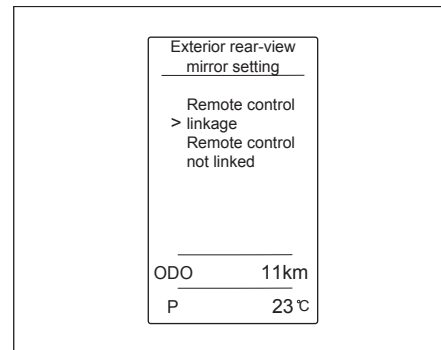
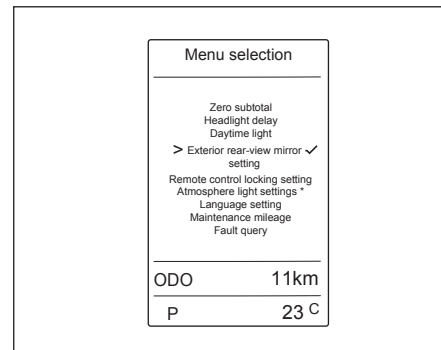
Daytime light



After entering the daytime running light setting interface, select the desired option by the up/down page button, press the "ENTER" button to complete the setting, and press the "QUIT" button to return to the previous menu.

Exterior rear-view mirror setting*

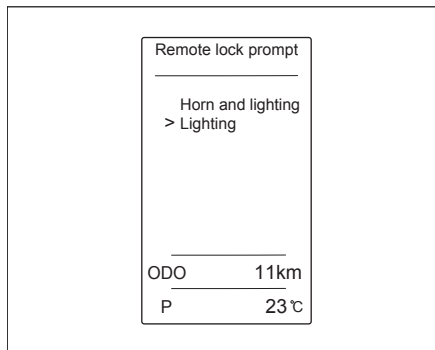
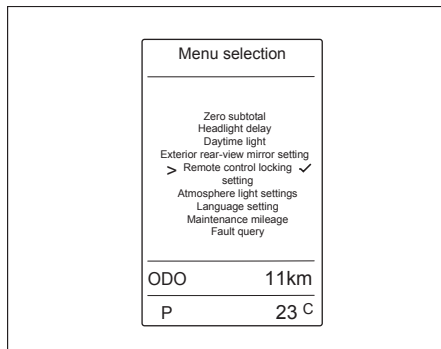
Select the "Exterior rear-view Mirror Setting" with the cursor by the page up/down buttons of the instrument function operation keys on the left side of the multi-function steering wheel, and press the "ENTER" key to confirm.



After entering the exterior rear-view mirror setting interface, select the desired option by the up/down page button, press the "ENTER" button to complete the setting, and press the "QUIT" button to return to the previous menu.

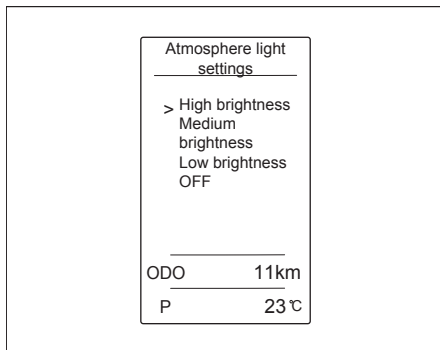
Remote lockout prompt setting*

Select the "Headlight Delay" with the cursor by the page up/down buttons of the instrument function operation keys on the left side of the multi-function steering wheel, select the cursor to "Remote Lockout Prompt", switch the "ENTER" button to confirm.



After entering the exterior rear-view mirror setting interface, select the desired option by the up/down page button, press the "ENTER" button to complete the setting, and select the "QUIT" button to return to the previous menu.

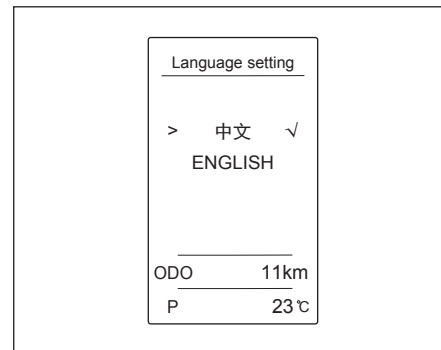
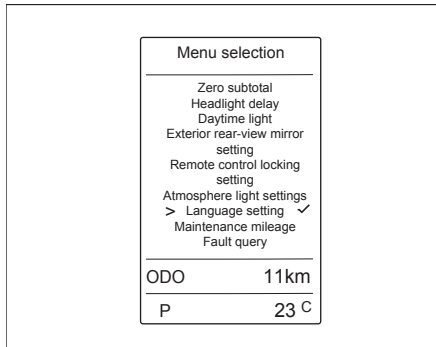
Atmosphere Light Settings *



After entering the atmosphere light settings interface, select the desired option by the up/down page button, press the "ENTER" button to complete the setting, and press the "QUIT" button to return to the previous menu.

Language setting

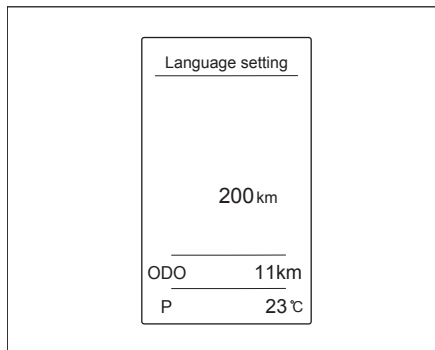
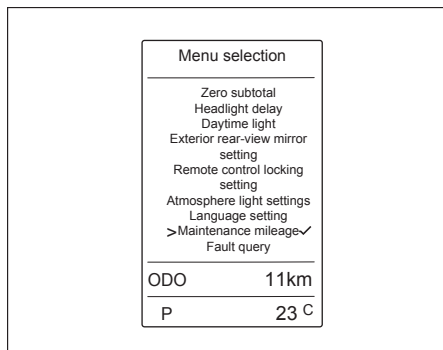
Select the language setting with the cursor and press the "ENTER" button of the control switch.



After entering the language setting interface, select the desired option by the up/down page button, press the "ENTER" button to complete the setting, and select the "QUIT" button to return to the previous menu.

Maintenance mileage

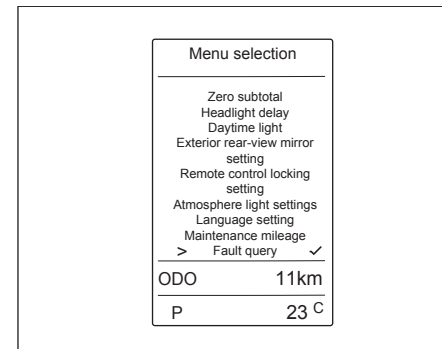
Select the Maintenance Mileage Query with the cursor and press the "ENTER" button of the control switch.

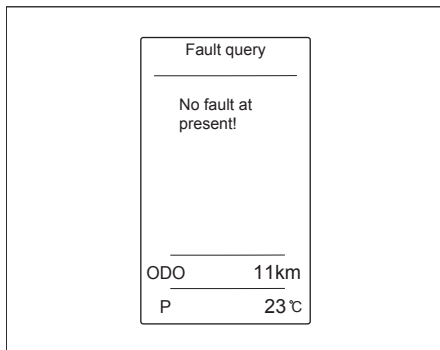


After entering the maintenance mileage query interface, the remaining mileage from the next maintenance can be displayed. Select the "QUIT" button to return to the previous menu.

Fault query

Select the Fault Query with the cursor and press "ENTER" to confirm.





After entering the Fault Query interface, you can see relevant fault information, select the "QUIT" button to return to the previous menu.

The prompt and alarm information interface can prompt the following information:

Door switch state display

Backlight brightness adjustment tips

Please turn off the small light

One-button startup system failure

No smart remote key found

Please press the brake to start

Please switch to P/N gear to start

Please step on the clutch to start

Please switch to P gear and stop

The key is forgotten in the car

The key in the car leaves

Low key power

IMMO authentication failed

Electric steering column lock not unlocked

Steering failure, please stop

Steering column lock failure, please repair

Please turn the steering wheel

Distance to next maintenance (500 / 200 / 100km)

Please maintain it immediately

Please fasten the front passenger's seat belt

Please belt the driver's seat belt

Please release the handbrake

Low oil pressure

Brake fluid level low (-)

The water temperature of the engine is too high.

Please fill washer fluid

Please fill fuel

Rapid tire leakage

High tire temperature

Tire high pressure

Low tire pressure

Sensor fault

Insufficient power of tire pressure sensor

Sensor missing

Fault in tire pressure system

ABS system fault
 ESP fault
 Brake system fault
 Transmission fault
 Airbag fault
 Headlight height adjusting fault
 Parking assist system failure
 Fuel sensor fault
 Fog light fault!
 Turning signal light fault
 Position light failure
 Daytime running light failure
 Back-up light failure
 Brake light failure

Tips

After the fault prompt interface appears, it is recommended to go to the nearest authorized dealer of BAIC for inspection and maintenance immediately.

Audible alarm prompt information

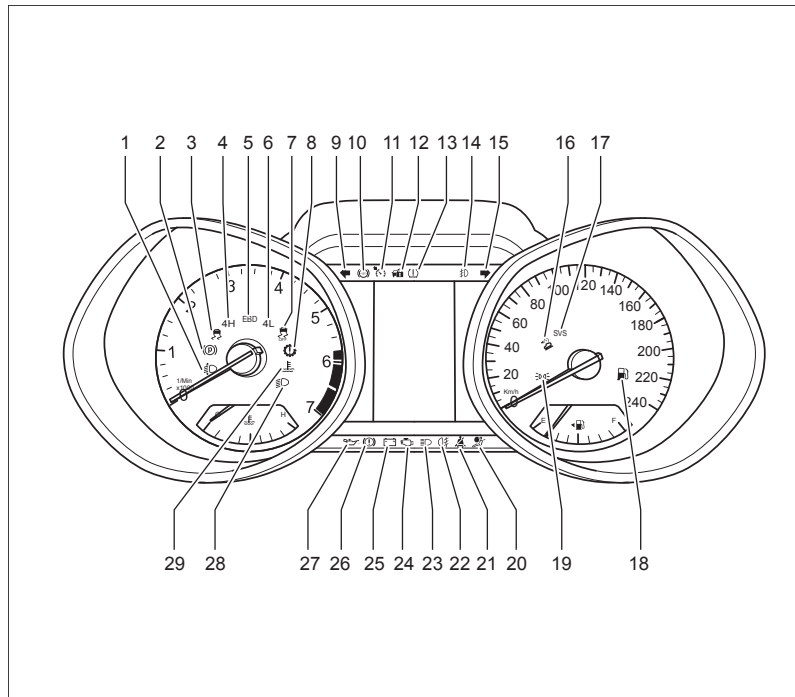
In addition to the text alarm prompt, the instrument will also give a sound prompt when some functions are on or the system fails. The information that can give sound alarm includes:

Engage reverse gear prompt
 Back-up sensor distance prompt
 Small light not off prompt
 The door is not closed during driving
 Please belt the driver's and front passenger's seat belt
 Please pay attention to over-speed
 Please release the handbrake
 Brake fluid level low (-)
 Brake system fault
 The water temperature of the engine is too high.
 Please add fuel
 Low oil pressure
 ABS system fault

Airbag fault
 Mileage to next maintenance
 Turn light/hazard Warning light
 Tire pressure alarm information
 ESP fault
 Transmission control system fault
 One-button startup system failure
 No smart remote key found
 The key is forgotten in the car
 The key in the car leaves
 Low key power
 The failure of the electronic steering column lock to unlock the steering lock, please stop and turn the steering wheel

Warning indicator


2



1. Headlight adjustment fault indicator light
2. Parking brake indicator light
3. ESP indicator light
4. Transfer case 4H gear indicator light
5. EBD fault indicator light
6. Transfer case 4L gear indicator light
7. ESP OFF indicator light
8. TCU fault indicator light (only for automatic transmission models)
9. Left turn signal indicator light
10. ABS fault indicator light
11. Cruise control indicator light
12. Anti-theft indicator light
13. Tire pressure monitoring fault indicator light
14. Front fog light indicator
15. Right turn signal indicator light
16. HDC indicator light
17. Engine electronic fault indicator light
18. Low fuel indicator light


19. Position light indicator light
20. Airbag fault indicator light
21. Seat belt unbelt indicator light
22. Rear fog light indicator light.
23. High beam light indicator light
24. Engine emission fault indicator light
25. The battery charging indicator lamp
26. Brake system fault indicator light
27. Low oil pressure indicator
28. Low beam light indicator light
29. Engine water temperature high indicator light

Warning indicator light introduction

1. Low oil pressure Warning light  (red)
When the engine oil pressure is lower than the normal value and the ignition key is in the "ON" position or the start / stop button is in the "RUN" mode, the Warning light will be on. The engine should turn off after starting. If the Warning light stays on or turns on when the vehicle is driving, please park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC, and turn off the engine. Do not start the engine until the engine oil pressure is restored.

Warning

- **If the Warning light is on during driving, stop the vehicle immediately and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC under the condition of ensuring safety.**
- **If the engine continues to run after the low oil pressure Warning light is on, it will be seriously damaged.**


2. Brake system fault Warning light  (Red)

The light is on when the brake fluid level is low.


If the light is on when the vehicle is driving, it means that the braking efficiency is reduced. At this time, park the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible and contact the special dealer.

Warning

- **If the Warning light is on during driving, stop immediately under the condition of ensuring safety.**
- **Do not step on the brake pedal repeatedly. Contact the authorized dealer of BAIC immediately.**

3. Battery charging indicator light  (yellow)


When the ignition key is in the "ON" position (the engine is not started) or the start / stop button is in the "RUN" mode, the battery charging Warning light is on, and the indicator light is off after the engine is started. If the Warning light is on while the engine is running, it indicates a fault of the charging system. Please stop the vehicle under the condition of ensuring driving safety, then turn off the engine, and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC motor as soon as possible.

4. Engine emission fault Warning light  (Yellow)

When the ignition key is in the "ON" position or the start / stop button is in the "RUN" mode (the engine is not started), the lamp is on. The light should go out after the engine is started. If the Warning light still lights up after starting the engine, or lights up or flashes during driving, it indicates that the relevant parts of the engine control system are faulty or the engine emission control system is operating erratically. At this time, the vehicle can still be driven, but you must go to the nearest authorized dealer of BAIC for maintenance as soon as possible.

Warning

- **In case of engine related problems, please stop as soon as possible and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC under the condition of ensuring safety.**
- **If no measures are taken, serious driving performance problems will occur.**

5. High-beam light indicator light  (Blue)

When the headlight is on and in the high beam position or the light switch control lever is pulled into the flash overtaking position, the indicator light is on.

6. Rear fog light indication  (yellow)

When the rear fog light is turned on, the indicator light is on.

7. Seat belt unbelt Warning light  (red)


When the ignition key is turned to the "on" position or the start / stop button is in the "run" mode, if the driver or co driver does not wear the safety belt, and drives his vehicle at a velocity of more than 25km/h or at a velocity of less than 25km/h and when the driving distance is greater than 500 meters or the duration exceeds 60 seconds, the Warning light will be lit and accompanied by an alarm sound. The driver or front passenger shall wear the seat belt, that is, after the seat belt locking bolt is buckled into the seat belt locking buckle, the Warning light will go out.

8. Airbag fault indicator light  (Red)

When the ignition button is turned to the "ON" position or the start / stop button is in the "RUN" mode (the engine is not started), the indicator will be on for several seconds and then off. If it does not light up or does not turn off after a few seconds, it indicates that there is a fault in the airbag system. At this time, please go to the special dealer of BAIC for inspection as soon as possible.

 **Warning**


- **If the fault Warning light is on, the airbag system cannot be guaranteed to be in normal state.**
- **Contact an authorized dealer of BAIC for inspection and maintenance as soon as possible.**

9. ABS fault indicator  (yellow)

When the ABS system fails, the light is on; when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position or the start/stop button is in "RUN" mode (the engine does not start), the vehicle self-inspects, the light will on for a few seconds and then is off. If the ABS Warning light is continuously on or on during driving, and does not turn on when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position or the start / stop button is in the "RUN" mode, it indicates that there may be a fault in the ABS system. Make sure that the light is off before driving.

 **Warning**

- **If the Warning light is on during driving, under the condition of ensuring safety, you can drive to the destination, but the vehicle shall be sent to the special dealer of BAIC for inspection as soon as possible.**
- **If the brake system fault indicator lights up simultaneously, stop immediately while ensuring safety, and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC.**

10. Engine electronic fault indicator light  (yellow)

When the ignition button is turned to the "ON" position or the start / stop button is in the "RUN" mode (the engine is not started), the indicator will be on and then off. If the indicator light does not go out, or lights up when the engine is started and during driving, it means that there is a fault in the system, please go to the authorized dealer of BAIC for testing and troubleshooting as soon as possible.

 Warning

- **In case of engine related problems, please stop as soon as possible and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC under the condition of ensuring safety.**
- **If no measures are taken, serious driving performance problems will occur.**

11. Front fog light indicator light  (green)

When the front fog light is turned on, the indicator light is on.

12. Anti-theft indicator light  (red)

This indicator light indicates the status of the anti-theft system. For details of the anti-theft system, please refer to "Anti-theft Alarm System" on Page 100.

13. Parking brake indicator light  (Red)


This Warning light is on when the parking brake is pulled up. If the Warning light is on during driving and the information "Please release the handbrake" is displayed on the display screen of the trip computer, please check whether the parking brake is released.

 Warning

- **If the parking brake is released and the Warning light is still on, contact the dealer of BAIC for maintenance as soon as possible under the condition of ensuring safety.**
- **When the vehicle is running, the parking brake shall not be used except in case of emergency.**

14. Low beam indicator light  (green)

Indicates that the low beam light is on. It lights up when the low beam light of the headlight is on.

15. Headlight adjustment fault indicator light  (Yellow)

When the indicator light is on, it indicates that the headlight height adjustment control unit is faulty, please go to the authorized dealer of BAIC for maintenance as soon as possible.

16. Position light indicator light  (green)


When the position light or the automatic light is on, the indicator light is on.

17. Low fuel indicator light  (yellow)


When the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position or the start/stop button is in "RUN" mode (the engine is not started), the vehicle self-inspects, the indicator light is on for a few seconds and then is off. When the fuel level in the fuel tank is too low, the indicator light is on and accompanied by a prompt sound to remind the driver to fill the fuel. If the indicator light is always on when the fuel tank is full, or the indicator light is not off after the vehicle self-inspect, please go to the authorized dealer of BAIC for maintenance as soon as possible.

18. HDC indicator light  (green).

This indicator light does not light up when the hill descent function is off or fails. When the HDC switch is turned on, but the hill descent function is not activated, the indicator light is always on. The hill descent function is now on standby. This indicator is flashing when the hill descent function is active. The flashing frequency is controlled by the combination instrument, and the frequency is 2Hz.

19. Tire pressure monitoring fault indicator light  (yellow)*

When the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position or the start/stop button is in "RUN" mode (the engine is not started), the vehicle self-inspects, the indicator light is on for a few seconds and then is off. When the running speed of the vehicle reaches 30km / h, display the normal tire pressure. If the tire pressure or temperature is abnormal, the indicator light will be on. The display screen of the trip computer will display the corresponding fault information and be accompanied by an alarm sound. At this time, please go to the authorized dealer of BAIC for maintenance as soon as possible.

20. Cruise control indicator light  (green)*

When the constant speed cruise function is turned on, the indicator light is on.

21. ESP OFF indicator light  (yellow)*

When the transfer case is 2H: when the ESP function is turned off, the indicator light is on; Transfer case 4H/4L: The indicator light lights up by itself;

22. ESP working indicator light  (yellow)*

When the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position or the start/stop button is in "RUN" mode (the engine is started), the vehicle self-inspects, the indicator light is on for a few seconds and then is off. If the light is always on, the system is faulty. Please contact the special dealer of BAIC for maintenance as soon as possible..

 Warning

If the ESP indicator light and the ABS indicator light are on at the same time, it means that there is a fault in the ABS. At this time, the vehicle can still be braked with the normal braking method, but the ABS systems will not work. Please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC motor for inspection and maintenance as soon as possible.

23. EBD indicator light ^{EBD}(red)

At this time, park the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible and contact the special dealer of BAIC. At this time, the vehicle can still be braked with the normal braking method, but the ABS and EBD systems will not work. Please contact the special dealer of BAIC for maintenance as soon as possible..

24. TCU fault indicator light  (yellow)

When the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position or the start/stop button is in "RUN" mode (the engine is not started), the vehicle self-inspects, the indicator light is on for a few seconds and then is off. If the light does not go out, there is a problem with the automatic transmission control system. Please ensure that you can stop the vehicle immediately when driving safely, and then contact the authorized dealer of BAIC for inspection and maintenance as soon as possible.

 Warning

When the hardware, CAN communication, or TCU operation of the transmission fails, the vehicle function is restricted, and the corresponding limping mode is entered (the phenomenon that the vehicle cannot normally rise and fall, or is fixed in a specific gear, etc. may occur), and give Warning on the instrument through TCU fault indicator or text. The vehicle can continue to drive. It is recommended to repair it as soon as possible.

25. Transfer case 4L gear indicator light ^{4L}(Green)


When the transfer case is in 4L state, the indicator light is ON.

26. Transfer case 4H gear indicator light ^{4H}(Green)*


When the transfer case is in 4H state, the indicator light is ON.

27. Left turn signal indicator light  (green)

When the left turn signal light is turned on, the indicator light is On.

28. Right turn signal indicator light  (green)

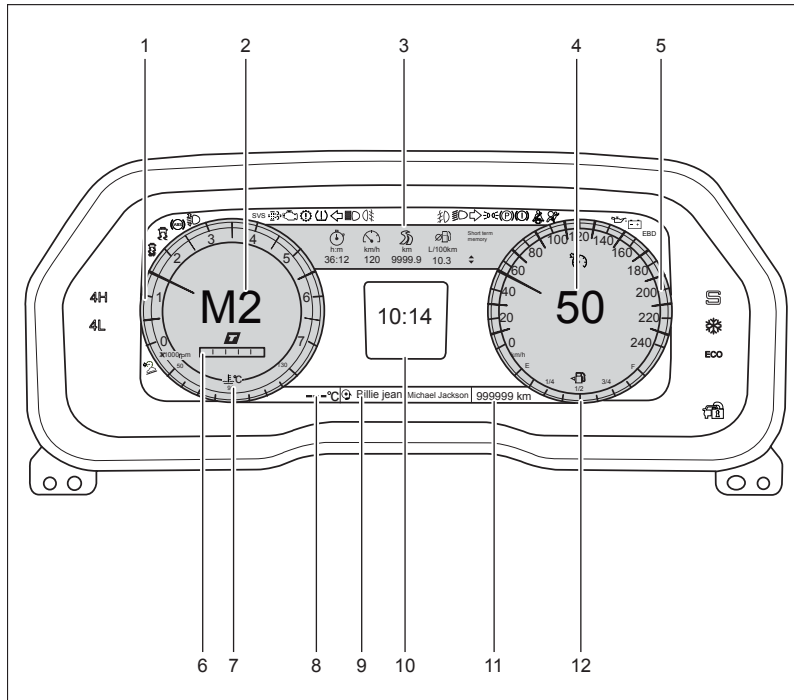
When the right turn signal light is on, the indicator light is on.

29. Engine water temperature high indicator light  (red)

This indicator light is on when the engine water temperature is too high. It shall be ensured that the vehicle stops safely and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC for inspection and maintenance as soon as possible.

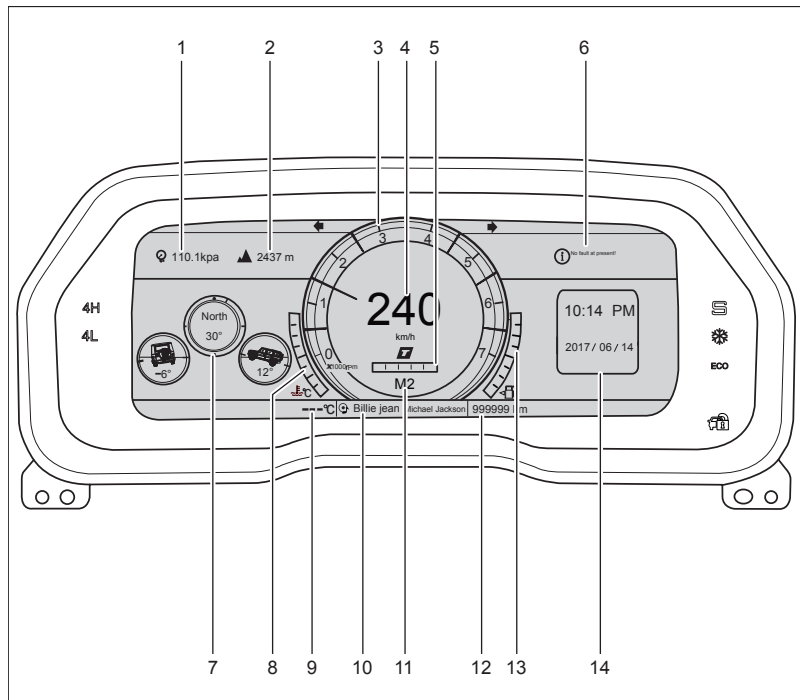
Combination instrument (Type II)*

Classic Themes



1. Engine tachometer
2. Shift position display
3. Trip computer: short-term memory, long-term memory, fuel consumption information, other information and system failure information
4. Digital speedometer
5. Speedometer
6. Turbine pressure
7. Engine coolant temperature gauge
8. outdoor temperature
9. Multimedia information (if any)
10. Information center: calendar (if any)/ time, navigation (if any), tire pressure system (if any), front wheel steering (if any), off-road information, system settings, alarm and prompt information
11. Total mileage
12. Fuel gauge

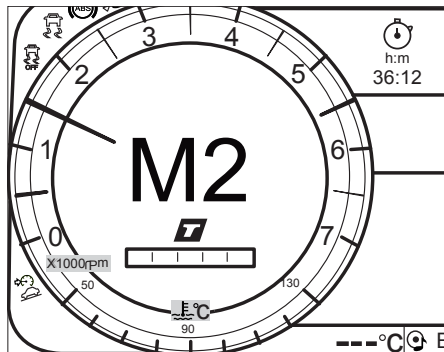
Off-road Theme



1. Atmospheric pressure
2. Relative height
3. Engine tachometer
4. Digital speedometer
5. Turbine pressure
6. Trip computer: short-term memory, long-term memory, fuel consumption information, other information and system failure information
7. Off-Road Information
8. Engine coolant temperature gauge
9. outdoor temperature
10. Multimedia information (if any)
11. Shift position display
12. Total mileage
13. Fuel gauge
14. Information display center: calendar/time, navigation (if any), tire pressure system (if any), front wheel steering (if any), system settings, alarm and prompt information

Engine tachometer

The engine tachometer indicates the revolutions per minute (r/min) of the engine.



The starting point of the red area on the dial indicates the maximum allowable speed of the engine. The engine must be run in normally and reach the normal operating temperature before it can run at this maximum speed for a short time.

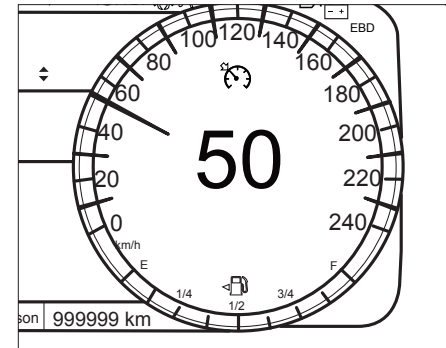
Attention

The engine can be severely damaged if the tachometer stays on the red zone.

Tips

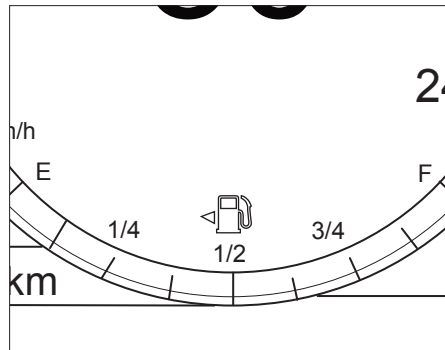
Shifting into a higher gear timely helps save fuel and reduce the engine running noise.

Odometer



The speedometer indicates the real-time speed of the vehicle in km/h.

Fuel gauge

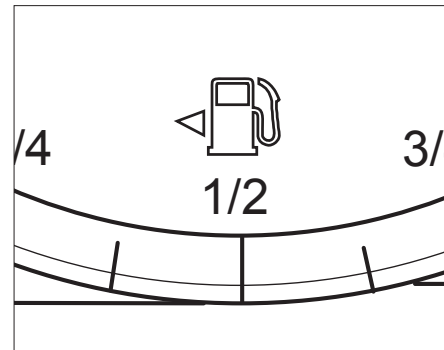


The fuel gauge is located at the lower part of the speedometer. When the start/stop button is in "RUN" mode, the fuel gauge displays the remaining fuel in the fuel tank. From "E" to "F" indicates that the fuel tank is empty to full. When or the start / stop key is in the "OFF" mode, the pointer returns to the "E" position, and the current remaining fuel quantity cannot be displayed.

When braking, accelerating, swerving or driving on a slope, the fuel in the fuel tank will shake, which will affect the accuracy of the fuel gauge displayed, and you shall stop your vehicle on a flat road to check the amount of fuel.

After filling the fuel, the fuel gauge can reflect the real fuel quantity only after the fuel level is stabilized for a period of time.

Low fuel indicator light



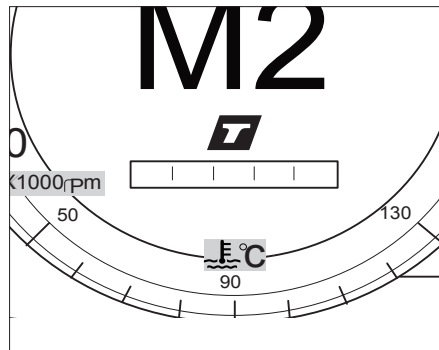
The insufficient fuel indicator light is located in the speedometer. When the remaining fuel in the fuel tank is too low, this alarm light will be on. In addition, an alarm message will also appear in the trip computer display.

i Tips

When driving on upward and downward slopes or on bumpy roads, the fuel level will be unstable, which may cause the fuel Warning light to alarm. Please refer to the fuel level displayed in the stable state.

In case of any of the following conditions, please immediately send the car to the authorized dealer of BAIC for testing:

- The fuel Warning light keeps flashing.
- When the vehicle is full of fuel, the fuel gauge shows insufficient fuel, and the fuel Warning light lights and flashes.

Engine coolant thermometer

The gauge is located under the engine tachometer. When button Start / Stop is in the 'RUN' position, the engine coolant thermometer will display the temperature of coolant.

When driving under normal conditions, the scale bar of the thermometer will indicate that the temperature is generally somewhere in the middle position.

If the scale bar is inclined to the direction of '130' high temperature, it means that the temperature of coolant is too high, which may cause serious damage to the engine. If safety conditions permit, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection or seek help.

If the scale bar is deflected many times or

stays in the high temperature range of water temperature gauge for a long time, the coolant Warning light in the tachometer will be lit, you shall stop your vehicle at a proper place and turn off the engine as soon as possible to check the level of coolant and the coolant pipeline for leakage.

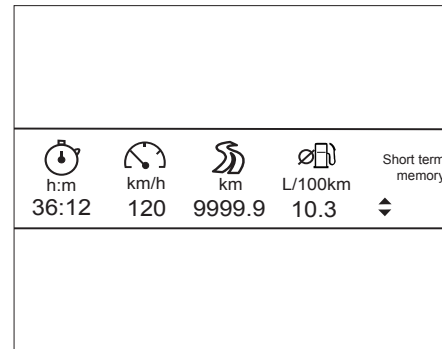
 **Warning**

Strictly forbidden to open the cap of coolant expansion tank when the engine is running. Since the high-pressure hot coolant and the steam will spray out, thus leading to a scald incident. Make sure that the engine is completely cooled before the coolant expansion tank is opened; wrap the cover of coolant expansion tank with a large thick cloth during operation to prevent the operator from being scalded by steam; and do not spill any fuel on engine parts or exhaust system when filling with fuel and coolant since a fire may take place and the glycol in engine coolant may be also ignited under certain conditions.

Engine water temperature high indicator light

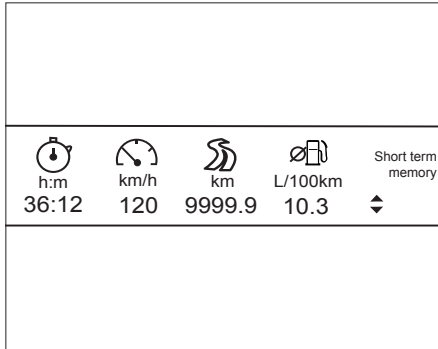
The engine coolant Warning light is located in the engine tachometer. When the engine coolant temperature is too high, this Warning lamp lights up. In addition, an alarm message will also appear in the trip computer display. At this time, stop and extinguish the engine at a suitable position as soon as possible, and check the coolant level and whether there is leakage in the coolant pipeline.

Trip-computer



The trip computer display information center selects short-term memory, long-term memory, fuel consumption information and other information display by short pressing the up / down button of the multi-function steering wheel.

Travel information display screen

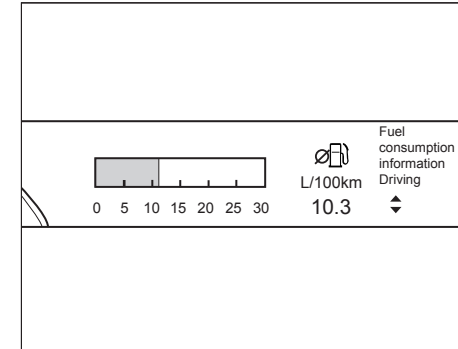


The short-term memory and long-term memory information are the driving time, average vehicle speed, subtotal mileage and average fuel consumption from left to right.

The short-term memory is automatically reset to zero after the vehicle is stopped for more than 2 hours.

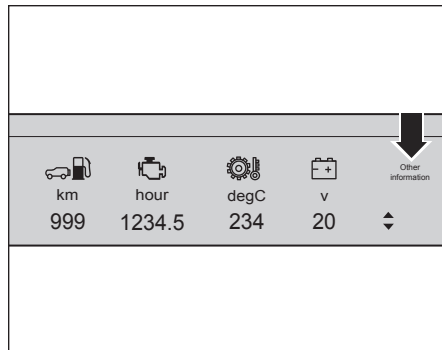
After the last short-term / long-term memory is set to zero, the driving time starts to accumulate after the vehicle is powered on; The average vehicle speed is calculated after the last short-term / long-term memory is set to zero; Subtotal mileage: accumulated mileage since the last short-term / long-term memory is set to zero; Both short-term memory and long-term memory can be reset manually by long pressing the return button.

Instantaneous fuel consumption



Displays the immediate fuel consumption status of the vehicle. When the vehicle is idling, the idle fuel consumption is displayed, unit: "L / h"; When the vehicle speed is greater than 5km / h, the instantaneous fuel consumption is displayed, unit: "L / 100km".

Other information



Other information from left to right are driving mileage, engine working time display, transmission oil temperature display and vehicle voltage display.

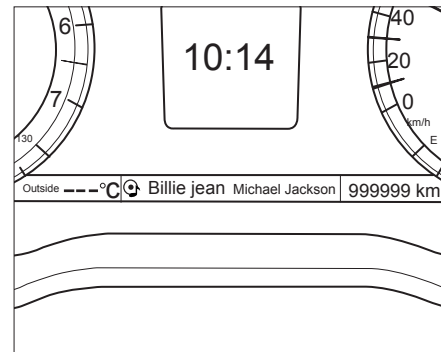
Endurance mileage: Display the mileage (unit: km) that the vehicle can run with the current fuel quantity;

Engine working time: The accumulated time starts after the car engine is started, and can be reset in the following two ways: reset by long pressing the BACK button in the engine working time interface; disconnect the battery;

Transmission oil temperature: Display the transmission oil temperature, Celsius display range: $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \sim 214^{\circ}\text{C}$;

Vehicle voltage: Display the vehicle voltage, the display range is $0 \sim 20\text{V}$ (for reference only).

Trip computer information below



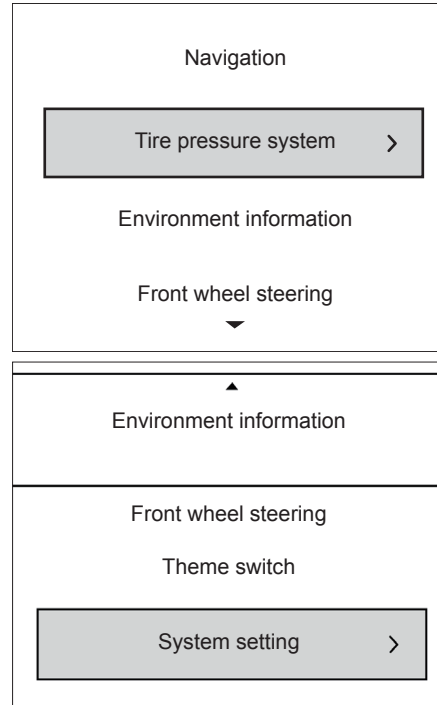
From left to right are the outdoor temperature display, multimedia information, and total mileage.

Outdoor temperature display: When the vehicle is normal, the current temperature outside the vehicle is displayed in this area. The data comes from the temperature sensor outside the vehicle. The displayed temperature is the ambient temperature around the temperature sensor, not the human body temperature;

Multimedia information (if any): Including music song name display, AM/FM band display and phone information display.

Total mileage display: Record and display the accumulated mileage of the complete vehicle. This mileage cannot be reset.

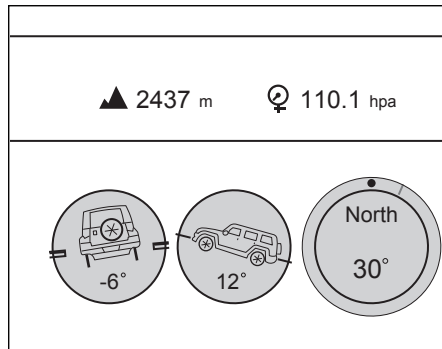
Information Display Center



The information display center interface displays the time and calendar when the start/stop button is in the "RUN" mode. Press the "OK" button to enter the "Menu Bar", and select by pressing the up/down button. "OK" button to enter the corresponding trip computer interface, short press the "OK" button again to bring up the "Menu Bar", as follows:

- Navigation interface * (if equipped)
- Tire pressure system interface * (if equipped)
- Environmental Information Interface* (if equipped)
- Front wheel steering interface * (if equipped)
- System setting interface

Environment information



1. Gradiometer

The display range is: pitch angle 40°, tilt angle 60°.

i Tips

The slope display is based on the acceleration sensor signal conversion. The deviation is large during the movement. Please refer to the displayed value when the vehicle is stationary. It is for reference only.

i Tips

The geomagnetic principle compass is greatly affected by a magnetic field. If it passes through areas with complex magnetic fields or considerable electromagnetic interference, the direction indicated by the compass will be inaccurate. After the magnetic field is stable, it is necessary to re-calibrate the compass.

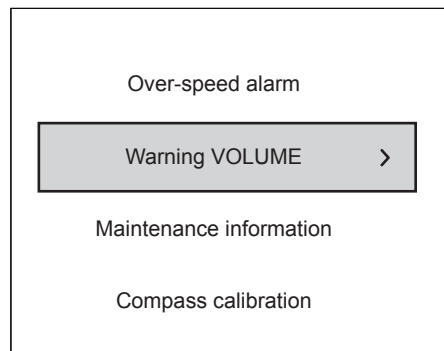
2. Displays the direction the vehicle is facing. The electronic compass used in this vehicle is based on the principle of geomagnetic positioning and can vaguely indicate eight directions. The display directions include: North, northeast, East, Southeast, South, southwest, West and northwest, and the bearing range is 0-359 °.
3. Atmospheric pressure: The environment information interface displays the atmospheric pressure of the current vehicle position.
4. Relative height: The altitude reference value converted from the difference between the atmospheric pressure detected in real time at the position of the vehicle instrument and the standard atmospheric pressure.

i Tips

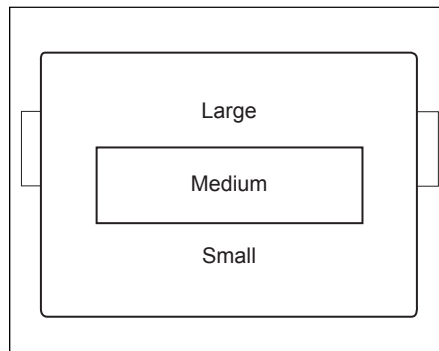
Since the real-time atmospheric pressure is strongly related to the changes of environmental factors such as air temperature and wind speed, the relative altitude value is not recommended for altitude measurement. It is only used to display the real-time relative height change during vehicle driving.

Information Center System Settings

Over-speed alarm

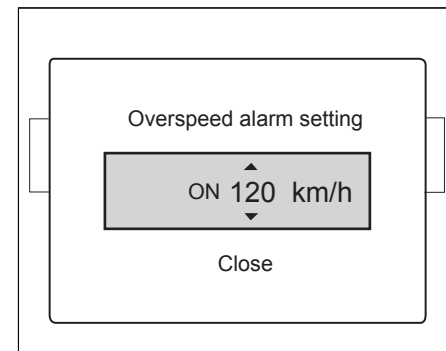


Enter the alarm volume setting page by the menu.

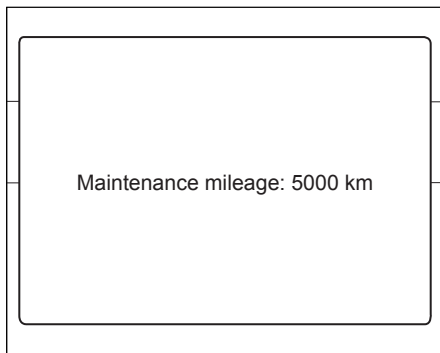


Enter the alarm volume setting interface through the menu, select up and down by pressing the "UP"/"DOWN" button, and confirm by pressing the "OK" button.

Warning VOLUME



Enter the Overspeed alarm setting interface through the menu, short press the "OK" button to enter the vehicle speed value setting, and short press the "OK" or "BACK" button to return to the previous menu, if you want to disable this function, after entering the Overspeed alarm setting interface, short press "UP"/"DOWN" button, select "Close" item, press "OK" button, then the interface will return to the previous menu;

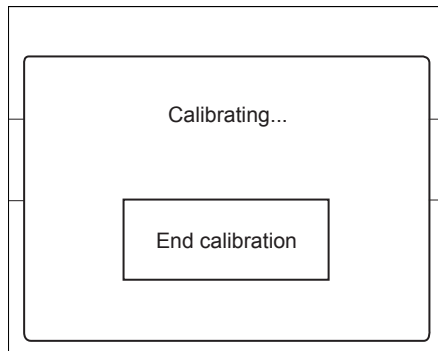


After entering the maintenance information inquiry interface by the menu, return to the previous menu by short pressing the "OK/BACK" button.

i Tips

The maintenance mileage of the complete vehicle can be reset by the after-sales diagnostic instrument.

Compass calibration



1. Enter the compass calibration page by the menu.
2. After entering the compass calibration page through the menu, start the calibration immediately. If the user needs to cancel the compass calibration or has not completed the compass calibration, who can actively end the compass calibration by short pressing the "OK/Back" button.

3. The driver shall drive the car slowly on the flat ground to drive the "circle" route clockwise or anticlockwise. When the compass calibration is completed, the instrument will display the "calibration completed" interface.

Vehicle alarm information interface

The vehicle will give an alarm (graphic or sound) for the following faults:

Please turn off the small light!

Please release the handbrake!

Please fill washer fluid!

The speed has exceeded 120km/h!*

The speed has exceeded xxxkm/h!

Low brake fluid level !

Please check the position of the step bar !*

Snow Mode ON

Sport Mode ON

Economic Mode ON

Comfort Mode ON“

Parking assist system failure !

Rear fog light failure!

Left turning signal light fault!

Position light failure!

Daytime running light failure!

Back-up light failure!

Brake light failure!

Headlight height adjustment fault!

Unbuckle the seat belt !(Please buckle the driver's seat belt)

Unbuckle the seat belt !(Please buckle the front passenger's seat belt)

Airbag fault!

Distance to next maintenance (500 / 200 / 100km)!

Please maintain it immediately!

Please fill fuel!

Fuel sensor fault!

Low oil pressure!

The water temperature of the engine is too high!

Engine knock caused by oil problem !

Transmission fault!

Limited transmission function*!

Transmission fluid temperature too high!

The transmission parking lock has failed!

When the transmission is in D gear, the vehicle limps!

When the transmission is in P gear, the vehicle limps!

The transmission is in N, please shift to P!

When in gear, please step on the brakes!

Transmission limp!

Press the shift lock button when engaging the gear!

Shifter fault!

Powertrain failure!

Please stop and shift to P again!

When the driver leaves, please turn the control lever from the engaged position to the neutral position first!

Transmission fault!

The vehicle speed is too high to shift!

ABS system fault!

Brake system fault!

ESP fault!

Vehicle stability system OFF*

Vehicle stability and traction torque control system OFF*

Vehicle stability and traction control system OFF*

Downhill assist system fault!

One-button startup system failure!

No smart remote key found!

Please press the brake to start!

Please switch to P/N gear to start!

Please step on the clutch to start !

Please switch to P gear and stop !

The key is forgotten in the vehicle

The key in the vehicle leaves!

Low key power !

Engine immobilizer authentication failed!

Lightly step on the brake and press the ignition button to exit the remote start!

Electric steering column lock not unlocked!*

Steering failure, please stop!*

Steering column lock failure, please repair!*

Please turn the steering wheel!*

Rapid tire leakage!*

High tire temperature!*

Tire high pressure!*

Low tire pressure!*

Tire pressure sensor failure!*

Insufficient power of tire pressure sensor!*

Tire pressure sensor missing!*

Tire pressure system failure!*

Driving recorder SD card is not inserted, please insert SD card !*

Driving recorder failure !*

The emergency video recording space of driving recorder is full, please clean it up!*

Please view parking surveillance video !*

SD card failure, please replace SD card!*

SD card is not formatted, please format SD card !*

The photo storage folder is full, please delete the photo!*

4H state ON / 4L state ON

Your driving time is too long, please stop for a rest!

Please switch to gear N for 4H / 4L switching*

Please depress the clutch for 4H/4L switching!*

Please move the shift lever back to the left !*

A lot of carbon is accumulated in the GPF, 80-100 km/h driving is required to help the GPF regenerate!

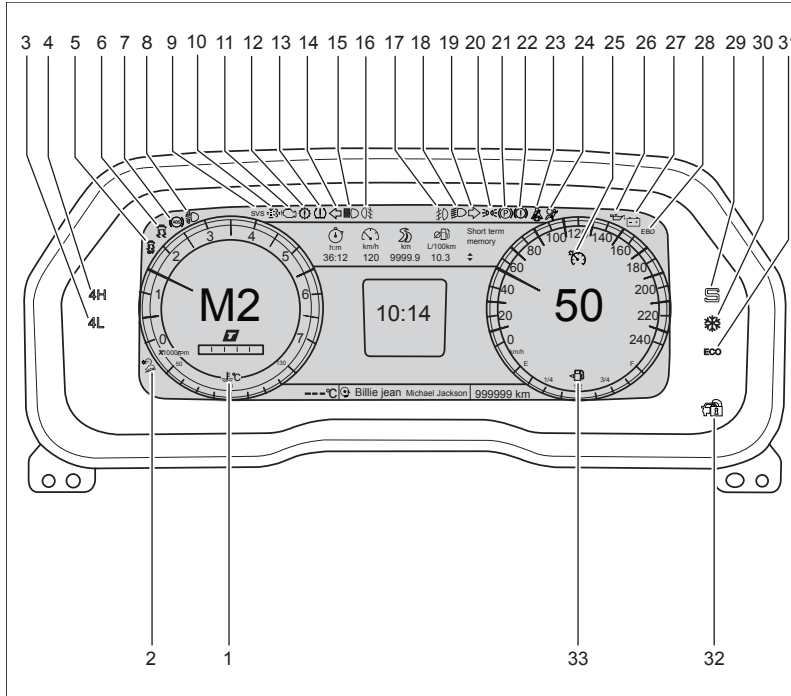
Too much carbon is accumulated in GPF, please go to the repair shop immediately!

Shifting to 4H gear*

Shifting to 4L gear*

Engine system failure, please go to the repair shop immediately !

Warning light indicator light



1. Engine water temperature high indicator light
2. Downhill assist indicator light
3. 4L indicator light
4. 4H indicator light
5. ESP indicator light
6. ESP working/fault indicator light
7. ABS system fault indicator light
8. AHL fault indicator light
9. Engine electronic fault indicator light
10. GPF indicator light
11. Engine emission fault indicator light
12. Transmission fault indicator light
13. TPMS alarm/fault indicator light
14. Left turn signal indicator light
15. High-beam light indicator light
16. Rear fog light indicator light.
17. Front fog light indicator
18. Low beam light indicator light

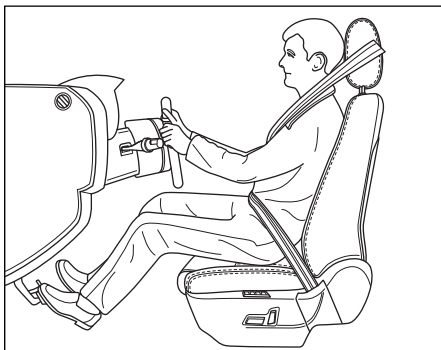
19. Right turn signal indicator light
20. Position light indicator light
21. Parking indicator light
22. Low brake fluid level indicator light
23. Seat belt reminder indicator light
24. Airbag fault indicator light
25. Cruise control indicator light
26. Low oil pressure indicator light
27. Low battery indicator light
28. Brake system fault indicator light
29. Sport mode indicator light
30. Snow mode indicator light
31. economy mode indicator light
32. low fuel indicator light
33. Anti-theft indicator light

For Warning indicator light descriptions, see "Introduction to Warning Indicators" on page 069

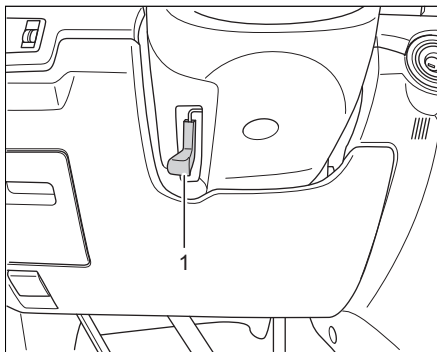
Steer wheel

Adjust steering wheel position

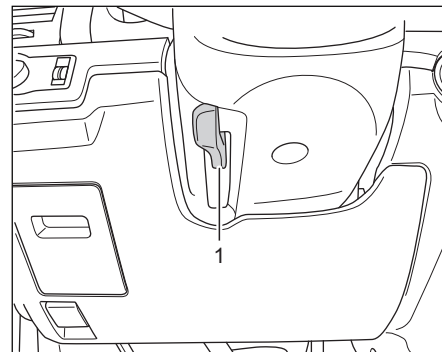
2



The driver can adjust the height of the steering wheel according to his/ her body shape.



1. Adjust the driver's seat to the correct position, then push the locking handle -1-down to unlock the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel up and down, front and rear direction to the proper position, so it points toward your chest. Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.



3. Then push the locking handle up to lock it.
4. Move the steering wheel in up, down, front and rear directions, to confirm whether the steering wheel is locked.

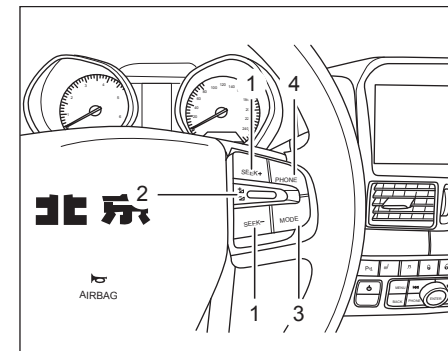
 Warning

- Failure to use the steering wheel position adjustment device according to the operating regulations and incorrect sitting posture can cause serious injuries.
- To avoid dangerous driving conditions and accidents, only adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is stopped.
- When adjusting the driver's seat or the steering wheel, make sure that the distance between the steering wheel and the driver's chest is not less than 25 cm. If less than 25 cm, the airbag system could not play a better role in protection.
- The locking handle must be pressed firmly to prevent the position of the steering column from changing during vehicle driving.

 Warning

Do not let the steering wheel point toward your face. Otherwise, you cannot get effective protection from your front airbag during a crash. After adjusting, make sure the steering wheel points toward your chest.

Multifunction Steering Wheel (Type I)*



The audio navigation system function buttons of the multifunction steering wheel include:

1. FM key
“SEEK+”

In radio mode:

Short press for one step backward (frequency increasing direction) to search for radio signals, long press to search for radio signals automatically backwards.

USB mode: short press for the next song, long press for fast forward

BT music mode: short press for the previous song

“SEEK-”

In radio mode:

Short press for a step forward (frequency reduction direction) to search for radio signals, long press

to automatically search for radio signals forward

USB mode: short press for the previous song, long press for fast reverse

BT music mode: short press for the previous song

2. Volume adjusting button

“VOLUME+”

Short press Volume Step to increase

Press and hold Volume Step to increase continuously

“VOLUME-”

Short press Volume Step to decrease

Press and hold Volume Step to decrease continuously

3. MODE mode switching:

4. Bluetooth function button

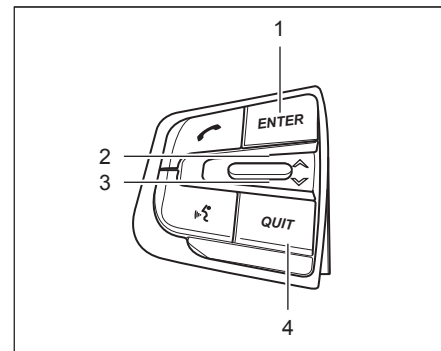
Short press:

- Switch from other mode to BT mode
- End code replay function in call record
- Telephone answering function

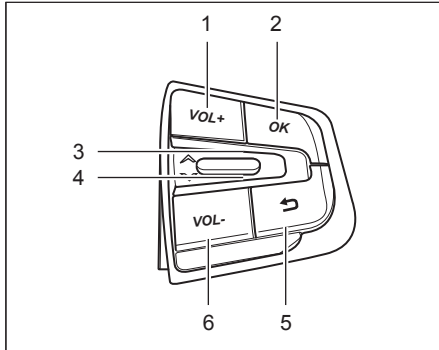
Long press:

Hangup under conversation/ reject to hang up under non-conversation state.

Multifunctional steering wheel (II)

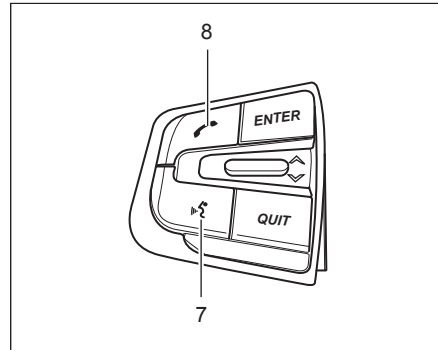


1. Enter button
2. Page up button
3. Page down button
4. Exit button



1. "VOL+" button, short press: the volume increases in the stepping mode; long press: the volume increases in the continuous mode;
2. "OK" button: function selection confirmation button;
3. "▲" adjusting button: control the cursor focus of the large screen and the menu focus to move up;
4. "▼" adjusting button: control the cursor focus of the large screen and the menu focus to move down;
5. "↶" button to return: the function;

6. "VOL-" button, short press: the volume decreases in the stepping mode; long press: the volume decreases in the continuous mode;

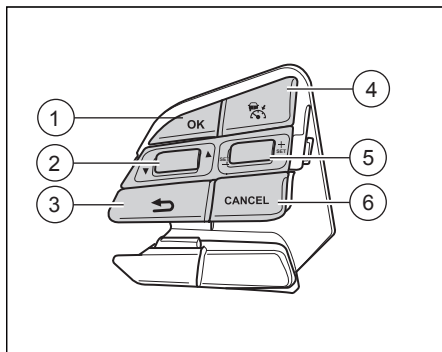


7. "☎" button, voice recognition function;
 8. "↵" button, short press: (1) switch from other modes to BT mode; (2) last code replay function in call records; (3) answer phone function;
- Long press: Hangup under conversation/
reject to hang up under non-conversation state.

i Tips

For the specific functions of the audio navigation system control buttons of the multi-function steering wheel, please refer to the audio navigation system instruction manual.

Multifunction steering wheel (Type III)*

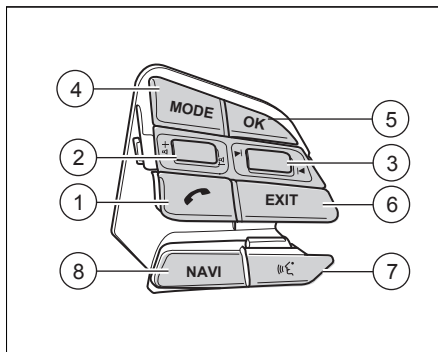


1. Press the OK button -1- on the left side of the steering wheel to enter the instrument information function setting and confirmation.
2. Move the left toggle -2- on the left side of the steering wheel up and down to realize the up and down selection of instrument information.
3. Press the return button -3- on the left side of the steering wheel to exit the instrument information function setting.
4. Press the cruise button -4- on the left side of the steering wheel to turn the cruise function on/off.
5. Toggle up and down the toggle -5- on the left side of the steering wheel

near the right position, cruise resume / speed increase (RES +), cruise set / speed decrease (SET -).

6. Press the "CANCEL" button -6- on the left side of the steering wheel to cancel cruise control.

Right button group *



1. Enter the phone interface, answer/hang up the call.
2. Move the left toggle -2- on the left side of the steering wheel up and down to realize the up and down selection of instrument information.
3. Toggle the knob -2- on the right side of the steering wheel close to the left up and down to increase or decrease the

audio volume.

4. Press the mode button -4- on the right side of the steering wheel to switch the mode interface in the large audio screen.
5. Press the OK button -5- on the right side of the steering wheel to confirm the host function.
6. Press the EXIT button -6- on the right side of the steering wheel to exit the host function.
7. Press the language control button -7- on the right side of the steering wheel to realize voice control.
8. Press the NAVI button -8- on the right side of the steering wheel to enter the navigation function.

i Tips

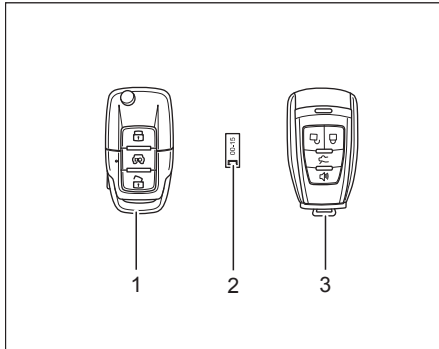
For the specific functions of the audio navigation system control buttons of the multi-function steering wheel, please refer to the audio navigation system instruction manual.

Start and stop the vehicle

Keys

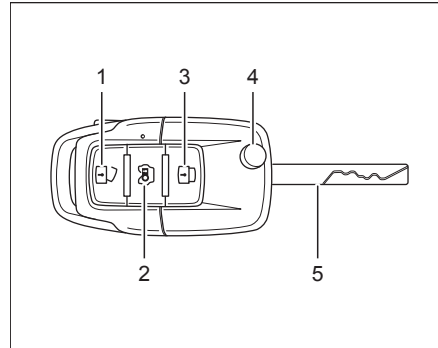
The vehicle is equipped with 3 types of buttons:

B80c model is equipped with 2 smart keys
Both models also have a button code plate.



1. Remote key
2. key coding plate
3. Smart keys

Remote control key



1. Unlock button: Unlock the door and release the anti-theft alarm.
2. Tailgate button: Unlock the tailgate.
3. Lock key: lock the door and set up defenses
4. Key eject button: Press it down to eject the key.
5. Key part.

Attention

When the unlocking / locking is pressed repeatedly, the door lock protection function will be triggered, and the unlock function will be temporarily disabled.

Attention

When you operate the remote key, you do not need to aim the remote key at the vehicle, but the key must be within a certain range to function when you press the key.

Please note that the operating range of the remote control key will be affected by the battery charge in the key, and sometimes it will also be affected by physical and geographical factors. For safety reasons, please operate remotely when approaching the door.

Please use the remote control key within the effective distance, but in some special cases, such as when there is electromagnetic interference nearby or in the signal blind spot area, the effective range will be reduced. For details, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC immediately. If the key does not operate within the normal distance:

- Check whether there is a radio transmitter nearby that interferes with the normal operation of the key, such as a radio station or an airport.
- The battery may be exhausted, check the battery in the key. To replace the battery, please refer to “Replace Battery”.

If the key is lost, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC as soon as possible to avoid vehicle theft.

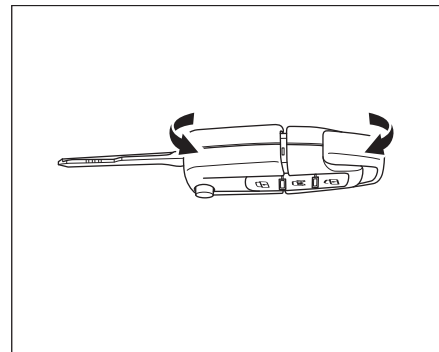
Replace the battery

The battery of the remote control key can be used for about two years (calculated as 10 times per day). If the effective distance of the remote control is less than 5 meters, or the service life is reached, please check and replace it at the authorized dealer of BAIC in time to avoid inconvenience.

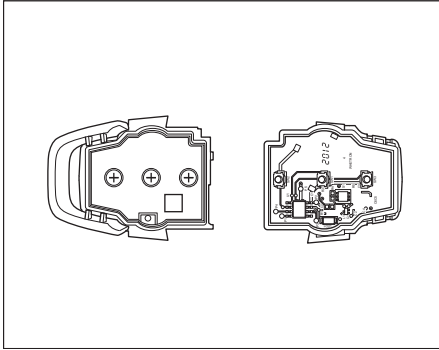
It is easy to damage the key when replacing the battery, so it is recommended to entrust an authorized dealer of BAIC to replace it.

If you need to replace it yourself, you need to use CR1632 lithium battery and replace it with a flat head screwdriver.

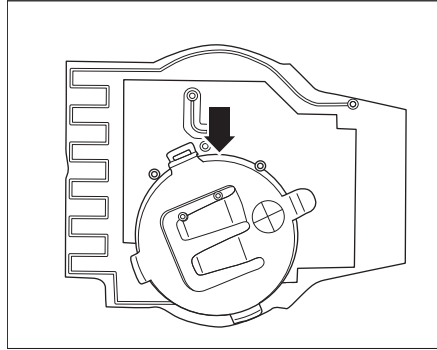
Please replace the key battery according to the following steps:



1. Separate the upper (key) and lower (remote control) parts of the remote key. The operation is as follows: the key direction of the remote control key is facing the operator. The operator holds the key part with his left hand and the remote control part with his right hand. The two ends of the remote control key are gently pressed toward the operator to break off the remote control key.



2. Pry the upper and lower housings of the remote control by the a small screwdriver. Please take care not to damage the upper and lower housings.



3. Remove the circuit board and remove the battery. Try not to touch the contact surface between the circuit board and the battery clamp during operation.

4. Install a new battery. Do not touch the battery surface when installing the battery and wipe the battery clean before installation.
5. Reinstall the remote control. Ensure that the upper and lower housings of the remote control are engaged together to prevent dust and moisture from entering.
6. Reassemble the upper (key part) and lower (remote controller part) of the remote key.

 **Warning**

The remote control key contains electronic circuits, so it must be resistant to shock, water, high temperature, humidity, direct sunlight, and corrosion by flux.

Attention

- **Please do not touch the circuit board, otherwise static electricity may be generated, thus damaging the remote key.**
- **Avoid loss of any of its components when the battery in the remote key is pressed.**
- **Make sure that the positive and negative poles of the remote control key battery are installed correctly.**
- **Do not replace the battery of the smart remote control key with wet hands. Water will cause the battery to rust.**
- **Only the same or the same type of battery recommended by the authorized dealer of BAIC can be used for replacement.**
- **Waste batteries must be disposed of according to local laws.**

Remote key matching

If you need to match the key again due to the loss of the remote control key, please go to the authorized dealer of BAIC in time, where professionals will carry out relevant operations with special equipment.

Attention

After the remote control key is re-matched, the remote control key matched with the vehicle before this will no longer be used. Therefore, all the keys that need to be used should be matched when re-matching.

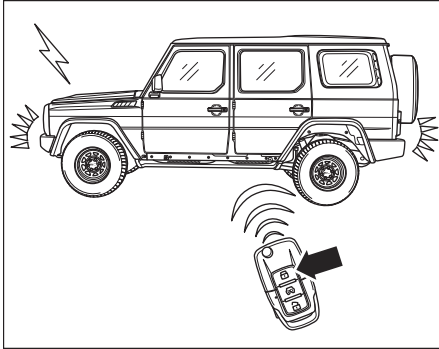
Each vehicle can match up to 2 remote control keys at the same time.

Anti theft-alarm system

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic anti-theft alarm system and in order to ensure maximum safety and convenience, we strongly recommend you to fully understand its characteristics and usage by carefully reading the contents of this chapter.



Remote control key setting anti-theft



The remote control key is outside the cabin, the ignition switch is OFF, the hood, four doors and tailgate are closed, press the lock button, the turn signal flashes once, and the doors and tailgate are locked at the same time. The anti-theft status indicator light in the instrument information center flashes about once every 3 seconds. Indicates that the system has entered the anti-theft alert state. In this state, the anti-theft system monitors the status of the hood, doors, tailgate, and ignition switch.

If the vehicle does not meet the locking conditions, that is, any of the hood, doors and tailgate is not closed tightly or the ignition switch is in a non-OFF position or the remote control key is in the vehicle, the vehicle will not respond to pressing the lock button. It is not possible to lock the vehicle and set the immobilizer at this time.

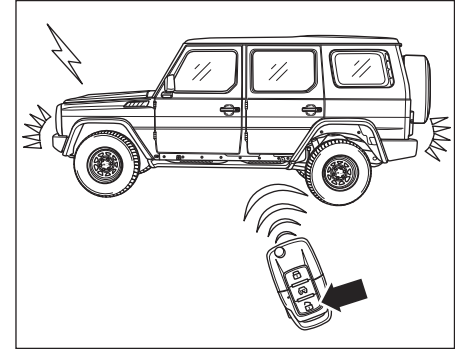
Vehicle locking conditions:

- All door locks, hood and tailgate locks are normally closed;
- The ignition switch is in the "OFF" position.
- The remote control key is outside the cabin.

Attention

After the remote key is used for defense, the mechanical key cannot be used to remove the anti-theft. If the engine is started within 15s after the vehicle is unlocked with the mechanical key in the defense state, the anti-theft can be removed if the key is correctly matched.

Remote key disarming anti-theft



In the state of being fortified and not triggering alarm, all doors are unlocked at the same time after pressing the unlock button. At this time, the turn signal light flashes twice, and the anti-theft status indicator light in the instrument information center goes out.

After using the remote unlocking function, please open any door within about 30 seconds, otherwise all doors will automatically lock again and enter the anti-theft alert state again; If the door is opened within 30 seconds, it will not be locked again when it is closed again, and the anti-theft Warning will be released.

Alarm Triggered

When the anti-theft system is triggered, the turn signal will flash for about 30 seconds, and the horn will alarm for about 30 seconds. No matter whether the trigger signal is removed or not, the system will alarm for about 30 seconds and then stop the alarm.

Stop the alarm after 30 seconds. If triggered again, the alarm will be triggered again.

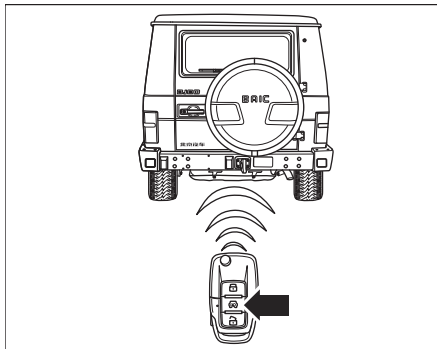
When the alarm is triggered, the anti-theft status indicator light in the message center will be on.

Attention

This system only monitors the hood status, status signals of all doors, status signals of tailgate and ignition switch signals. Only make an alarm when the above signals are illegally triggered.

After the alarm is triggered due to misoperation, when the ignition switch is off, the alarm can be released by pressing the remote unlock or closing key.

Remote key unlocking tailgate



Press the tailgate key once in the armed state to unlock the tailgate. At this time, the doors on both sides are still locked. If the mechanical key is used to open the door at this time, the anti-theft alarm cannot be released; If the tailgate is not opened within about 30 seconds, it will automatically lock and enter the alert state immediately.

When the tailgate is unlocked in the armed state, and then the tailgate is opened and then closed, it will automatically lock after 5 seconds, double flashing once, and enter the alert state;

If the tailgate is always open, it will not enter the alert state no matter how long it takes.

When opening and closing the tailgate, do not put the key in the vehicle to avoid being automatically locked in the car.

Power off state memory

After the vehicle is powered off, no matter how long it is, the anti-theft module will return to the state before power off after 1 second of power on.

Secondary fortification

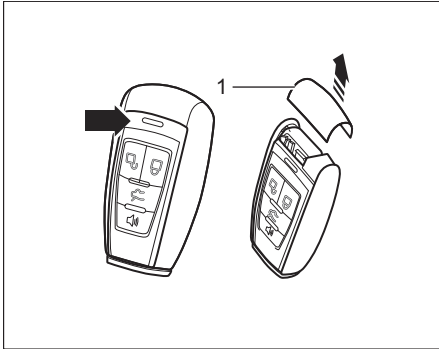
The system is in an anti-theft alert state. After pressing the unlock button, the anti-theft alert state will be released. If the key and door state has not changed within 30s, the system will automatically re-enter the anti-theft alert state. If the unlock key is pressed again within 30 seconds, the timing will be restarted.

Mute Function

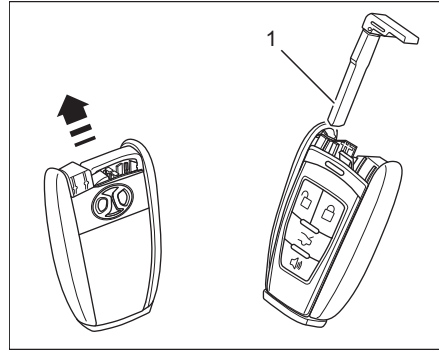
When the vehicle is set to be locked, the horn emits a reminder sound. For details, please refer to the relevant chapters of "Multi-function Combination Instrument".

Smart remote key (type I)*

The intelligent remote control button contains a mechanical key, and the mechanical key is used in an emergency. If the smart remote key does not work, the mechanical key can be used to open the door.



1. Press the release button -arrow -.
2. Remove the mechanical key cap-1-in the direction of-arrow-.



3. Pull out the mechanical key -1- in the -arrow - direction.

Smart remote key: it can use the wireless remote control function to lock or unlock all doors, open the trunk and realize the vehicle search function.

Mechanical key: under the normal power supply of the vehicle, the mechanical key can lock and unlock all doors.

When taking the aircraft with the smart remote key, make sure not to press any button on the smart remote key in the cabin. Pressing the button may cause the smart

remote key to emit radio waves, which may interfere with the flight of the aircraft.

Attention

When using the smart remote key with the transceiver chip, please follow the following instructions:

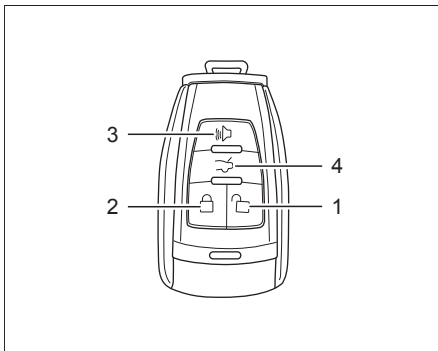
- Do not attach any object which may block the transmission of electromagnetic wave, such as a metal cover, to the smart remote key.
- Do not knock at other objects with the smart remote key.
- Do not expose the smart remote key to high temperature for a long time, such as on the dashboard or engine hood in direct sunlight.
- Do not immerse the smart remote key in water or clean it in an ultrasonic scrubber.
- Do not put the smart remote key with a device that emits electromagnetic waves, such as a mobile phone.

Tips

After using the mechanical key, please put it back.

2

Wireless remote control



The smart remote control key has 4 buttons, which are:

1. Unlock button: unlock the door lock;
2. Locking button: lock the door lock

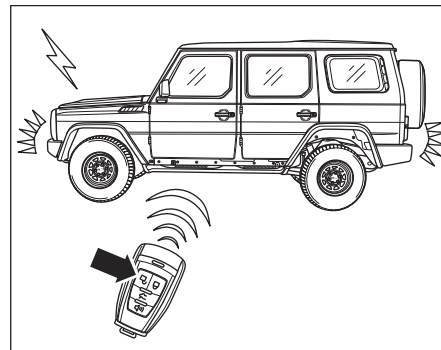
3. vehicle search button: press this button in the fortified state, and the vehicle will send out lights and sound reminders.

4. Tailgate unlock key: unlock the tailgate
The same vehicle can be equipped with two remote keys. For details, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC immediately. If the key does not operate the doors or does not operate within the normal distance:]

- Check for radio transmitters nearby that interfere with the normal operation of the key and the surrounding environment, such as radio stations or airports.
- Battery power might have run off. Check the battery inside the key. To replace the battery, please refer to “Replace Battery”.

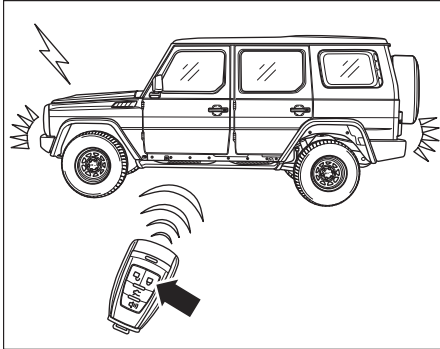
If the key is lost, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC as soon as possible to avoid vehicle theft.

Unlock the door



When the unlock button is pressed, all doors are unlocked at the same time. Now, the turn signal light flashes twice.

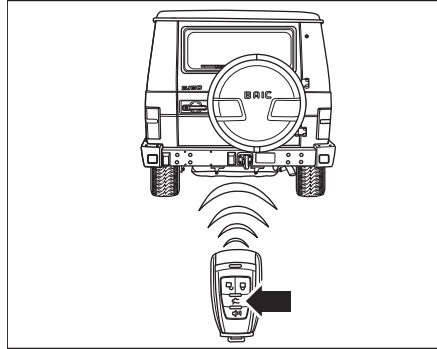
After using the wireless remote control unlocking function, please open any door within about 30s, otherwise all doors will automatically lock again.

Lock the door

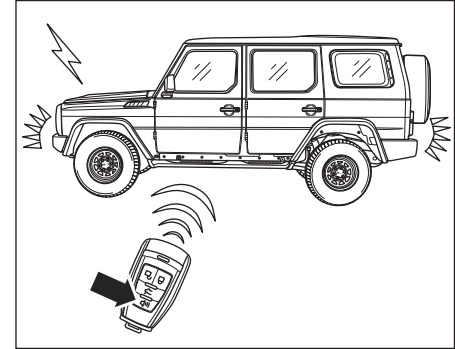
The smart remote key is outside the vehicle, the start/stop button is in "OFF" mode, the hood, four doors and tailgate are closed, press the lock button to lock the doors.

i Tips

After the remote control is successfully locked, the turn signal flashes once and the horn sounds once, and the user can turn on or off the horn function in the combination instrument or the central control display.

Unlock the tailgate

Long press the tailgate unlock button to unlock the tailgate.

Car search function *

When the vehicle is in a fortified state, within a distance of less than 50m (open field), press the car search button on the smart remote key, and the turn signal will flash twice, the anti-theft horn will sound twice, and the four doors will not be unlocked.

Replace the battery

When the power of the remote key is insufficient, the trip computer display will display "low power of the smart remote key" to remind you to replace the battery.

When replacing the battery, it is necessary to open the battery cover on the key. If it is not operated properly, it is easy to damage the key. Therefore, it is recommended to entrust authorized dealer of BAI to replace it.

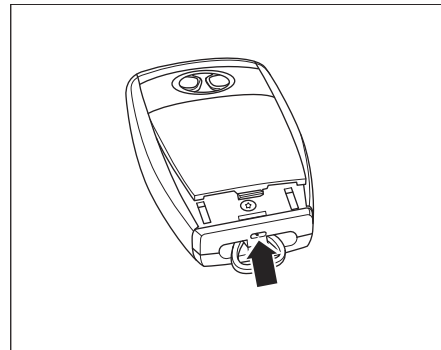
Warning

- **Please do not touch the circuit board, otherwise static electricity may be generated, thus damaging the remote key.**
- **Don't lose any parts when replacing the battery of the key.**
- **Replace only with the same or equivalent type of battery recommended by BAIC.**
- **Waste batteries must be disposed of according to local laws.**

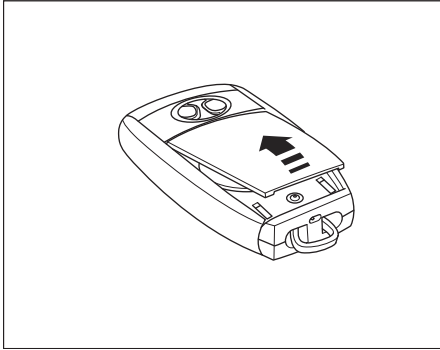
Attention

- **Make sure that the positive and negative poles of the remote control key battery are installed correctly.**
- **Do not replace the remote key battery with wet hands to avoid the battery from being rusted.**
- **Do not touch or move any parts in the remote key, otherwise it will affect the function of the key.**
- **Be careful not to bend the electrodes when inserting the remote key battery, and do not stick dust or oil in the battery box.**

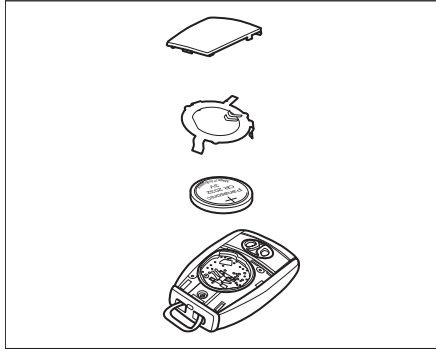
Replace the key battery



1. Insert a sharp tool such as tweezers into the small hole on the lower end of the key.

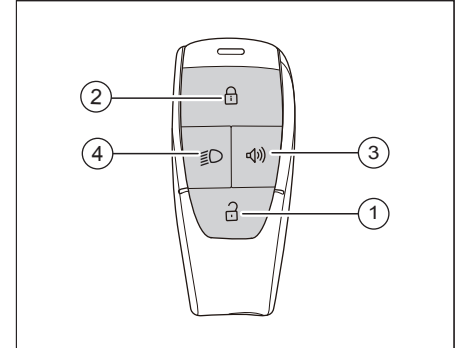


2. Unlock the key battery cover locking card and open the battery cover.



3. Remove the battery and avoid touching the circuit board and battery clamp;
4. Do not touch the battery surface when installing the battery and wipe the battery clean before installation;
5. Ensure that the battery cover is well engaged during installing to avoid the intrusion of dust and water vapor;
6. After the battery is replaced, it is necessary to test whether the function of the smart remote key is normal. If the smart remote key still doesn't work normally, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC.

Smart remote key (II)*



The smart remote key has four buttons, which are:

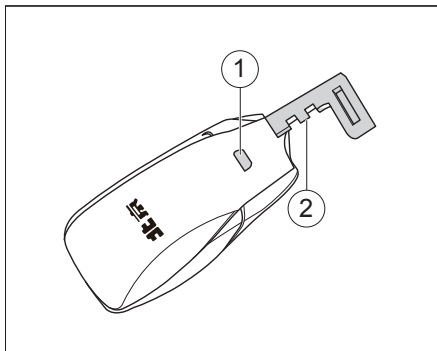
1. Unlock button: unlock the door lock;
2. Locking button: lock the door lock
3. Vehicle search button: Press this button in the fortified state, and the vehicle will send out lights and sound reminders.
4. Light button: turn on the small light and low beam (long press), turn off after a period of time.

The effective range of the remote control key is about 25 meters, but in some special cases, such as when there is electromagnetic interference nearby or in a signal blind spot, the range will be reduced. For details, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC immediately. If the key does not operate the doors or does not operate within the normal distance:]

- Check for radio transmitters nearby that interfere with the normal operation of the key and the surrounding environment, such as radio stations or airports.
- Battery power might have run off. Check the battery inside the key. To replace the battery, please refer to “Replace Battery”.

If the key is lost, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC as soon as possible to avoid vehicle theft.

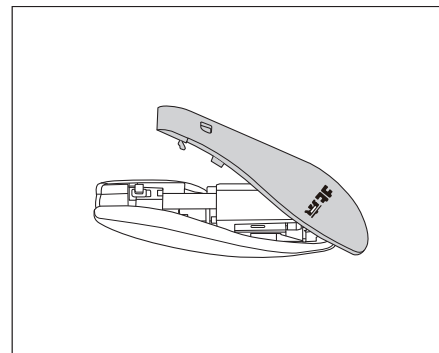
Take out the mechanical key.



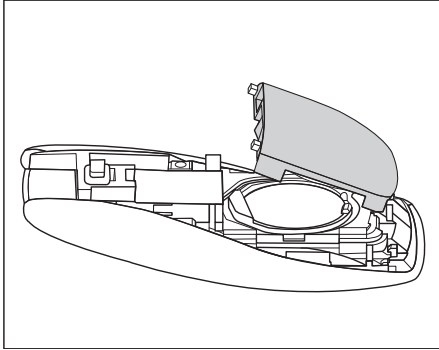
1. Press the release button -1-.
2. Pull out the mechanical key -2-.

Please replace the key battery according to the following steps:

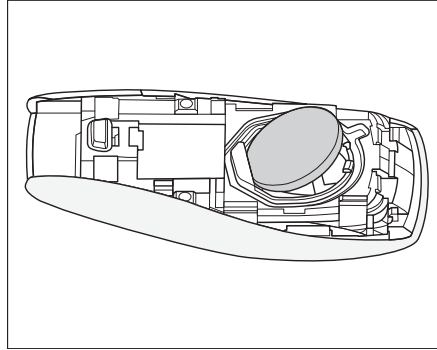
1. Press the back mechanical key switch to take out the mechanical key;



2. After forcibly opening the key rear cover of the mechanical key card slot,



3. Open the battery cover with a sharp tool;



4. Remove the battery and avoid touching the circuit board and battery clamp;
5. Do not touch the battery surface when installing the battery and wipe the battery clean before installation;
6. Ensure that the battery cover is well engaged during installing to avoid the intrusion of dust and water vapor;
7. After the battery is replaced, it is necessary to test whether the function of the smart remote key is normal. If the smart remote key still doesn't work normally, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC.

Central door locking system

Central door lock system operation instructions

The central door lock system can lock and unlock all doors:

1. Operate the central door lock system with the remote transmitter.
2. Operate the central locking system with a mechanical key;
3. The central locking system is operated with the central locking button on the dashboard.
4. Activating the central locking system with the lock lever on the driver's door

Operating the central door and lock with the remote control key

Press the lock button of the remote key. If the vehicle meets the lock condition, the central door lock system will lock, that is, both the door and the tailgate will lock.

Press the unlock button of the remote key, and the central door lock system is unlocked, that is, all doors are unlocked at the same time.

2. Operate the central door lock with mechanical key

When the vehicle meets the locking condition, insert the key into the driver's side door lock hole and rotate in the rear direction (clockwise), and the central door lock system will be locked; Turn the mechanical key in front of the car (counterclockwise) to lock it.

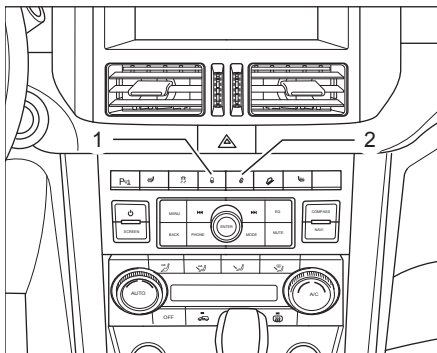
However, the unlocking (turning the key clockwise)/locking (turning the key counterclockwise) of the front passenger side door and the tailgate by the mechanical key is only applicable to the unlocking/locking of the corresponding door lock, and cannot unlock/lock all the doors at the same time.

Tips

Except for the remote control, the other locking conditions are: the hood, four doors and tailgate are all normally closed.

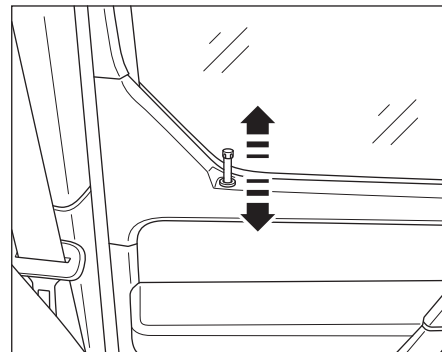
It can be directly unlocked in any state.

Operating the central door lock with the central door lock button



The central door lock button is shown in the picture, it is located in the switch group on the instrument panel. Press button -1- to lock the central door locking system, and press button -2- to unlock.

Operate the central locking with the central locking lever on the driver's door*



The lever is located on the driver's door. Pull up on the lever to unlock the central locking system, and press the lever to lock.

 **Warning**

Do not leave the child or disabled in the vehicle alone. Because once the locking part is manipulated, the door will be locked immediately, and it is difficult for children or disabled people to leave the car in an emergency, and the locked door in the event of an accident will also increase the difficulty of their rescue.

Auto-unlock function

If the car is in a collision, the door locks will automatically unlock.

During the process of the vehicle from driving to stop, when the vehicle speed drops to 0km/h, the engine is turned off, and the central door locking system will be automatically unlocked.

Automatic lock function

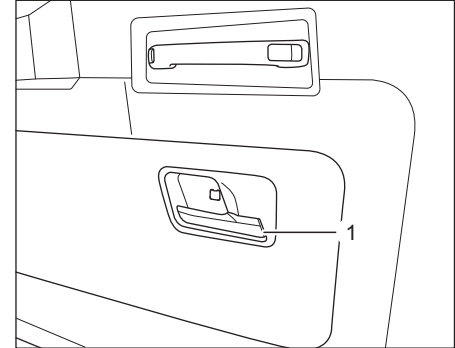
When the vehicle is in driving state and the vehicle speed is greater than 20km/h, the central door locking system will automatically lock.

When the vehicle speed is between 5km/h--20km/h for 30 seconds, the central door locking system will automatically lock.

Thermal protection function of door lock motor

The door lock motor has a thermal protection function. If the door lock is opened and closed many times in a short period of time, the thermal protection function of the door lock motor may be triggered, resulting in the failure of the door lock function in a short time.

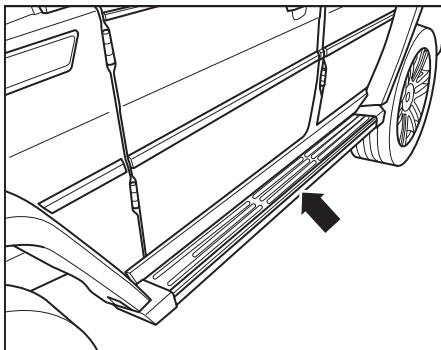
Open the door lock.



When the door is unlocked, pull the interior opening handle -1- to open the door.

Electric fuel filler cap *

When the full door is unlocked or locked, the electric fuel filler cap is automatically unlocked and locked with the full door lock.

Electric Get-on side pedal*

When any one of the front door and rear door on one side of the vehicle is opened, the side pedal will automatically extend; when the front and rear doors on one side are closed at the same time, the pedal will automatically retract.

Initialization of electric get-on side pedal (learning start and end position)

When the power supply of the electric get-on side pedal system is disconnected and then reconnected, the left and right electric get-on side pedals need to be initialized. The initialization method is as follows:

For any door on the left/right side of the vehicle, open the door once and then close

the door, the pedal will be automatically unfolded and retracted twice, the pedal will finally be in the retracted state, and the left/right pedal has been initialized successfully.

If necessary, the pedal on either side can also be initialized by the following methods: Open and close any door for 7 times continuously within 10 seconds, and the pedal on this side will carry out initialization action.

Electric get-on side pedal anti pinch function

When the get-on side pedal on either side is extended and retracted, if an obstacle is encountered, the upper side pedal will move in the opposite direction for a certain distance.

Electric get-on side pedal fault alarm

When the electric get-on side pedal encounters an obstacle or is stuck, if the pedal stops at an incorrect position, the buzzer in the combination instrument will make a sound; And prompt "please check the pedal position" on the instrument LCD screen for about 5 minutes. When any door or hood is opened, the fault information is running in the background program of the instrument, so the start and stop buttons

can be placed in the "RUN" mode, and the "QUIT" button on the steering wheel is pressed to display the fault information.

Opening or closing of electric function of get-on side pedal

The start-stop button is in the "RUN" mode, within 30 seconds, operate the left turn signal light switch 5 times continuously, and then operate the right turn signal light switch 5 times continuously, you can turn on or off the electric function of the pedal on the side of the car. Before an operation is completed, if you find that there is an error in the previous operation, please wait for 30 seconds to carry out the operation again; if the operation cannot be completed within 30 seconds, the operation will be deemed to be automatically abandoned; when the operation is executed correctly, the horn will beep once, indicating that the pedal electric function is turned on or off successfully. If the pedals are deployed, the pedals retract immediately and always remain retracted after the electric function is turned off. To ensure safety, please do not carry out this operation while driving.

Warning

Do not deliberately attempt the anti-pinch feature with any part of your body.

When the electric side pedal is stopped at the neutral position, it is forbidden to step on the pedal.

In case of special road conditions such as sand, ice and snow, mud or rutted roads, rock crawling, etc., the electric function of the side pedals should be turned off.

* ice and snow rock crawling 

 muddy / rutted road

 Sand

Attention

Keep the electric get-on side pedal clean and pay attention to maintenance to maintain its normal operation.

Windows**Power Window**

The vehicle is equipped with power windows on all doors, which can be controlled by the central switch on the main driver's door.

The main driver is equipped with a side window glass one-button lifting with anti-pinch function, and the passenger side only has a one-button lowering function.

Attention

The power windows must be reinitialized after battery reconnection or failure:

- Turn up the switch to raise the glass to the top;
- After the glass rises to the top, keep pressing the switch for about 1 second;

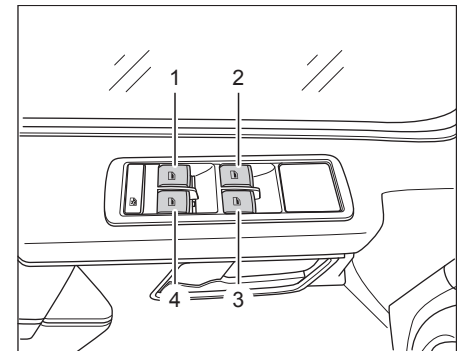
Finally, touch the switch to check the one-key lifting function of the glass.

Attention

In order to avoid damaging the motor of the power window, after opening and closing the window several times, the protective device will be activated and the power window will not operate. After waiting for a period of time, the power windows can return to normal operation.

Operate the windows by the power window buttons

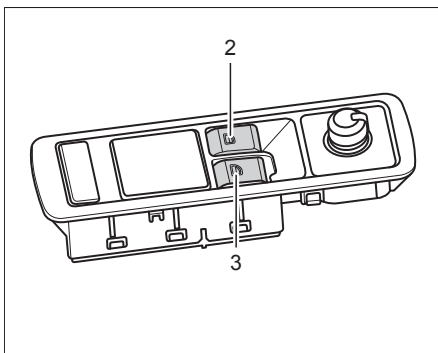
Type I*



Tips

If the vehicle has no electricity and the fuel door lock needs to be opened urgently in the locked state, please open the emergency operation port at the corresponding position on the left rear side panel trim panel of the vehicle to unlock it manually.

Type II *



As shown, the power window button is located on the main driver's door.

1. Control the left rear door window lift

2. Control the driver's door window lift
3. Control the front passenger door window lift
4. Control the right rear door window lift

One-touch power windows

Manual mode.

Press or pull up the control switch continuously, release the switch, and the window will stop lifting;

Auto-mode:

- Press down or dial up the control switch, release the switch, the window will automatically close or fully open;
- During the window movement process, operate the switch, the window will stop moving.

Electrical window

Manual mode.

Press or pull up the control switch continuously, release the switch, and the window will stop lifting;

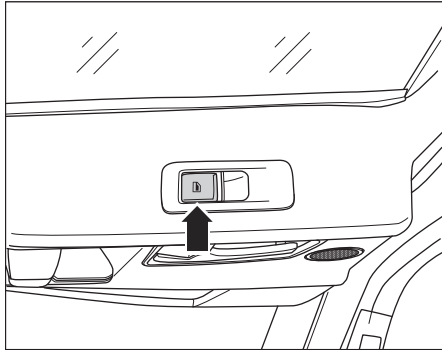
Auto-mode:

Press and hold the control switch, release the switch, the window will automatically fully open; in the process of lowering the window, operate the switch, the window will stop moving.

Warning

The driver's side lifter of this model is equipped with one-button lift and anti-pinch functions to prevent occupants from being pinch-injured when closing the windows, but it is still necessary to ensure that no one is within the window lifting range when opening or closing the doors and windows.

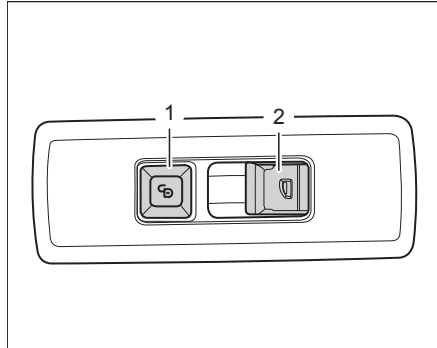
Front passenger and rear window (Type I)*



The power window button - Arrow - is located on the door as shown in the figure. Move the button up or down to control the lift of the windows.

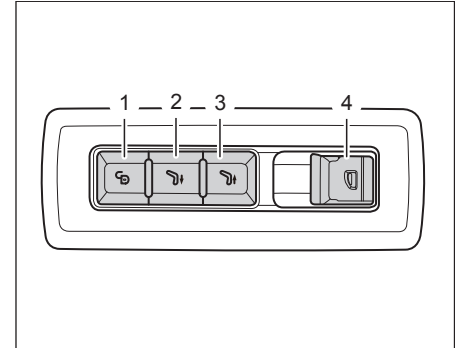
Rear window (type II)*

Left rear door power window switch:



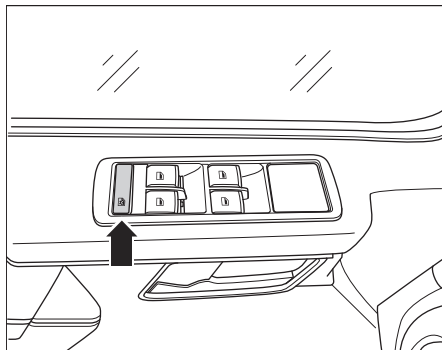
1. Unlock switch; trigger can control the unlocking of four doors;
2. Glass lift switch; pull it to control the glass lift.

Right rear door power window switch



1. Unlock switch; trigger can control the unlocking of four doors;
2. Front passenger seat forward switch; trigger to control the front passenger seat;
3. Front passenger seat back move switch; trigger to control front passenger seat back move
4. Glass lift switch; pull it to control the glass lift.

Safety lock switch



The safety lock switch is located on the driver's door, behind the power window button -arrow- as shown. Pressing the safety lock switch will lock the window lift function of the front passenger and rear doors.

Remote-control lifting window

Press and hold the unlock button of the remote control button for more than 2 seconds, the four-door power window will automatically descend, release the unlock button of the remote control button, and the power window will stop descending immediately.

Long press the lock button of the remote control key for more than 2 seconds, the

four-door power window will automatically rise, release the lock button of the remote control key, and the power window will stop rising immediately.

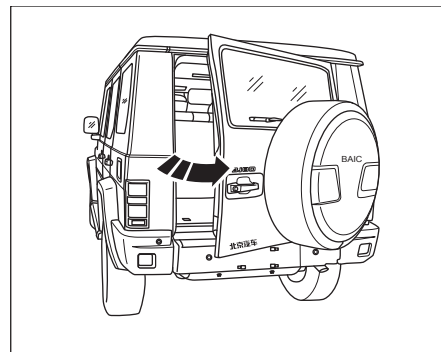
Warning

Be careful when using electric doors and windows. Improper use may cause accidents or injuries!

- **When opening or closing doors and windows, make sure that no one is in the lifting range of doors and windows.**
- **When locking the vehicle, do not leave children or disabled persons alone in the vehicle, because the doors and windows cannot be opened in case of emergency.**
- **Always carry the car key with you when leaving the car, as the doors and windows cannot be raised or lowered when the ignition is turned off.**
- **If children are sitting on the rear seats when the vehicle is running, the rear window lifting function must be turned off with the safety locking switch to prevent it from being opened or closed.**

Tailgate

With the tailgate unlocked, pull the tailgate exterior handle to open the tailgate.



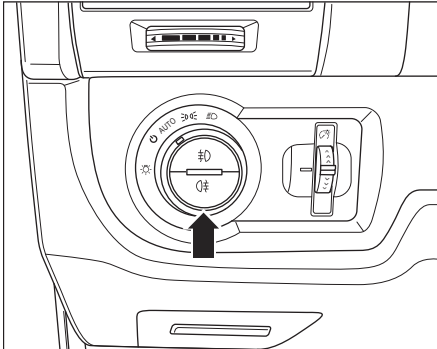
Warning

Do not allow a child to open or close the tailgate, or the child's hands, head or neck may be pinched by the closing tailgate.

Car lights and visual field

Exterior lights

The light switch is located on the left side of the instrument panel.



i Tips

The function of the light switch is slightly different according to the vehicle configuration, and the actual vehicle status shall prevail.

Light control:

All lights are off when the light control knob - arrow - is in the " ⏻ " position, regardless of the position of the ignition lock button or the start/stop button.

All lights are off when the light control knob - arrow - is in the " ⏻ " position, regardless of the position of the ignition lock button or the start/stop button.

After the engine is started, the daytime running lights will automatically turn on. When the small light or low beam light is turned on, or the engine is turned off, the daytime running light will automatically turn off. The user can turn off the daytime running light function in the combination instrument or the central control display.

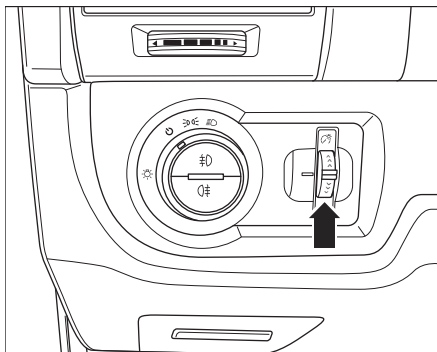
When the ignition key is in the "ON" position or the start / stop button is in the "RUN" mode, turn the light control - Arrow - to the " ⏻ " position, and then turn on the headlight low beam light.

If the vehicle is equipped with automatic headlight control function "AUTO", when the ignition key is in the "ON" position or the start / stop key is in the "RUN" mode, turn the light control - arrow - to the "AUTO" position. At this time, if the vehicle is in low light (such as at night or driving through a tunnel, etc.), the low beam light will automatically turn on.

Attention

- When the engine is off, do not turn on the headlight or other lights for a long time, which will reduce the battery power.
- On rainy days or when washing the car, the inside of the light transmitting mirror of the headlight may be fogged, which is the same as the fogging on the window glass in wet weather, and is not a fault. When the headlight is turned on, its heat will evaporate the fog. However, if water condenses in the headlight, please go to the authorized dealer of BAIC.

Backlight brightness adjustment

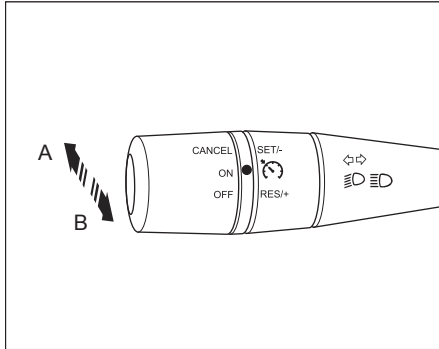



As shown in the figure, the backlight brightness adjusting roller is beside the light switch on the driver's side. When the light switch knob is at the small light position or the low beam light position, the backlight of each button of the complete vehicle will be on, and the backlight of the instrument backlight and the display screen of the radio navigation entertainment system will be dim. Move the adjusting roller upward to enhance the backlight, and move the adjusting roller downward to weaken the backlight. (the display backlight of the radio navigation entertainment system is not controlled by the adjusting roller).

i Tips

When the start/stop button is in the off state, the anti-leakage function will be turned on: the four door lights will automatically turn off after about 8 minutes; the trunk light, glove box light, vanity mirror light, reading light, and rear ceiling light will automatically turn off after about 15 minutes. Within the timing time, the four doors or the tailgate are opened and closed once, and the timing will be restarted. If the remote control locks within the timing time, the corresponding lights will be turned off.

Light control lever (type I)* High and low beam switching

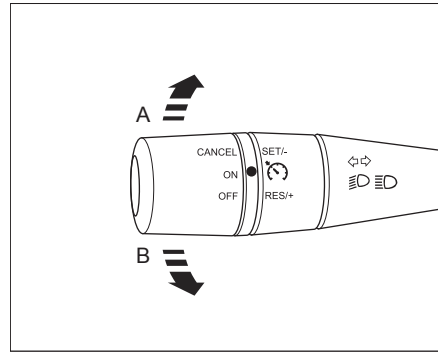




When the light switch is in the low beam light on position, push the left multi-function control lever in the opposite direction of the steering wheel (- Arrow A -), the headlight will change from low beam to high beam, and the blue indicator light  on the combination instrument will be on. Then reset the left multi-function control lever (Arrow - B -), and the headlight will change from high beam to low beam.

Overtaking flash signal

No matter what the position of the light switch knob is, if the left multi-function lever is pulled toward the steering wheel, the high beam of the headlight will be turned on, and the release the multifunction control lever to turn off the high beam.

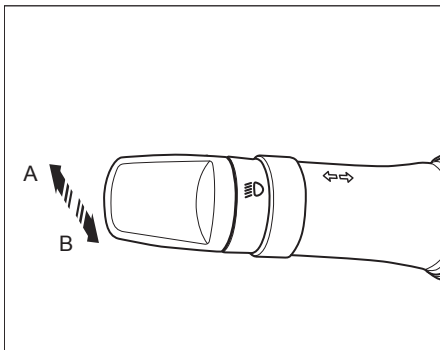
Turn signal light




Toggle the left multi-function lever - arrow A- upward to turn on the right turn signal light, and the green indicator light  in the combination instrument flashes; Toggle the left multi-function lever - arrow B- downward to turn on the left steering light, and the green indicator light  in the combination instrument flashes. After completing

the turning action, after the steering wheel is straightened, the light handle will automatically return to the original position, and the external turn signal light and the turn indicator light in the combination instrument will go out. Gently move the control lever up or down to half gear to signal a lane change, the steering light on the corresponding side will be on, and the steering light will be off when the control lever is released.

Light control lever (type I)* High and low beam switching

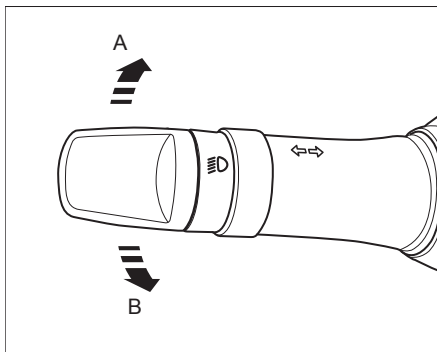




When the light switch is in the low beam light on position, push the left multi-function control lever in the opposite direction of the steering wheel (- Arrow A -), the headlight will change from low beam to high beam, and the blue indicator light  on the combination instrument will be on. Then reset the left multi-function control lever (Arrow - B -), and the headlight will change from high beam to low beam.

Overtaking flash signal

No matter what the position of the light switch knob is, if the left multi-function lever is pulled toward the steering wheel, the high beam of the headlight will be turned on, and the release the multifunction control lever to turn off the high beam.

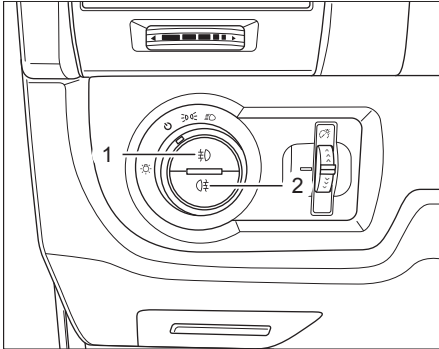
Turn signal light



Toggle the left multi-function lever - arrow A- upward to turn on the right turn signal light, and the green indicator light  in the combination instrument flashes; Toggle the left multi-function lever - arrow B- downward to turn on the left steering light, and the green indicator light  in the combination instrument flashes. After completing

the turning action, after the steering wheel is straightened, the light handle will automatically return to the original position, and the external turn signal light and the turn indicator light in the combination instrument will go out. Gently move the control lever up or down to half gear to signal a lane change, the steering light on the corresponding side will be on, and the steering light will be off when the control lever is released.

Fog light control switch



When the ignition switch is in the "ON" position or the start / stop key is in the "RUN" mode, place the light switch in the small light position or the low beam position, and press the fog light control switch to turn on or off the front / rear fog lights.

Front fog light:

Press the fog light control switch 1 to turn on the front fog lamp. Press it again to turn off the front fog light.

Rear fog light:

First press the fog light control switch 1 to turn on the front fog light, then press the fog light control switch 2 to turn on the rear fog light. Press the fog light control switch 2 again to turn off the rear fog light. When the front and rear fog lights are turned on at the same time, if it is necessary to turn off the front and rear fog lights at the same time, directly press the fog light control switch 1.

Foot-well light off function (models without atmosphere light)*

When the light switch is in the small light position or the low beam light position, the footwell light is turned on. When the start / stop button is in the "run" mode and the front fog light is not turned on, press the rear fog light switch button for two consecutive times, the footwell light will be turned off. If the rear fog light switch button is pressed for two consecutive times, the footwell light will be turned on again.

Reminder that the lights are not turned off

After the ignition is turned off, if the light switch is not turned off, a buzzer will sound when the driver's door is opened. Lighting switch is in "AUTO" position.

Model with atmosphere light*

The atmosphere light is distributed on the four door panels and the door inner buckle. The footwell light is located above the feet of the driver and the passenger. The atmosphere light and the footwell light are controlled at the same time.

- When the small light is turned on or the door is opened, the atmosphere light will be on.
- When the small light goes out and the door is closed, the atmosphere light will go out.
- When the small light is turned off and the door is closed, the atmosphere light will be turned off.
- The atmosphere light can be set by the combination instrument or the central control display. (see chapter on combination instrument)

FOLLOW ME HOME

The light switch is in AUTO gear or low beam light gear, and the low beam light is on. When the start/stop button is in non-ON gear, the low beam light will automatically delay lighting for a period of time. After the remote control key successfully locks the vehicle, the low beam light will be continuously lit or re-lit for a period of time, and the user can adjust the headlight delay time in the combination instrument or the central control display screen.

2

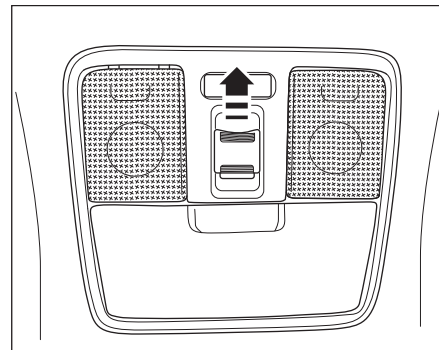
Power sunroof

Power sunroof switch

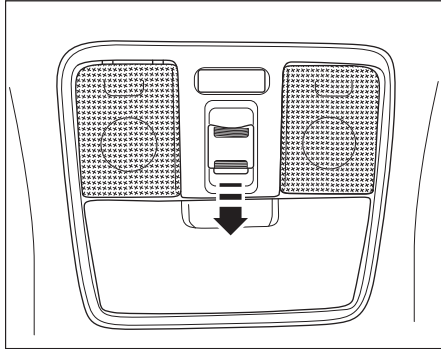
When the "Start/Stop button" is in "RUN" mode, the sunroof can be opened or closed through the electric sunroof switch.

By operating the sunroof switch, the sunroof can be opened, closed and tilted for ventilation.

Electric sunroof sliding open and close

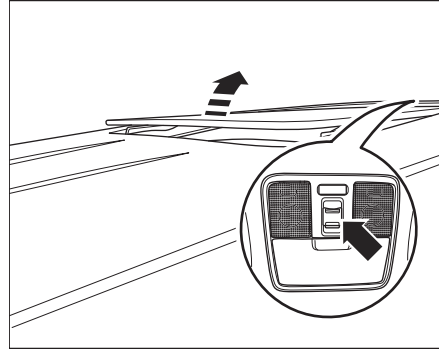


- Pull the sunroof switch backward and keep it for more than 400ms, and the sunroof glass will automatically start to run from the closed position to the sliding open position. At this time, pull the sunroof switch forward or backward to stop the operation of the sunroof glass and keep it at the current position.
- When the sunroof switch is pulled backward for no more than 400ms, the sunroof glass will run from the closed position to the sliding open position. When the switch is released, the sunroof glass will stop running.

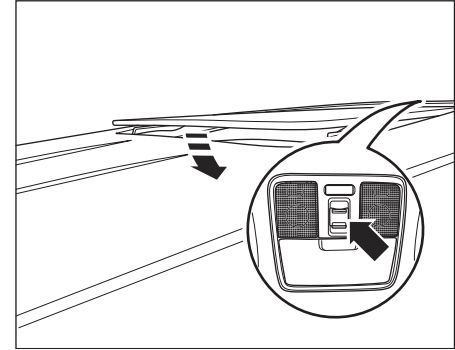


- Pull the sunroof switch forward and keep it for more than 400ms, and the sunroof glass will automatically start to run from the open position to the sliding close position. At this time, pull the sunroof switch forward or backward to stop the operation of the sunroof glass and keep it at the current position.
- Pull the sunroof switch forward for no more than 400ms, and the sunroof glass will run from the open position to the fully closed position. Release the switch during this period, and the sunroof glass will stop running.

Raised ventilation ON and OFF

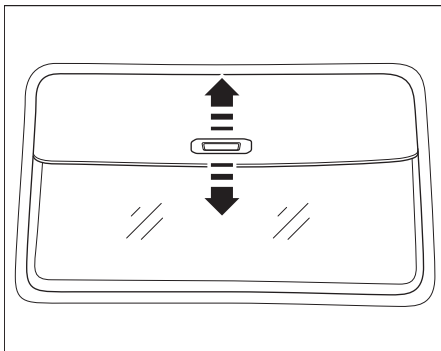


- If the sunroof switch is continuously pressed for more than 400ms, the sunroof glass will automatically move from the closed position to the tilted open position. At this time, if the switch is pressed or pulled down. The sunroof glass stops running and remains at the current position.
- Press the sunroof switch for no more than 400ms, and the sunroof glass will start to run from the closed position to the fully tilted open position. During the operation, release the switch, and the sunroof glass will stop running.



- Pull down the sunroof switch, release the switch during the operation of the sunroof glass from the cocked open position to the fully closed position, and the sunroof glass stops operation.

Sunroof sunvisor



The sun visor opens with the moonroof. You must close it manually.

i Tips

When the sunroof opens, do not force to close the sunvisor of sunroof.

Anti-pinch function of sunroof

When sliding to close the sunroof, press the switch continuously, and the sunroof will automatically close. At this time, the sunroof has anti-pinch function.

The purpose of the anti-pinch feature is to prevent the sunroof from running into any obstacle when it is closing. If the sunroof runs into any obstacle while it is closing, it will stop and then return back a bit.

⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to close the sunroof with extra care. To avoid serious injury, make sure passengers are clear of the sunroof before opening and closing it.**
- **Do not operate the sunroof in low air temperature (below - 20 °C). Under the cold condition, the anti-pinch function may not be activated to cause accident and the motor will be damaged due to low temperature.**
- **Do not attempt to activate the anti-pinch feature by hand or your body part. Doing so can cause serious injury easily.**
- **The anti-pinch feature stops sensing when the sunroof is almost closed to cancel this function.**
- **The anti-pinch feature of the sunroof cannot prevent fingers from being clamped.**

Manual initialization and self-study of sunroof

In some cases (such as sudden power failure of the battery or use after long-term parking), it may be necessary to initialize the sunroof manually.

The specific operations are as follows:

1. Step on the "brake" and press the "one-button start button" at the same time to start the vehicle.
2. Keep pressing the sunroof switch (the direction of sunroof glass tilting) to make the sunroof move to the tilting position.
3. After reaching the tilting position, release the sunroof switch and press the sunroof switch (the tilting direction of the sunroof glass). After hearing the "click", release the sunroof switch again and press the sunroof switch (the tilting direction of the sunroof glass).
4. Keep pressing the sunroof switch (sunroof glass tilting direction) and the sunroof will move according to the following conditions:

Tilt -> Close -> fully open -> close

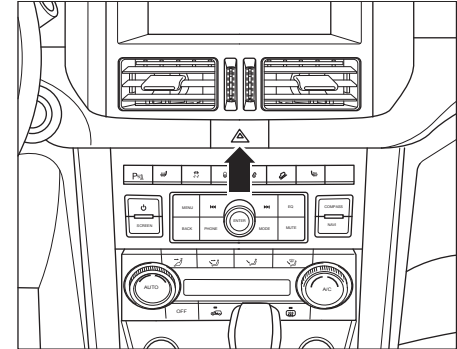
5. Finally, wait for the sunroof to move to the "OFF" position and stop moving, then release the sunroof switch. Initialization ends.

Attention

"Sunroof initialization" is applicable to the first installation of the motor, or "when the sunroof switch is pressed (the direction of sunroof glass tilting), the sunroof will tilt up and lock up at the highest point".

Press the sunroof switch (sunroof glass tilting direction) during the movement of the moving glass, and do not let go.

Hazard Warning light



As shown in the figure, the hazard Warning light switch is located at the upper part of the auxiliary instrument panel switch group.

In the event of emergency, using the hazard Warning lights can cause other road users' attention to avoid leading to traffic accidents. Turn on the hazard Warning lights in one of the following conditions:

1. Your vehicle breaks down due to a technical fault.
2. At the end of traffic flow during traffic jam.
3. In emergency.

4. Towing another vehicle or being towed.

After the hazard Warning light is turned on, all turn signal lights light up at the same time. And two turn signal indicator lights on cluster and all indicator lights in hazard Warning switch also light up, and make a rhythmic prompt tone. When the ignition switch is off, the hazard Warning light can still operate.

2

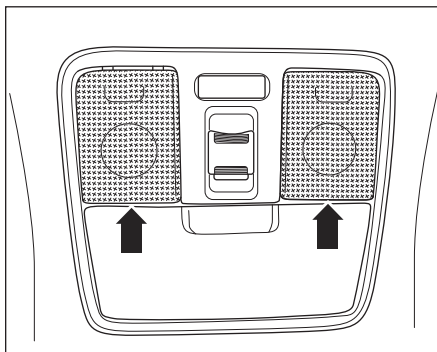
Attention

- Long-term use of hazard Warning lights will consume battery power, even if the ignition switch is turned off, it will also consume battery power.
- Follow the relevant laws and regulations when using the hazard Warning lights.
- If the hazard Warning lights fail, to cause other road users' attention, be sure to take other measures which comply with the relevant traffic laws and regulations.

Interior lighting light

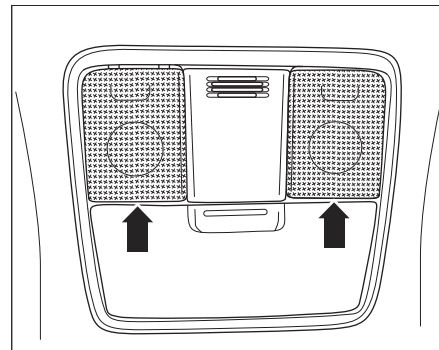
Front reading light

Vehicles equipped with sunroof



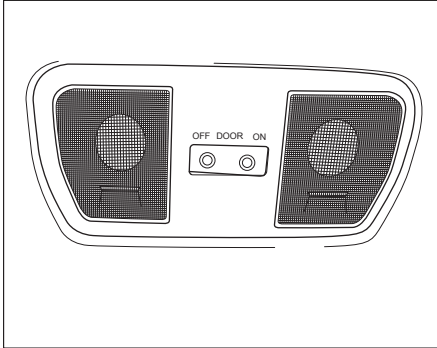
The reading light is located on the roof at the front of the vehicle. Press the light cover panel - arrow - to turn on the front reading light. Press the lampshade - arrow - again to close it.

Vehicles without sunroof



The position and operation mode of the front reading light of vehicles without sunroof are the same as those of vehicles with sunroof.

Rear reading light



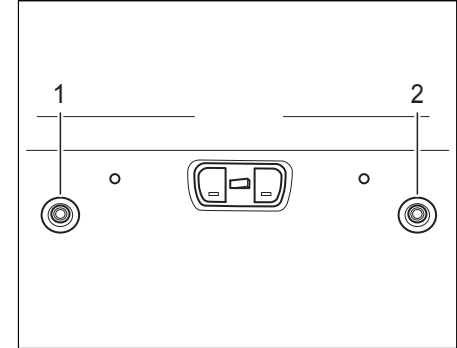
The rear reading light is divided into three positions:

DOOR: The reading light will automatically light up after the door is opened, and gradually go out after the door is closed for about 30 seconds. The interior lighting has a power-saving mode, and will automatically go out after lighting for about 15 minutes at the longest.

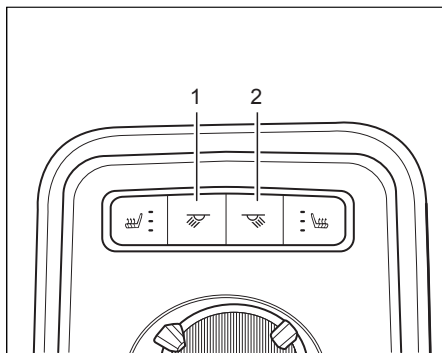
OFF: The reading light is off.

ON: No matter what state the door is in, the reading light is on.

Rear reflector light



1. Left rear reflector light
2. Right rear reflector light

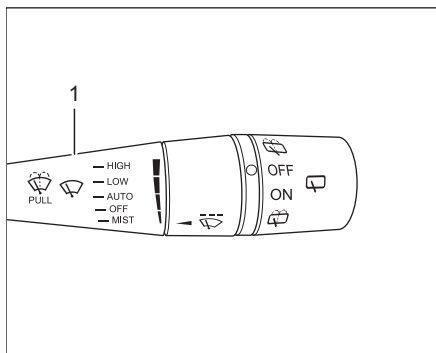


1. Left rear reflector light control switch.
2. Right rear reflector light control switch.

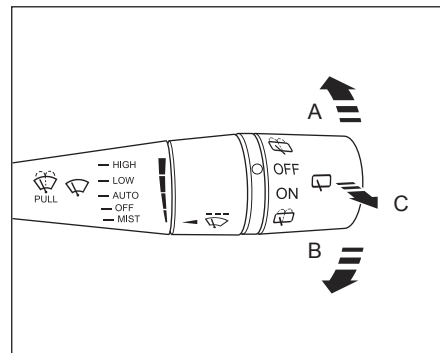
The vehicle is equipped with reflector light and rear ceiling light. The switch is located on the rear middle channel. Press the left (right) ceiling light switch to turn on or off the left (right) reflector light and rear ceiling light. The left and right reflector light switches control the opening and closing of the left and right reflector light in the rear respectively.

Windshield wiper (type I)*

Windshield wipers (with rain sensor models)



The controls for the windscreen wipers are located on the right-hand multifunction lever behind the steering wheel.



Inching and wiping

In the "OFF" position, push the right multi-function control lever in the direction of arrow a as shown in the figure to realize the inching and wiping of the front wiper, that is, operate the control lever once and the wiper will wipe once. After the operation is completed, the control lever will automatically reset.

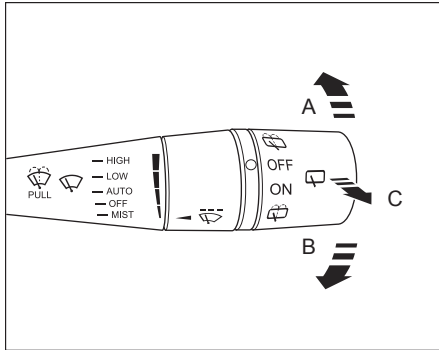
Automatic wiping and continuous wiping

In the "OFF" position, push the right multi-function control lever up to gear 1 in the direction of arrow a as shown in the figure. If the system senses rain, it will open the windshield wiper and adjust the wiping

speed according to the rain.

1 Push up 2nd gear to start low-speed continuous wiping; Pushing up the 3rd gear is high-speed continuous wiping.

Front windshield cleaning



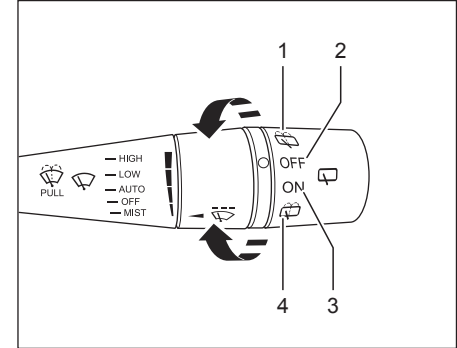
Move the right multi-function control lever in the direction of arrow C as shown in the figure (toward the driver's arms), the windshield washer nozzle will spray the windshield cleaner, and then the wiper will automatically cycle for several times.

If the ignition switch is turned off during the cleaning of the windshield washer, the wiper will continue to operate until it stops after returning to its original position.

In the windshield cleaning mode, if the position of the right multi-function control lever is changed, the wiper will carry out the corresponding function. The exception is: if the intermittent wipe mode is selected, The wiper will not enter the interval mode until the corresponding windshield cleaning mode is completed.

At the end of the windshield cleaning mode, if the wiper control lever is at any position other than "OFF", the wiper will continue to execute the corresponding mode after completing the windshield cleaning mode.

Automatic wiping sensitivity



As shown in the figure, rotate the automatic wiping sensitivity knob - Arrow - to adjust the sensitivity of automatic wiping of the system. The sensitivity is divided into four levels. Rotate the knob upward to the highest level (the most sensitive), rotate the knob downward to the lowest level (the least sensitive), and the middle position is in the order of level 2 and 3. You can adjust the automatic wiping speed according to this knob to meet your driving habits.

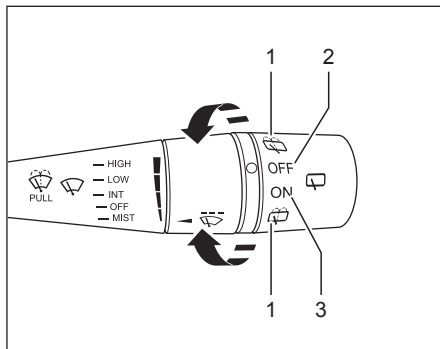
Attention

It is forbidden to use wiper when the windshield is dry.

Under low temperature or hot conditions, ensure that the wiper blade is not frozen/bonded or fixed on the windshield before wiper operation.

In winter, snow and ice should be removed from the wiper arms and wipers, including areas where wipers operate.

Cleaning of rear windshield.



The figure shows the rear windshield wiper control component of the vehicle without rain sensing. The operation function of the rear windshield wiper control component of the vehicle with rain sensing is the same as that of the vehicle with rain sensing, which is located on the right multi-function control lever. There are several switch positions as follows:

1. Cleaning of rear windshield.

When the control ring is rotated to the upper and lower limit positions - 1 -, the windshield cleaner is sprayed to the rear windshield by the rear windshield washer nozzle, and then the rear windshield wiper will automatically cycle for several times. The control ring will reset automatically after release.

2. OFF

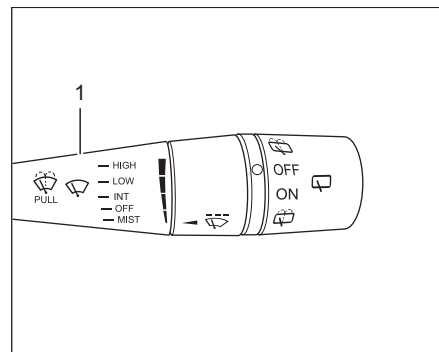
When OFF is in this position, the rear windshield wiper is closed.

3. ON

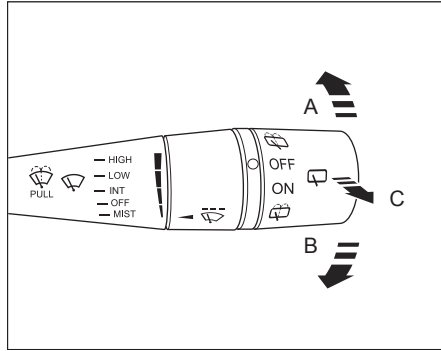
When in this position, the rear windshield wiper will carry out continuous low-speed wiping action.

Windshield wiper (type I)*

Windshield wiper (models without rain sensor)



The controls for the front windscreen wipers are located on the right-hand multifunction lever behind the steering wheel.



Inching and wiping

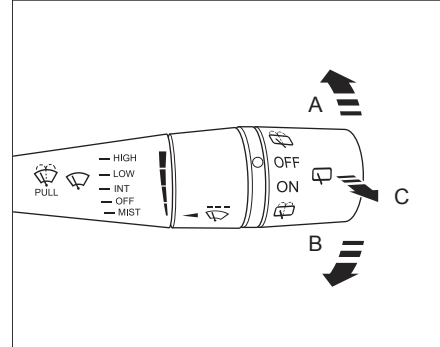
In the "OFF" position, push the right multi-function control lever in the direction of arrow a as shown in the figure to realize the inching and wiping of the front wiper, that is, operate the control lever once and the wiper will wipe once. After the operation is completed, the control lever will automatically reset.

intermittent wiping and continuous wiping

In the "OFF" position, push the right multi-function control lever up to gear 1 in the direction of arrow a as shown in the figure, the windshield wiper starts to wipe intermittently;

1 Push up 2nd gear to start low-speed continuous wiping; Pushing up the 3rd gear is high-speed continuous wiping.

Front windshield cleaning



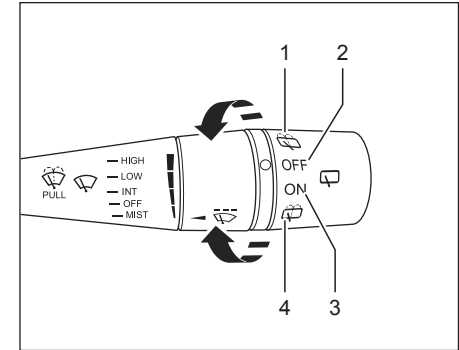
Move the right multi-function control lever in the direction of arrow C as shown in the figure (toward the driver's arms), the windshield washer nozzle will spray the windshield cleaner, and then the wiper will automatically cycle for several times.

If the ignition switch is turned off during the cleaning of the windshield washer, the wiper will continue to operate until it stops after returning to its original position.

In the windshield cleaning mode, if the position of the right multi-function control lever is changed, the wiper will carry out the corresponding function. The exception is: if the intermittent wipe mode is selected, The wiper will not enter the interval mode until the corresponding windshield cleaning mode is completed.

At the end of the windshield cleaning and wiper cycle, if the wiper control lever is at any position other than "OFF", the wiper will continue to execute the corresponding mode after completing the windshield cleaning and wiper cycle.

Intermittent wiping frequency



As shown in the figure, turn the right control lever - arrow -to the "INT" position to control the intermittent wiping frequency of the front windshield wipers. Rotate downward (anticlockwise) to reduce the frequency, and upward (clockwise) to increase the intermittent wiping frequency.

Attention

It is forbidden to use wiper when the windshield is dry.

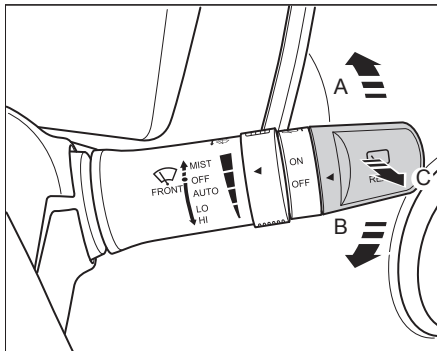
Under low temperature or hot conditions, ensure that the wiper blade is not frozen/bonded or fixed on the windshield before wiper operation.

In winter, snow and ice should be removed from the wiper arms and wipers, including areas where wipers operate.

Windshield wiper (type II)*

Front windshield wiper

The controls for the windscreen wipers are located on the right-hand multifunction lever behind the steering wheel.



Inching and wiping

In the "OFF" position, push the right multi-function control lever in the direction of - Arrow A- as shown in the figure to realize the inching and wiping of the front wiper, that is, operate the control lever once and the wiper will wipe once. After the push-up action is completed, the control lever will reset automatically.

AUTO gear and continuous wiping

In the "OFF" position, press the right multi-function control lever in the direction of arrow B- to 1 gear, the windshield wipers are in the AUTO gear, and the wiper speed is automatically adjusted according to the amount of rain; press the 2nd gear to start low-speed continuous wiping; press the 3rd gear to start high-speed continuous wiping.

LO

When the control lever is turned to "LO", the front wiper wipes slowly.

HI

When the control lever is turned to "HI", the front wiper wipes quickly.

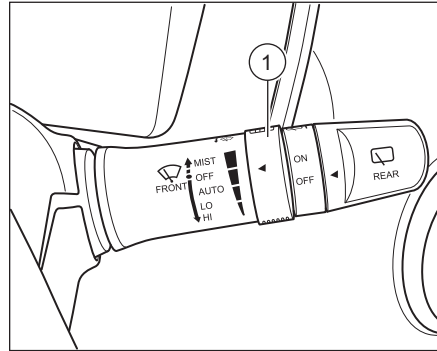
Front windshield cleaning

Move the right multi-function control lever in the direction of arrow C as shown in the figure (toward the driver's arms), the windshield washer nozzle will spray the windshield cleaner, and then the wiper will automatically cycle for several times.

If the one-button start switch is turned off during the cleaning of the windshield washer, the wiper will continue to operate until it stops after returning to its original position.

In the wiper cleaning mode, if the position of the right multi-function control lever is changed, the wiper will carry out the corresponding function. The exception is: if the intermittent wipe mode is selected, the wipers will not start to enter the intermittent wipe mode until the corresponding wiper cleaning mode has been completed.

At the end of the wiper cleaning cycle, if the wiper control lever is at any position except "off", the wiper will continue to execute the corresponding mode after completing the wiper cleaning cycle.



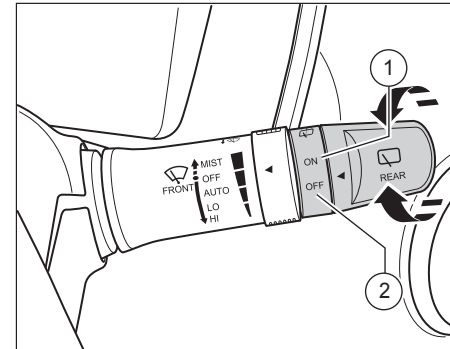
Intermittent wiping frequency

As shown in the figure, turn the end position -1- of the right control lever to control the intermittent wiping frequency of the windshield wiper. Rotate upward (clockwise) to reduce the frequency, and downward (counterclockwise) to increase the intermittent wiping frequency.

👁 Attention

- It is forbidden to use wiper when the windshield is dry.
- Under low temperature or hot conditions, ensure that the wiper blade is not frozen/bonded or fixed on the windshield before wiper operation.
- In winter, snow and ice should be removed from the wiper arms and wipers, including areas where wipers operate.

Rear windshield wiper



The figure shows the rear windshield wiper control component, which is located on the right multifunction lever. There are several switch positions as follows:

2

Cleaning of rear windshield.

Turn the right multi-function joystick in the opposite direction of the steering wheel, and the rear windshield washer nozzle will spray the windshield washer agent, and then the wiper will automatically cycle several times. The control lever will automatically reset after release..

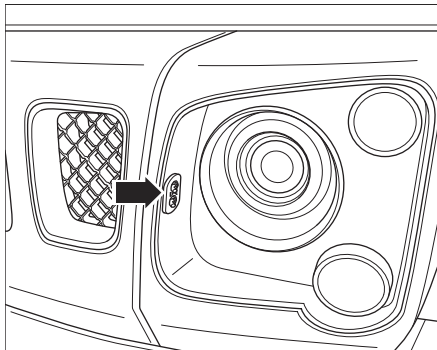
1. ON

When ON is in this position, the rear windshield wiper starts and carry out continuous low-speed wiping action.

2. OFF

When OFF is in this position, the rear windshield wiper is closed.

Headlamp washing



The headlight washing actuator is located on the front bumper and on the side of the headlight.

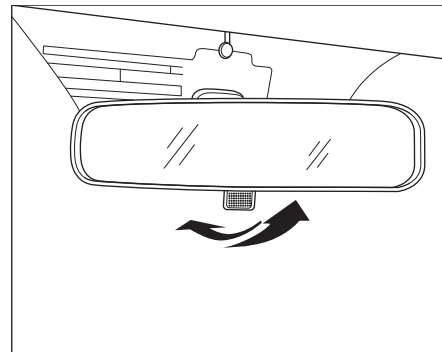
When the ignition switch is in the "ON" position or the start / stop key is in the "RUN" mode, turn on the low beam light, and activate the windshield washing function for 2 consecutive times (this action needs to be completed within 2 seconds), then the headlight washing function will be automatically turned on. The headlight washing actuator stops automatically spraying water after two cycles.

Rear-view mirror

This vehicle is equipped with a manual anti-dazzle interior mirror and an automatic anti-dazzle interior rear-view mirror with a streaming video function.

Keep the mirror surface of the interior rear-view mirror clean and adjust it to the best visual angle. Before driving, adjust the position of interior rear-view mirrors.

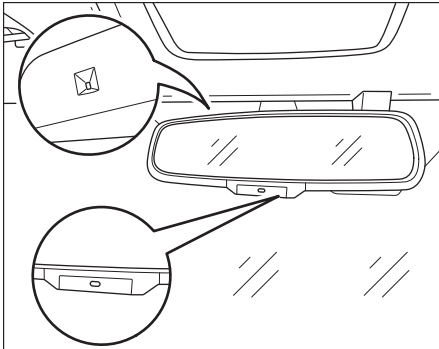
Manual anti-glare in-vehicle rear-view mirror



The manual anti-dazzle in-vehicle rear-view mirror has two positions, one for day and one for night.

The interior rear-view mirror can be adjusted by moving the adjusting lever forward and backward. At night, the lever on the mirror base can be moved to the "night" position behind the vehicle to reduce the dizziness caused by the rear vehicle lights; Move the lever towards the front of the vehicle, and the interior rear-view mirror will return to the initial position, that is, the "day" position, to restore the normal view.

Auto interior anti-glare rear-view mirror



The automatic anti-glare interior rear-view mirror can automatically adjust the color depth of the interior rear-view mirror according to the intensity of the front and rear lights,

so as to reduce the dizziness caused by the rear vehicle lights.

Interior rear-view mirror with streaming video function

The interior rear-view mirror can display the image of the rear-view mirror camera. The selection of the interior rear-view mirror screen brightness can be set on the radio navigation entertainment system.

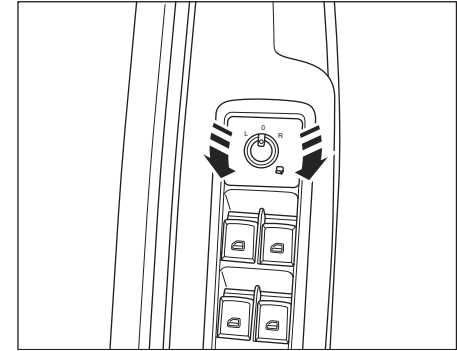
Attention

To ensure the normal function of the anti-glare sensors on both sides of the interior rear-view mirror, do not touch or cover the sensor - arrow - with objects such as fingers or cloth.

Exterior rear-view mirror

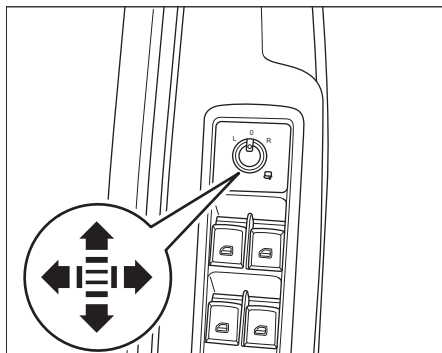
This vehicle is equipped with an electric exterior rear-view mirror, which has the functions of electric adjustment and electric folding.

Electric adjustment of exterior rear-view mirror *



The exterior rear-view mirror is controlled by the rear-view mirror adjusting switch, which is located on the driver's door.

Turn the adjusting knob to the left to the "L" position to select the left exterior rear-view mirror, and to the right to the "R" position to select the right exterior rear-view mirror.



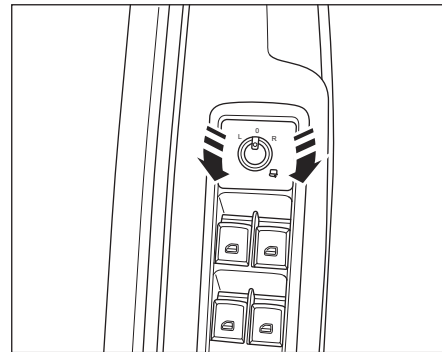
Then you can turn the adjustment knob up, down, left and right to adjust the position of the exterior rear-view mirror on the corresponding side. Pull front and rear to adjust the vertical position of the rear-view mirror, and left and right to adjust the horizontal position of the rear-view mirror.

Attention

Do not use too much force when rotating the rear-view mirror adjustment switch knob. Too much force may cause the knob to fail.

The view displayed in the rear-view mirror may interfere with the driver's ability to accurately position the vehicle behind him. Please pay special attention!

Electric folding of exterior rear-view mirror *



As shown in the figure, rotate the adjusting knob backwards to the "R" position along the -arrow - direction, the rear-view mirror will automatically fold, and rotate forwards to automatically open.

Remote control rear-view mirror linkage:

The exterior rear-view mirror will automatically fold after locking from the exterior remote control. The vehicle is unlocked remotely. After the unlocking is successful, the exterior rear-view mirror will automatically expand. The vehicle is unlocked remotely. After the unlocking is successful, the exterior rear-view mirror will automati-

cally expand.

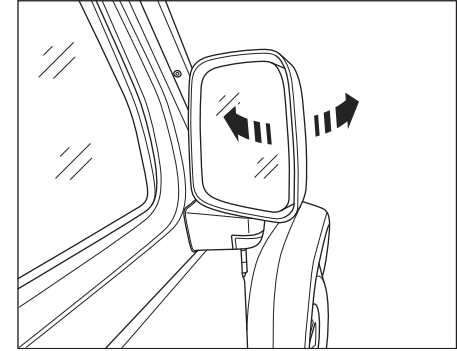
Attention

It is prohibited to drive the vehicle with any of the exterior rear-view mirrors folded back, as doing so will result in reduced visual perception, which may result in an accident!

Tips

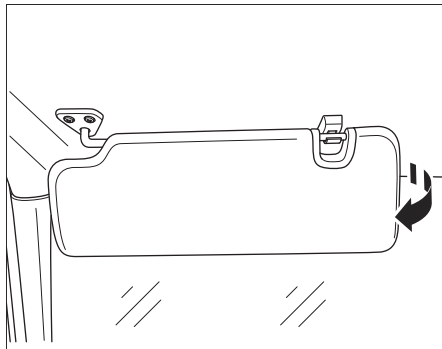
- When the low outdoor temperature is easy to cause icing, it is recommended to cancel the remote control linkage function of the exterior rear-view mirror. See the description of the exterior rear-view mirror setting for specific operation.
- If the exterior rear-view mirror is blocked by ice, the vehicle can be moved to a warm place to melt the ice naturally or the outer edge of the mirror shell can be gently pushed by hand for adjustment.
- If the exterior rear-view mirror is displaced due to external force and needs to be reset, it can be completely folded and unfolded by the remote control key (remote control linkage state) or the exterior rear-view mirror folding button, and the operation is repeated until a "click" is heard, indicating that the reset is successful.

Manual folding of exterior rear-view mirror*



Push the exterior mirrors forward or backward to unfold or fold the exterior mirrors.

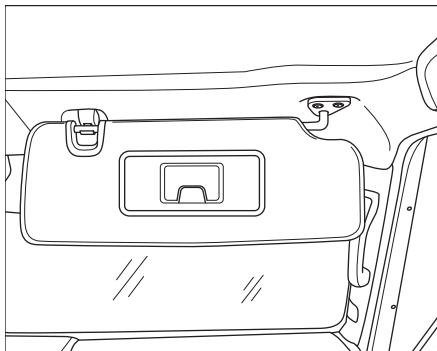
Sunvisor



The driver's side sun visor is shown in the picture. Both the driver's side sun visor and the front passenger's side sun visor have the following functions:

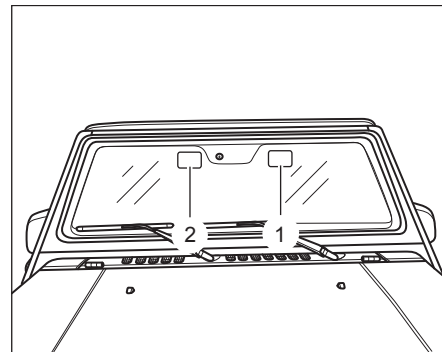
- Flip down from their respective brackets to block sunlight from the front windshield.
- Flip down and then roll over the door to block the sunlight from the side door windshield.

Sun visor with vanity mirror



There is a vanity mirror installed on the front passenger side sun visor, which can be seen when the sun visor is turned down.

Automotive electronic mark microwave window



1. The microwave window is used to install automotive electronic marks, its installation position does not allow filming, heating wires, or antennas. It does not affect the driving vision and ensures the effective reading of data.
2. The microwave window is allowed to be embodied in the form of pockmarks, and the black areas and pockmarks have no effect on the received signal of the electronic mark.
3. Depending on the model, the microwave window is located at 1 or 2.

Seats and storage facilities

Significance of Correct Seat Adjustment

Significance of Correct Seat Adjustment

To get the most protection from the seat belts and airbags, adjust the seats properly.

Driver's seat or front passenger's seat can be adjusted according to the shape of passengers.

Before driving, observe the following requirements to adjust the front seat properly to make sure:

- You can maintain full control of the vehicle in an accurate, effective and safe manner.
- You sit in a correct posture, providing relaxation and indefatigability.
- You can get the most protection from the seat belt and airbags.

Warning

Incorrect sitting posture will cause serious injury.

- **All drivers and passengers must sit in their respective seats.**
- **Be sure you and your passengers wear the seat belts and wear them properly.**
- **Make sure the child is restrained in the child restraint system properly.**
- **GND Adjust all the head restraints properly according to the height of the driver and passengers and be sure the driver and passengers wear the seat belts to get the best protection.**
- **When driving, always place your feet within the footwell well. Do not let your feet rest on the dashboard, stretch out the window or curl over the seat. Incorrect sitting posture will cause serious injury when the airbags inflating.**

Warning

- **The seat can only be adjusted when the vehicle stops. If the seat is adjusted during driving, it will cause accidents easily.**
- **For the driver and front passenger, the torso should always be kept at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dashboard. If the distance is less than 25 cm, the airbag system will not function fully - danger of injury!**
- **To ensure the side airbag to provide you with effective protection, NEVER apply the seat protective cover or shelter which prevents the airbag from inflating to your seat equipped with a side airbag. Otherwise, the effective deployment of the side airbag may be affected.**

 Warning

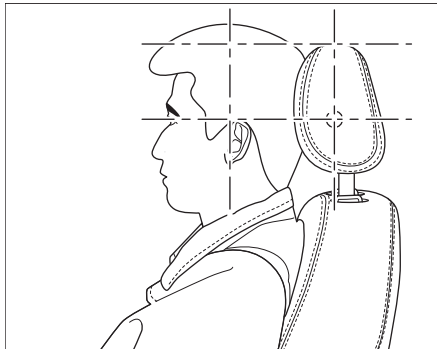
- Do not load items in the front passenger seat. These items may enter the airbag inflation range in a sudden stop or driving operation, and they will be thrown around in the vehicle when the airbag inflates, resulting in life risk.
- Do not apply an excessive force to the seat back (e.g., knocking or kicking the seat back). Otherwise, the system may be damaged, thus the side airbag cannot be activated.

 Warning

- The seat position set by the manufacturer: the front and rear adjustment stroke is 240mm, and the seat design position can be adjusted forward to 160mm and backward to 80mm; the design angle of the backrest is 25°, and the design position can also be adjusted backward to 50mm °, adjust forward to 30°.

Head restraint

It is of great importance to adjust headrest correctly for protecting passengers and reducing accident injury.



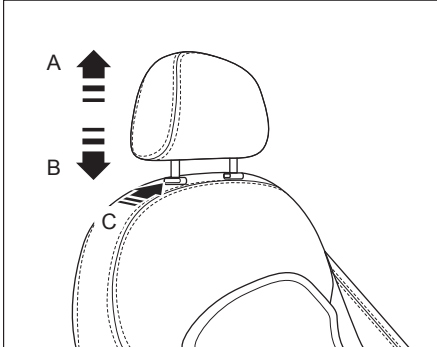
Adjust the head restraint so the center of the back of your head rests against the center of the restraint.

Failure to do so as shown in the figure can cause serious injury during a crash.

 Warning

- Driving with the head restraints removed or improperly-adjusted/ installed can cause serious injury during a crash.
- Have passengers adjust their head restraints according to their body types.
- Improperly-adjusted head restraints will increase the chance of being injured during a crash or emergency braking.
- Properly adjust the head restraint until it fits your height. The top of the restraint must be even with the top of your head as far as possible. The back of your head should rest against the restraint as far as possible.

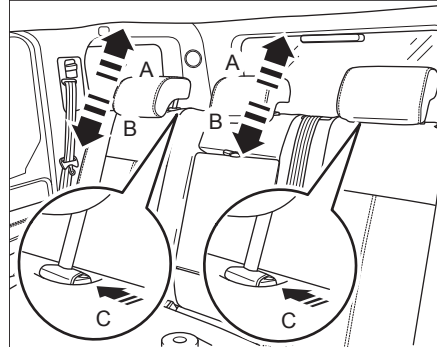
Adjusting front seat head restraints



For the purposes of safety and comfort, please regulate your headrest before driving.

1. Raise the head restraint in the direction indicated by – -Arrow A- by pulling up on both sides of the head restraint to the desired position.
2. Grasp both sides of the head restraint, and press and hold the button in the direction of –Arrow C– and press the head restraint down in the direction of –Arrow A– to the desired position.

Adjusting rear seat headrest



For the purposes of safety and comfort, please regulate your headrest before driving.

1. Raise the head restraint in the direction indicated by – -Arrow A- by pulling up on both sides of the head restraint to the desired position.
2. Grasp both sides of the head restraint, and press and hold the button in the direction of –Arrow C– and press the head restraint down in the direction of –Arrow A– to the desired position.

Warning

During traveling condition, never remove the headrest, to avoid serious injury when an accident occurs.

- After the installation of headrest, you must adjust the headrest according to your shape, to obtain optimal protection.
- Please carefully read and follow relevant Warnings and instructions.

Seat

Driver seat

Warning

When the driver's airbag is inflated, great pressure will be generated, especially when the driver is very close to the airbag, which may cause serious injury or even death.

When inflating within 50-75mm in front of the dangerous area of the driver's airbag, it can provide you with enough safety space at a distance of 25cm from the driver's airbag. The safe distance is from the center of the steering wheel to the driver's breast bone. Use the following methods to adjust the driver seat if the distance is less than 25cm:

- Move the seat as backward as possible, while ensuring that you can still step on the pedals comfortably.

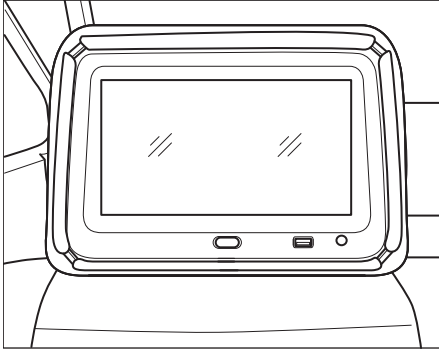
- Tilt the seat back slightly backrest. Although vehicle designs vary, for most drivers, even when the driver's seat is moved to the furthest forward position, the seat back can be reclined slightly to achieve a distance of 25 cm. If the driver can not get a clear view of the front road condition because of tilting the seat (can also use Conduct or lifting seat if the vehicle has this) function.
- If the angle of the steering wheel can be adjusted please tilt it down so that let the airbag facing breast other than head and neck.

Front passenger seat

Warning

The passenger airbag also has considerable pressure when deployed, so serious injury or even death can result if the passenger is very close to the airbag. Adjust the seat back so that the front passenger seat is as far away from the airbag as possible.

Front head restraint rear display screen *



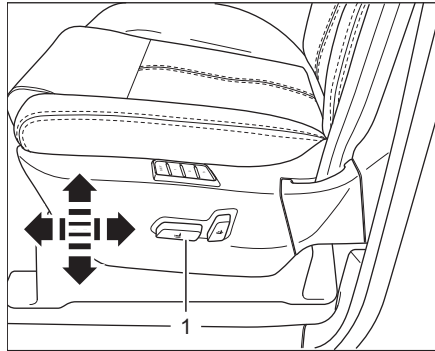
Some models are equipped with a rear display screen on the front head restraints, which can facilitate the entertainment needs of rear passengers.

For information on the head restraint display, please refer to the instruction manual for the rear display on the vehicle.

Front seat adjustment

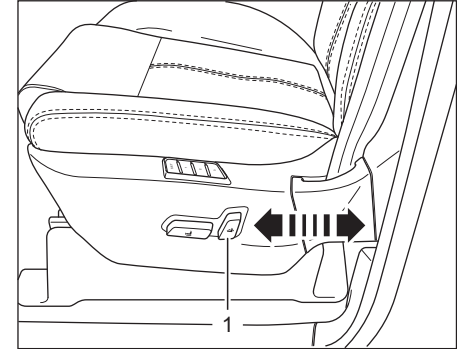
Front electric seat

The driver's seat of this vehicle has a 6-way power adjustment function, and the passenger seat has a 4-way power adjustment function.



Front and rear adjustments of the seat

The two front seats can be adjusted back and forth, taking the driver's side as an example. Toggle switch -1-, according to the direction of -arrow-, you can freely adjust the height of the seat to move forward and backward to achieve a suitable driving position.



Seat backrests adjustment

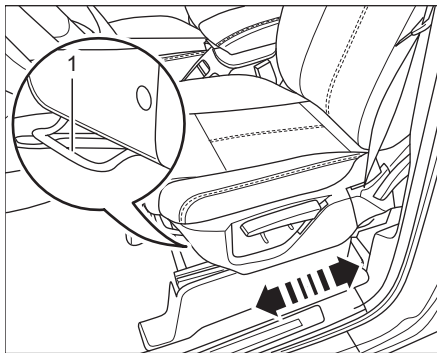
The backrests of the two front seats are also electrically adjustable, and the picture here takes the driver's seat as an example. If the driver and front passenger want to adjust the seat back, they need to lean forward slightly, and gently move the switch - 1 - back and forth, so that the seat back can move back and forth to reach the best seating position.

 **Warning**

- **Do not adjust the seat when the vehicle is running to avoid accidents.**
- **Adjust the seat so that it does not hit the passenger or luggage.**

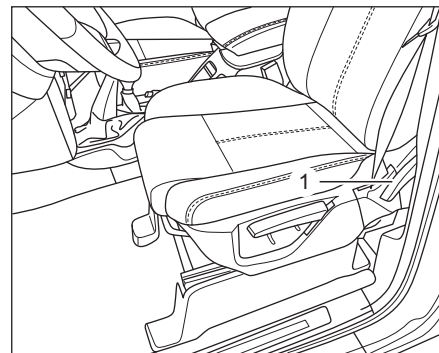
Front manual seat*

The driver's seat of this vehicle has a 6-way manual adjustment function, and the passenger seat has a 4-way adjustment function.



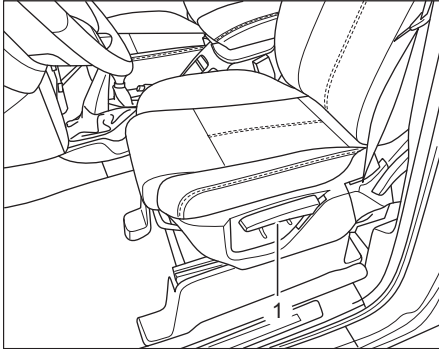
Front and rear adjustments of the seat

The two front seats can be adjusted back and forth, taking the driver's side as an example. Pull up the adjusting rod -1- under the front of the seat, and adjust the seat to a proper position. Release the adjusting pull rod and slightly move the seat backward and forward until the seat lock is clipped firmly.



Seat backrest adjustment

The backrest of both front seats can also be adjusted. The picture here takes the driver's seat as an example. If the driver and co driver want to adjust the seat back, they need to lean forward slightly, gently pull up the horizontal part -1- on the seat back angle adjustment handle, tilt back and stick to the seat back until it reaches a comfortable position. Release the handle and the seat back will be locked in this position.



Seat height adjustment (driver's seat only): Press the height adjustment handle -1- back and forth,

The seat surface will move downward; Pull the height adjustment handle back and forth upwards, and the seat seat moves upwards.

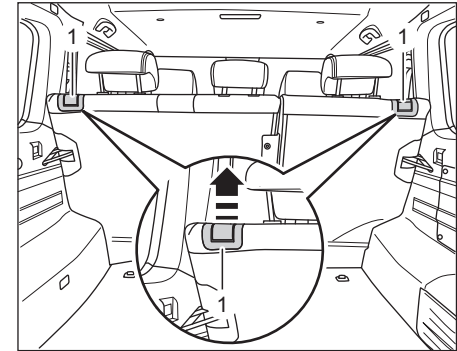
Attention

- **After adjusting the seat position, try sliding the seat back and forth to make sure it is locked in place.**
- **Push the upper part of the seat back back and forth to ensure that the seat back is firmly locked, otherwise it may interfere with the normal operation of the seat belt.**
- **Do not place objects under the driver's or front passenger seat, which may interfere with the seat locking mechanism or accidentally push the seat position lever upwards causing sudden seat movement, which are especially likely to result in loss of vehicle control while driving .**

Rear seats

Rear-row seat folding

This vehicle is equipped with rear-row 4/6 split seats. If you need to place bulk items in the rear-row seats, you can fold and flip the rear-row seat backs.



As shown in the above figure, pull up the two folding buckles -1- of the rear-row seat back to control the seat reclining function of the left or right rear respectively.

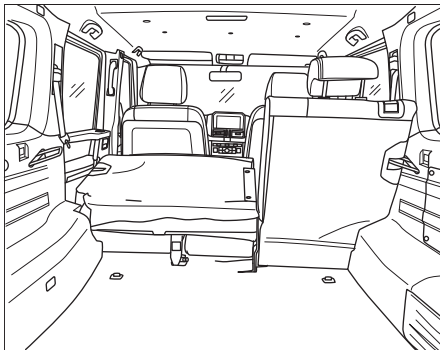
Fold the seat back into full contact with the seat cushion.

Tips

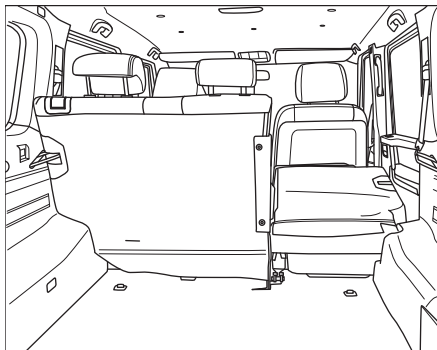
2

Before folding the rear-row seats, it is necessary to adjust the front-row seat position to ensure the folding space of the rear-row seats.

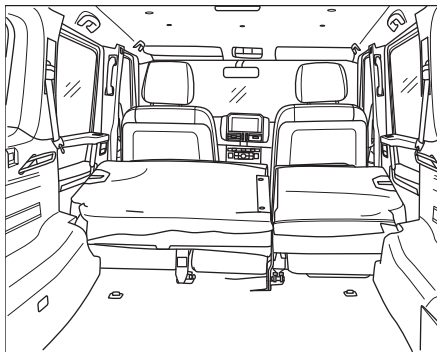
Rear left seat folded-down



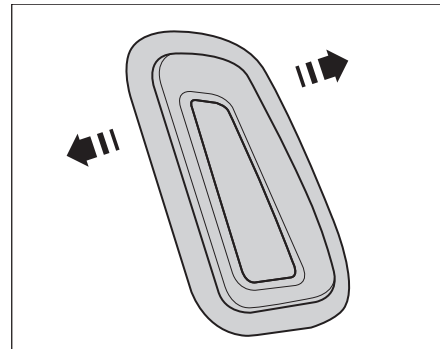
Rear right seat folded down



With all rear seats down



Rear seat backrest angle adjustment*



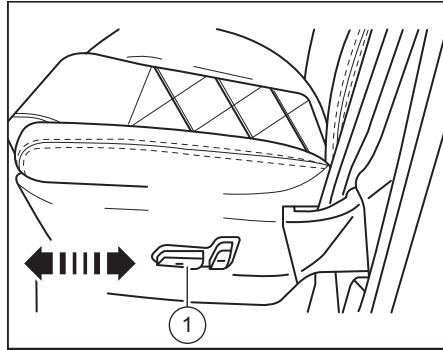
A toggle switch adjusts the seatback angle.

Warning

- To prevent personal injury, passengers should not sit in the rear baggage area, nor fold the rear seats.
- The rear baggage space is for carrying goods only, not passenger seats. The passenger shall sit on the seat and fasten the seat belt.

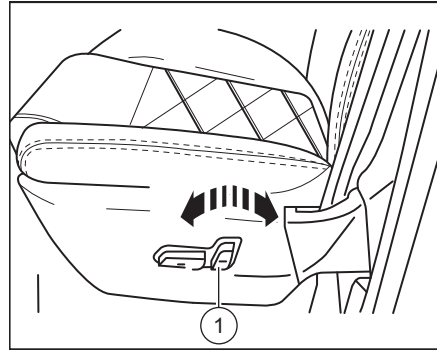
Rear electric seat *

Some rear seats have a 4-way electrically adjustable function.



Front and rear adjustments of the seat

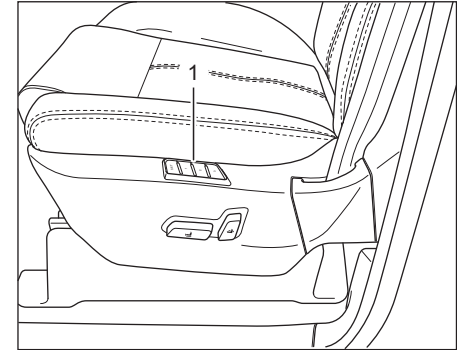
The two seats in the rear row can be adjusted back and forth. Here, the left side is taken as an example. Move the switch - 1 - forward and backward to adjust the forward and backward movement of the seat to achieve the best seating position.



Seat backrest adjustment

The backrest of the two rear seats can also be electrically adjusted, but the left seat is taken as an example in this position. They need to lean forward slightly, and gently move the switch - 1 - back and forth, so that the seat back can move back and forth to reach the best seating position.

Seat adjustment position memory function*



The memory function of the driver's seat can remember the adjustment positions of the seat and the exterior rear-view mirror.

Only 3 groups of adjustment positions can be memorized at most. When the driver is replaced, the adjustment positions of the driver's seat and the exterior rear-view mirror can be automatically switched to the required positions by pressing buttons - 1 -, - 2 -, - 3 -.

On each memory button, you can remember and recall:

- Driver's seat adjustment position.
- Position of left and right exterior rear-view mirrors during normal driving.

Attention

- **When setting the memory position, you can start with any button and then remember other settings.**
- **The previous settings of the same button will be overwritten each time the memory is carried out.**
- **After the vehicle is powered off, the seat memory function does not need to be reactivated. After power off and power on again, the seat still retains the memory position before power off.**

Attention

Seat adjustment precaution

- **Do not adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is running to avoid losing control of the vehicle.**
- **After adjusting the seat position, try sliding the seat back and forth to make sure it is locked in place.**
- **Push the upper part of the seat back back and forth to ensure that the seat back is firmly locked, otherwise it may interfere with the normal operation of the seat belt.**
- **Do not place objects under the manually adjustable seats, which may interfere with the seat locking mechanism or accidentally push the seat position lever upwards causing sudden seat movement, which are especially likely to result in loss of vehicle control while driving .**

Set driving position

1. Adjust the driver's seat and exterior rear-view mirror to the required position.
2. Press the SET button, then press and hold any of the memory position buttons 1, 2, or 3 for about 5 seconds. Until the buzzer emits two sounds, the setting is completed.

If the above operation is carried out again, when any button ("1", "2", or "3") is pressed, the position recorded by any previous button will be overwritten by the current position.

Recall memory position

1. When the vehicle speed is less than 7km / h, press and hold the corresponding memory position buttons (1, 2 and 3) until the seat and exterior rear-view mirror move to the memory position.
2. Release the memory position buttons (1, 2, 3).

Warning

- **Do not adjust or recall the seat memory position during driving.**
- **Be careful not to press the wrong button, or the seat may hit the rear passengers or cause you to hit the steering wheel. If this happens, just release the button and the seat will stop moving.**

rear-view mirror lighting ground

The start/stop button is switched to "RUN" mode and the shift lever is in R gear. Press the SET button for a long time and hear two prompt tones, indicating that the rear-view mirror illuminating function is turned on.

If you want to turn off the rear-view mirror illumination function, repeat the above operation. When you hear a prompt tone, it means that the illumination function is turned off.

Rear-view mirror illumination function during reversing (only for the front passenger's side rear-view mirror of the equipped vehicle)

1. When the start / stop button is switched to the "RUN" mode and the shift lever is at the R position, press and hold the "1", "2" or "3" button until two prompt sounds are heard, which indicates that the rear-view mirror angle on the passenger's side has been stored.

If the above operation is carried out again, when any button is pressed, the angle recorded by any previous button will be overwritten.

2. Place the shift lever in other gear (not r gear),

Then adjust the front passenger's side rear-view mirror to the angle required for normal driving. At this time, switch the shift lever to gear R, and the system will automatically store the current rear-view mirror angle.

3. When reversing, the front passenger's side rear-view mirror will automatically adjust to the angle stored in step 1. (the rear-view mirror lighting function must be turned on to realize this function, otherwise it cannot be realized.)
4. When exiting the R gear, the front passenger's side rear-view mirror will automatically return to the angle stored in step 2.

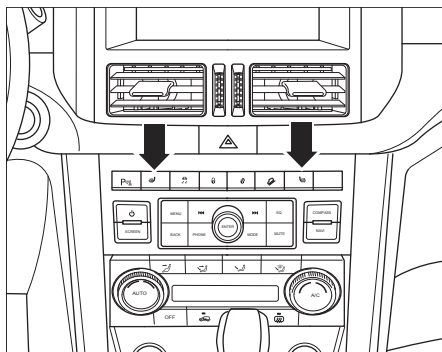
Welcome function*

The start / stop button is switched to the "OFF" mode. After the driver's side door is opened, the driver's seat is retracted 5cm to facilitate the driver to get off. The start / stop button switches to the "RUN" mode or closes the driver's door, and the driver's seat returns to the position before reversing.

The welcome function can be turned off in the display screen of the radio navigation entertainment system. For the specific closing method, please refer to the instruction manual of the radio navigation enter-

tainment system.

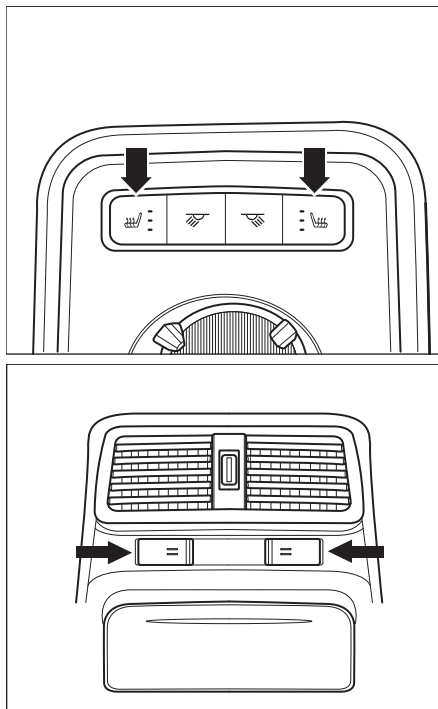
Front-row seat heating*



Vehicles are equipped with heated front seats, which can be done when the start/stop button is in "RUN" mode.

The left and right seat heating switches are located in the multi-function switch group of the center console.

Front-row seat heating*



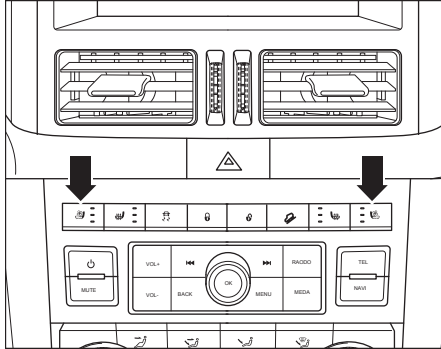
For vehicles equipped with rear seat heating function, this operation can be carried out when the start / stop button is in "run" mode.

The rear seat heating switch is located on the rear cover plate of the center console (or on the rear middle channel panel).

Warning

- It is forbidden to use the seat heating function for people with limited pain or temperature.
- Do not place heat-insulating materials on the seat for heating, which may overheat the seat heater and cause passengers to burn.

Front seat ventilation*

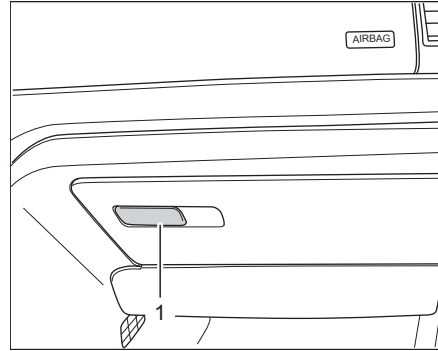


For vehicles equipped with front seat heating function, this operation can be carried out when the start / stop button is in "RUN" mode.

The left and right seat ventilation switches are located on the central control switch group of the center console.

Storage facilities

Front passenger's glove box

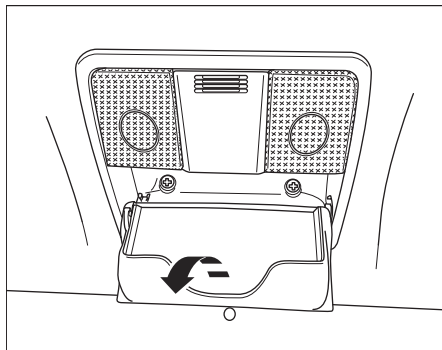


Pull the handle -1- to open the glove box, push the glove box lid up to close the glove box.

Attention

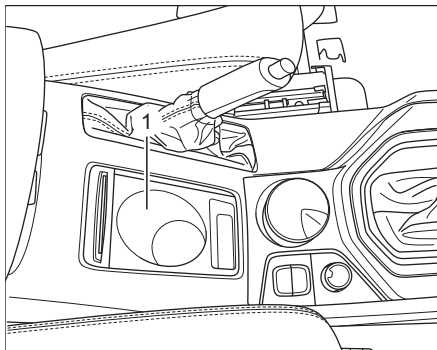
- Store only tightly closed or unopened fluid container in the glove box. Because the spilled liquid from the container without cover will damage the decorations and electrical parts in the glove box and instrument panel.
- The glove box should be closed when driving, otherwise the articles in the glove box may fly out and easily hurt the passengers during emergency braking or accident.

Glass box



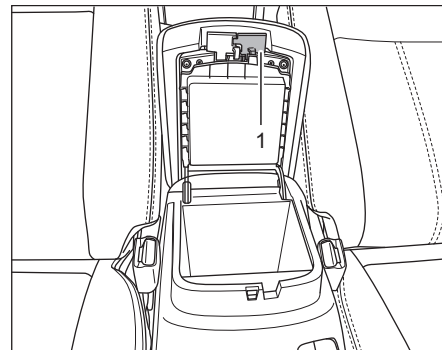
Press the glasses case when it is closed to automatically eject the glasses case. Push up the glasses case until you hear the click sound, which means that the glasses case can be closed.

Cup holder



The cup holder -1- is located in the front central channel console.

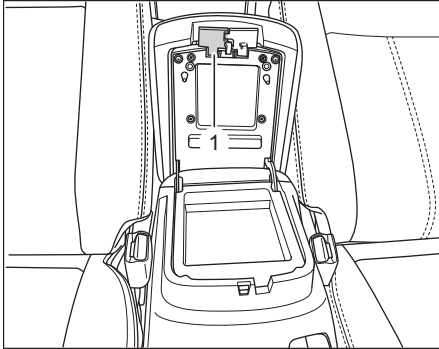
Storage box on central armrest



As shown in the figure, press the switch -1- near the driver's side and lift the storage box cover upward, that is, open the upper storage box of the front central armrest.

Place the storage box lid downward to close the upper storage box of the front center armrest.

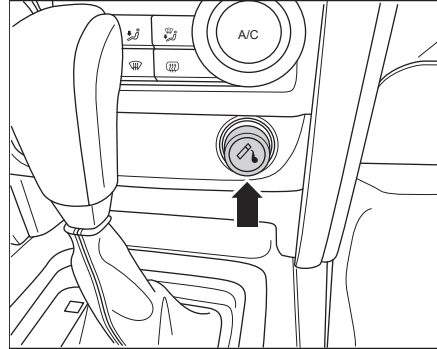
Storage box in central armrest



As shown in the figure, press the switch -1- near the front passenger's side and lift the storage box cover upward, that is, open the storage box in the front central armrest.

Place the inner storage box cover downward to close the inner storage box of the front center armrest.

Cigarette lighter and ashtray



Cigar lighter:

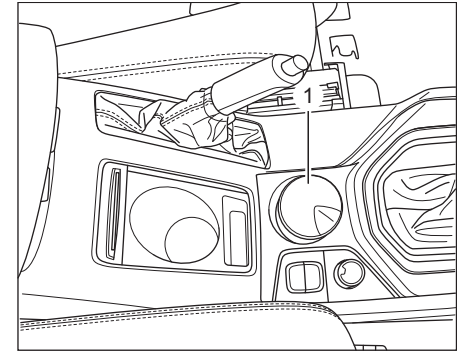
The cigarette lighter (arrow position shown) is located below the instrument control panel.

1. Press the cigarette lighter button.
2. Wait until the cigarette lighter pops up automatically.
3. Pull out the cigarette lighter and light the cigarette with the red hot heating coil.
4. After use, re-insert the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

i Tips

Do not use the cigarette lighter to plug in the auxiliary electrical equipment. Adding any electrical equipment to the vehicle may damage the vehicle or cause other parts to work abnormally. The resulting repairs are not covered by the warranty.

Ashtray (optional equipment):



The ashtray-1-is located at the rear side of the shift lever. It can be used after opening the top round cover. Please clean it in time after use. After cleaning the ashtray, it can be directly put back to the original position.

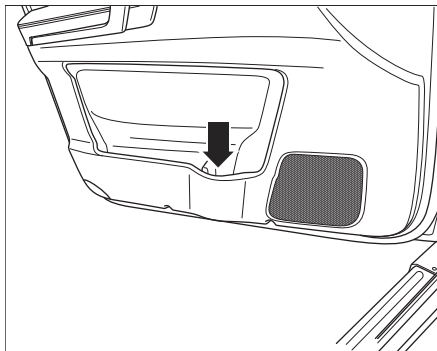
 **Warning**

- To avoid risk of fire, do not put any inflammable into the ashtray.
- The cigarette lighter is dangerous, so don't leave children alone in the car without looking after them.
- Be extremely careful to use the cigarette lighter. Using the cigarette lighter uncontrolledly may cause fire.

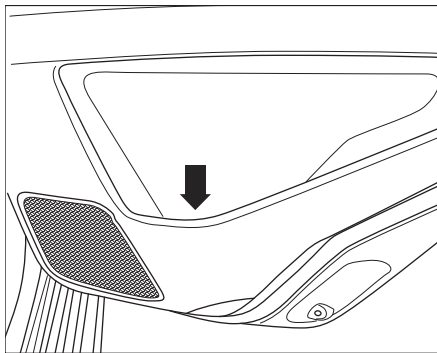
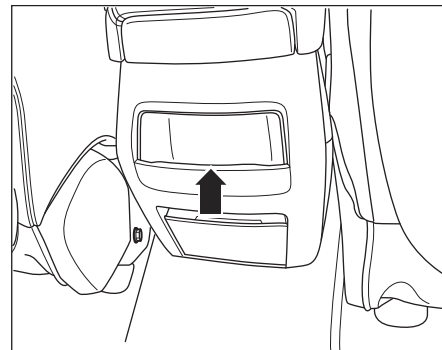
Door storage tank

There is a storage tank-arrow-under the doors on both sides (different models have different configurations), which can be used to store small items such as maps. This position picture takes the left front door and the right rear door as examples.

Left front door storage tank

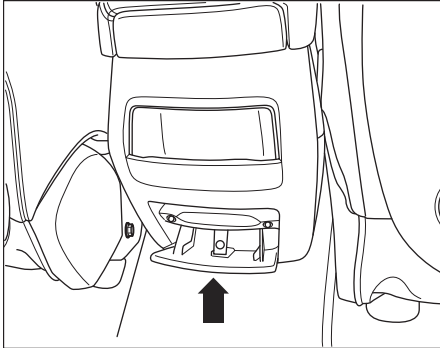


Right rear door storage tank

**Storage box at rear of center console**

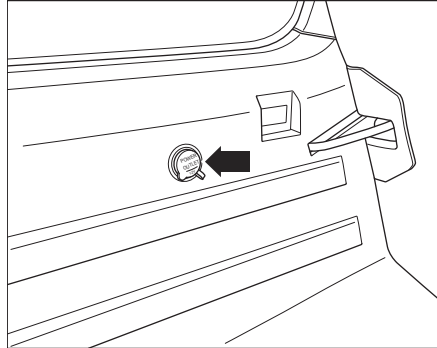
There is a sundries box at the back of the center console, which can hold small items such as mobile phones.

Ashtray at rear of center console



When opening, open the upper part of the ashtray to open the ashtray.

Rear 12V power interface *

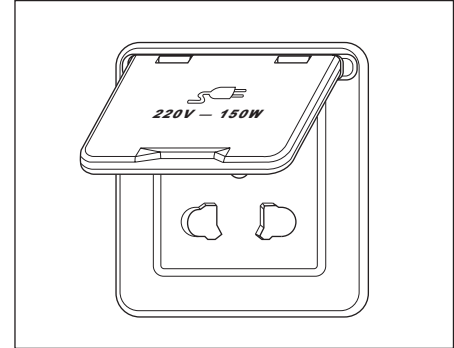


You can use an auxiliary power outlet to connect electrical equipment, such as a mobile phone. When not in use, be sure to close the socket cover.

Attention

Adding any electrical equipment to the vehicle may damage the vehicle or cause other parts to work abnormally. The resulting repairs are not covered by the warranty. Do not use equipment with a maximum power rating greater than 120W.

220V power port *



1. Electrical accessories can be connected to the 220V power supply in the vehicle. The connected device must be in good condition and must not be faulty;
2. 220V power supply can only be used when the engine is running. Connect the electrical plug and insert the plug into the socket to the limit position;
3. Please use the plug matched with the power socket to avoid damaging the socket;
4. When the green light of LED indicator light is on, the 220V power supply is in normal working state, while the red light flashes, the 220V power supply is in abnormal state. Please go to the af-

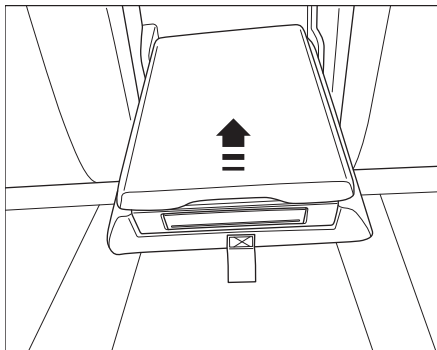
ter-sales service center for inspection and maintenance in time.

 **Warning**

2

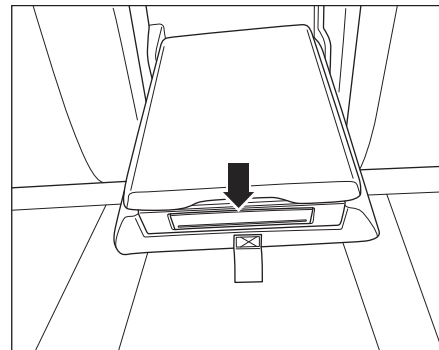
- **The power socket and the electrical accessories connected to it work together when the engine is running. If the socket or electrical accessories are used correctly, it may cause serious personal injury or fire. Therefore, do not leave children unsupervised in the vehicle;**
- **Do not use electrical appliances exceeding 150W, otherwise the electrical system may be damaged;**
- **If the connected electrical device is too hot, be sure to turn off the device immediately and disconnect it from its power supply.**
- **Do not spill liquid on the power outlet, otherwise it may lead to dangerous accidents.**

Rear seat center armrest storage box *

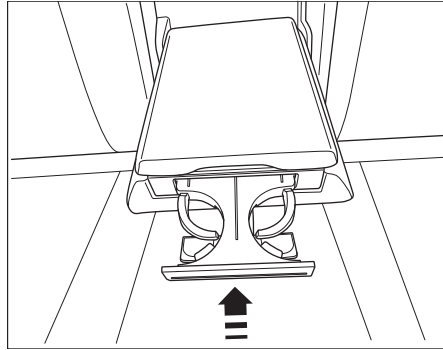


Lift the armrest cover in the direction of arrow-and open the central armrest storage box.

Central cup holder of rear seats *



Press the switch, and the cup holder of the rear center armrest will pop up automatically.



Push the cup holder of the center armrest back to the center armrest until the locking sound is heard.

Accessories and Modifications

When the vehicle leaves the factory, data labels and signs are pasted on the front wall of the front engine compartment, B-pillar and other components, which are marked with important data and information about the use of the vehicle. Do not remove or damage such labels and signboards. Always keep the data and information on the labels and signboards clear and readable.

This vehicle is designed with the latest safety technique to ensure excellent active safety and passive safety. Therefore, to maintain the vehicle's excellent characteristics, before you make any modifications or add any accessories, be sure to consult the authorized dealer of BAIC.

We recommend you always use the accessories and parts which have been designed and approved for your vehicle. In case of installation of parts that are not approved by our company, our company will not undertake any quality guarantee.

Warning

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

If the vehicle phone, alarm device, two-way radio communication equipment, and low-power sound system are correctly installed, it will not interfere with the computer control system on the vehicle, such as anti lock braking system (ABS).

Before installing any accessory:

Make sure the accessory does not obscure any lights, or interfere with proper vehicle operation or performance.

Modifying Your Vehicle

Removing parts from your vehicle, or replacing components with non-BAIC components could seriously affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and reliability.

EXAMPLE:

- Larger or smaller wheels and tires can interfere with the operation of your vehicle's anti-lock brakes and other systems.
- Modifying your steering wheel or any other part of your vehicle's safety features can make the systems ineffective.

Warning

- **Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed. We recommend you always use the approved accessories and spare parts with strictly-verified adaptability, reliability and safety.**
- **Improper maintenance or modifications can weaken the protection from airbags, cause the system failure and fatal accidents. Do not install or connect the beverage cup holder, phone holder and other accessories onto the cover of airbag module or in the range of action of airbags.**
- **Improper operation or modification of the vehicle will affect the function of the airbag system and cause serious casualties.**
- **Do not install non-GAC Motor wheels and tires.**

Warning

- **Modifying the front of the vehicle and the front engine compartment can deteriorate pedestrian protection performance of the vehicle and violate the road regulations.**

A/C system

General

The A/C can adjust the air temperature and air humidity in the vehicle.

The A/C is only available when the engine is running and the windows should be kept closed.

The operation of the A/C system places additional load on the engine. In extremely hot conditions, or when the engine needs to run at full capacity (such as climbing a long mountain road or driving in heavy traffic), this will result in higher engine temperatures. If the needle approaches the red area of the thermometer, turn off the A/C until the engine temperature returns to normal.

To cool the engine, the radiator cooling fan may run continuously after the engine is turned off. During this period, if the A/C and air volume adjustment knobs are turned on, the A/C switch indicator light will continue to work.

If the humidity is high, slight fogging may appear on the window when the air conditioning system is turned on, which is a normal phenomenon in most vehicles equipped with electric air conditioning system, not a fault, and the fogging phenomenon will disappear after the air conditioning system runs for about a few seconds.

Attention

The A/C can start running only when the air volume adjustment knob is turned on. When the air volume adjustment knob is closed or the temperature is close to zero, the A/C will not be able to cool.

The A/C filters can remove the pollen and dust brought-in by the air warm and air cooling system from the outside.

Be sure to replace the A/C filters at scheduled maintenance.

If your vehicle is frequently driven in areas with poor air quality, the replacement cycle of the air conditioner filter shall be shortened. If the airflow from the air outlet is not as smooth as usual, replace the air conditioner air filter as soon as possible. When the ignition key is turned from the "LOCK" or "ACC" position to the "ON" position or the start/stop button is in the "RUN" mode,,

and the A/C controller will automatically call up the working state of the controller stored after the previous power failure, and automatically set the initial setting of the A/C system in this state.

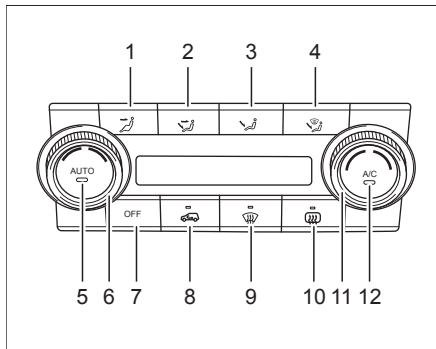
Warning

- **Blurred windows easily raise the risk of accidents and casualties. For the sake of safety, all the windows must be free of ice, snow and fog to ensure clear vision.**
- **Turbid air in the vehicle will cause the driver to be fatigued, depressed and distracted, resulting in accidents and casualties.**
- **The expertise and special tools are essential to the diagnosis and repair of air conditioning systems. Therefore, when the air-conditioning system fails, be sure to go to the authorized dealer of BAIC for inspection and repair**

Tips

- When the outside temperature and humidity are high, moisture in the air will condense on the evaporator of the refrigeration system, resulting in water droplets dripping from the evaporator which form water under the vehicle. This is normal, and there is no need to fear.
- The air inlet in the front of the windshield should be unblocked, and make sure it is not clogged by snow, ice and leaves. Make sure the heating and cooling are normal. Prevent the front windshield from fogging up.
- The windows must be closed for the air conditioning system to play a maximum effect. If the vehicle has been exposed to the burning sun and it is very hot in the vehicle, you should briefly open the windows to dissipate the heat and accelerate cooling.

A/C control panel



1. Face-blowing mode switch
2. Face and foot-blowing mode switch
2. Foot-blowing mode switch
4. Foot-blowing defrost mode switch
5. AUTO mode switch
6. Air volume knob
7. OFF switch

8. Internal and external circulation switch
9. Front defrost mode switch
10. Rear defrost mode switch
11. Temperature knob
12. A/C switch

1. Face-blowing mode switch

Manually operate the switch, and the air outlet direction of the air conditioning system will be switched to supply air to the face.

In auto state, operate this switch, the air outlet direction of the A/C will be changed from automatic control to manual control, and the air outlet direction of the A/C will also be changed to face air supply, and other functions will remain in auto state. But the Auto switch working indicator light is OFF.

In manual control mode, operate this switch, the air outlet direction of the A/C is changed to supply air to the face.

2. Face and foot-blowing mode switch

Manually operate the switch, and the air outlet direction of the A/C system will be switched to supply air to the face and feet.

In auto state, operate this switch, the air outlet direction of the A/C will be changed from automatic control to manual control, and the air outlet direction of the A/C will also be changed to face and feet air supply, and other functions will remain in auto state. But the Auto switch working indicator light is OFF.

In manual control mode, operate this

switch, the air outlet direction of the A/C is changed to supply air to the face and the feet.

2. Foot-blowing mode switch

Manually operate the switch, and the air outlet direction of the air conditioning system will be switched to supply air to the feet.

In auto state, operate this switch, the air outlet direction of the A/C will be changed from automatic control to manual control, and the air outlet direction of the A/C will also be changed to feet air supply, and other functions will remain in auto state. But the Auto switch working indicator light is OFF.

In manual control mode, operate this switch, the air outlet direction of the A/C is changed to supply air to the feet.

4. Foot-blowing defrost mode switch

Manually operate the switch, and the air outlet direction of the air conditioning system will be switched to supply air to the feet and front windshield.

In auto state, operate this switch, the air outlet direction of the A/C will be changed from automatic control to manual control, and the air outlet direction of the A/C will also be changed to feet and front wind-

shield air supply, and other functions will remain in auto state. But the Auto switch working indicator light is OFF.

In manual control mode, operate this switch, the air outlet direction of the A/C is changed to supply air to the feet and front windshield.

5. Auto switch

After pressing the Auto switch, the work indicator light will be on, and the air conditioning system will enter the automatic control program. The air outlet temperature, air outlet volume, air outlet direction, and air circulation mode will be automatically controlled by the air conditioning system.

No matter in any state of the A/C, after pressing the auto switch, the A/C system will enter the automatic control program;

Auto working state and the working state of the air conditioner is described as follows:

When the A/C is in the maximum refrigeration working state, the A/C will automatically switch to the maximum air volume and internal circulation mode.

When the A/C is in the maximum heating working state, the A/C will automatically switch to the maximum air volume and external circulation mode.

The rear defrost function cannot be started automatically. If necessary, please turn on the rear defrost switch manually.

6. Air volume knob

Manually rotate the air volume knob, and the air volume of the A/C will increase or decrease accordingly.

In the auto state, operate the air volume knob, and the air volume of the A/C will be changed from automatic control to manual control, and the air volume of the A/C will also increase or decrease. Other A/C functions will remain in the auto state, but the auto operation indicator light will go out.

The air volume knob cannot turn off the air volume of the A/C. To turn off the air outlet function of the A/C, manually operate the OFF switch.

When the A/C is in the OFF state, manually operate the air volume knob, the A/C system will start to work, the air output volume of the A/C will increase or decrease accordingly, and other functions of the A/C system will automatically return to the last OFF working state.

7. OFF switch

Under any working condition, manually operate this switch, the A/C system will enter the OFF state, and the A/C will not blow out, but the air volume temperature, air outlet direction and air circulation mode will remain at the position before OFF.

8. Internal and external circulation switch

The A/C system defaults to the external circulation mode, and the working indicator is off at this time. When the switch is operated manually, the air conditioning system will switch to the internal circulation mode and turn on the work indicator light. Operate this switch again, and the A/C system will return to the external circulation mode. The internal and external circulation modes are consistent with the LCD display of the A/C panel.

When the A/C system operates this switch in any working state, the internal and external circulation mode of the A/C will change, and other functions will remain unchanged.

Description:

When the outdoor temperature is high, in order to reduce energy consumption and achieve rapid reduction of cab temperature, such as manual operation, it is recommended to use internal circulation.

In winter, in order to prevent the fog generated in the cab from affecting the driving safety, it is recommended to use external circulation for manual operation.

When the A/C is OFF, the circulation damper is in the outer circulation position. When the vehicle speed is high, it is normal for the A/C system to have a breeze blowing out.

9. Front defrost mode switch

Manually operate the front defrost switch, and the air outlet direction of the A/C will be switched to the front windshield. The air volume is automatically controlled by the A/C, the A/C work indicator light is not lit, and the external circulation air intake mode is switched synchronously.

In the Auto working state, operate the front defrost switch, the A/C working state is the same as above, but the Auto working indicator light is off.

In any working state, manually operate this switch, and the A/C system will enter the front defrosting mode; Operate the front defrost switch again, and the A/C system will automatically return to the working state before defrosting; If the working state before the defrost switch is OFF before operation, the A/C system will automatically return to the working state before OFF.

10. Rear defrost switch

Manually operating this switch will open the rear windshield defrosting mode. If this button is operated once, the maximum working time of rear defrosting will not exceed 15 minutes.

During the process of rear defrosting, operate the switch again to stop the rear defrosting.

Note: Due to the large power consumption of the rear defrost function, the function can only be realized when the engine is started.

11. Temperature knob

Manually operate this knob to adjust the set outlet air temperature.

In the Auto state, operate the temperature knob, the air temperature of the A/C system will change accordingly, and other A/C functions will remain in the Auto state, but the Auto work indicator light will not go out.

In the OFF state, operating the temperature knob, the A/C system will not open the working mode.

A/C refrigerant: in order to obtain the best cooling effect, please go to the designated service station to check and maintain the A/C system when the climate starts to warm every year. Including cleaning the

cooling fins of condenser, checking the tension of refrigerant and compressor belt.

12. A/C switch

When the working indicator light of the A/C switch is on, it means that the A/C has turned on the cooling function, and when it is off, the cooling function is lost. Only when the engine is running, the A / C switch can turn on the cooling function of the A / C; When the engine is not running, operate the A/C switch, the work indicator light of the A/C switch will light up, but the refrigeration function will not be turned on.

In the Auto state, press the A/C switch, the A/C will lose its cooling function, and the A/C system will automatically exit the Auto work program, and the Auto work indicator light will not go out. Press the A/C switch again to turn on the cooling function of the A/C. At this time, you need to manually adjust the air temperature, air direction and air intake mode.

In the OFF state, pressing the A/C switch cannot turn on the cooling function of the A/C.

In-vehicle Heating

1. Turn the temperature knob -11- to above 24°C.
2. Press the corresponding buttons -1, 2, 3, 4, - to set the blowing mode.
3. Select knob -6- to set the air volume. (It is recommended to choose the foot blowing mode).

In-vehicle cooling

1. Rotate the air volume adjusting knob -6- to set the air volume
2. Turn the left and right temperature knobs -11- to below 24°C.
3. Press the A/C switch, namely the A/C button -12-, to turn on the refrigeration unit. The indicator light on the button lights up.
4. Press the corresponding buttons -1, 2, 3, 4, - to set the blowing mode.

Attention

If the temperature inside the vehicle is very high when the engine is started, it will take a little time before the air conditioner is fully operational. Before turning on the A/C, set the fan to the highest speed and open the window, which can circulate and exchange the air inside the vehicle in a short time, which is beneficial to quickly reduce the temperature inside the car.

A/C Maintenance

The A/C system is completely sealed and the relevant major maintenance shall be operated only by a qualified technicians. To keep the system in optimum condition, the vehicle owner should ensure that the system runs for a short time every week (even in cold winter); When the engine is at normal operating temperature, start the A/C for at least about 10 minutes while keeping the vehicle running at a steady speed.

The excess water generated during the dehumidification process is drained by the system through the drain pipe at the bottom of the vehicle, which may cause water to accumulate on the road surface when the vehicle is stationary, so there is no need to worry.

Air conditioner air filter

The A / C air filter (as standard for vehicles equipped with A/C) is located in the A/C unit housing at the front left of the glove box, which can keep the air in the car fresh and prevent pollen and dust from entering the vehicle. To maintain its effect, check whether the vehicle is dirty every time it is inspected, and replace the air filter of the A/C if necessary.

Attention

- **Park the vehicle in a cool place as far as possible. Parking in the hot sun will make the air inside the car scorching, which will take a long time to cool down. If you have to stop in the sun, please open the windows a few minutes before the A/C is running to remove the hot air in the vehicle.**
- **Please close the windows when using the A/C. The entry of external air will reduce the efficiency of the A/C.**
- **When the A/C system is running, please make sure that the air inlet in front of the windshield is unobstructed and free of obstructions such as leaves. The accumulation of blockage at the air inlet will affect the air flow.**

A/C air outlet

There are 3 types of air outlets in the A/C system of this vehicle:

1. Side Air Outlet

There are two side air outlets, located on the left and right sides of the dashboard.

2. Central air vent

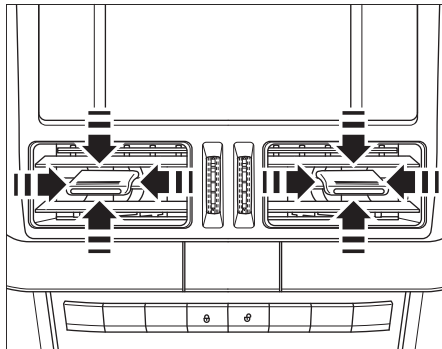
There are two side air outlets, located in the middle of the dashboard.

3. Foot air outlet (4)

Front foot air outlet (2) They are located in the driver's and front passenger's footwells, respectively.

Rear foot air outlet (2) On the left and right of the center channel in the rear seat footwell.

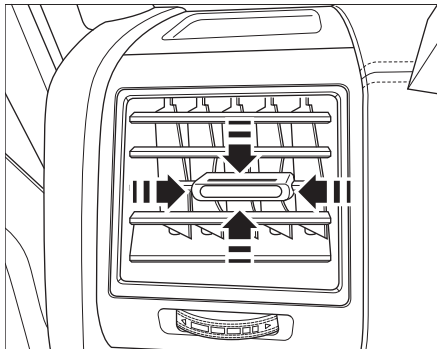
Center air outlet



To adjust the direction of airflow at each outlet, push any marked position of the outlet with - arrow - .

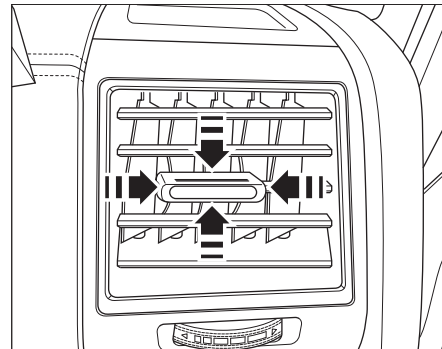
To adjust the airflow size of each air outlet, just rotate the air outlet dial.

Driver side air outlet



The driver side air outlet is adjusted in the same way as the central air outlet.

Front passenger side air outlet

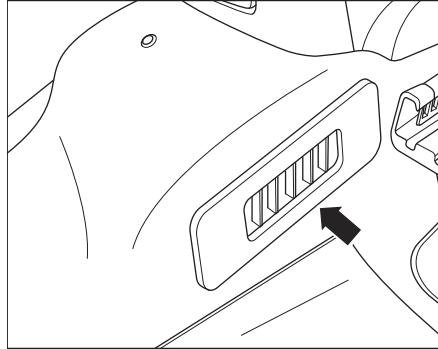


The driver side air outlet is adjusted in the same way as the central air outlet.

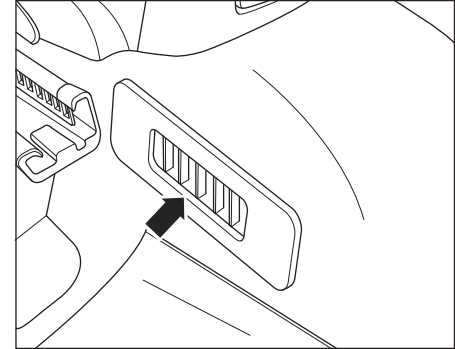
Rear foot air outlet

The rear seat foot air outlet is located on the left and right sides of the central channel in the rear seat footwell.

Rear right foot air outlet



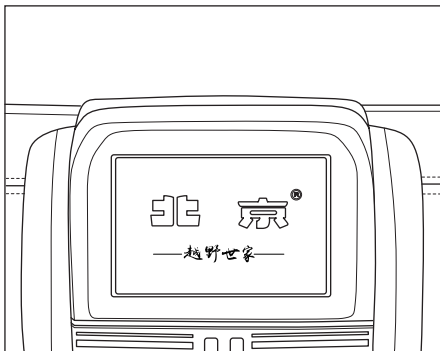
Rear left foot air outlet



Radio navigation entertainment system

2

Radio navigation entertainment system display



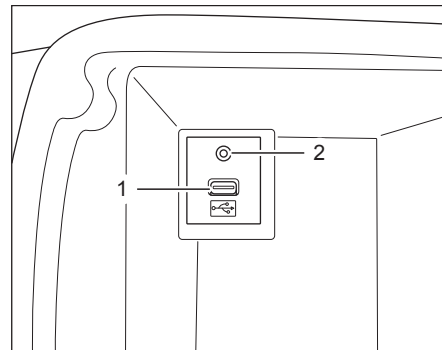
The car radio navigation entertainment system is equipped with:

1. Radio navigation entertainment system with USB interface.
2. Multimedia system with Beidou GPS navigation, vehicle Bluetooth phone, voice recognition and other functions.

Attention

- If the audio system is damaged, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC for repair. Do not disassemble and repair it by yourself.
- When the engine is not running, listen to the audio system as little as possible to prevent the battery from out of power, so that the vehicle cannot be started.

USB and AUX-IN interface*



As shown in the figure, USB interface-1 - and AUX-in Interface-2 - are located in the front armrest box.

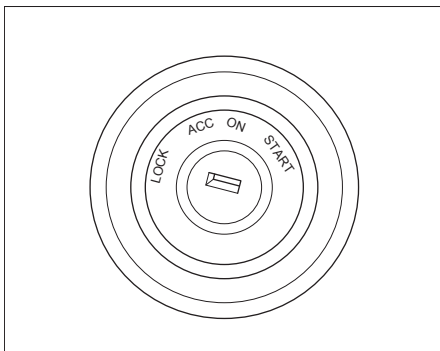
For information on radio navigation, please refer to the operation manual of the BJ80.

3. Drive Guide

Starting and Driving	170
Drive system.....	188
Cruise Control System (Type I)*.....	189
Cruise Control System (Type II)*	192
Park Assist System and Back-up rear-view system* ..	195
Brake System	205
Driving skills	217

Starting and Driving

Ignition Switch *



The ignition switch is located on the right side of the steering column. As shown in the figure, the ignition switch has four positions:

1. "LOCK" position: lock the ignition switch and steering wheel;
2. "ACC" position: Some electrical are allowed to be used when the engine is turned off;
3. "ON" position: The engine is running normally, and all electrical appliances can be used;

4. "START" position: Start the engine. When the engine is started, release the ignition switch and the ignition switch will return to the "ON" position.

The key can only be pulled out when it is turned to the "lock" position.

Power steering system

When the engine stops working, the power steering system does not work. At this time, more force is required to turn the steering wheel. Take special care when towing the vehicle and never stop the engine while driving.

Attention

- **Do not leave the steering wheel in the dead position (turn left or right) for more than 15 seconds, as this will damage the power steering system due to lack of lubrication;**
- **For users in cold regions with ambient temperature lower than -20°C , it is recommended to use pandongxing hydraulic transmission oil CHF 202 power steering fluid.**

Warning

- **If the key cannot or cannot be turned from the "LOCK" position to the "ACC" position, the steering wheel can be turned back and forth.**
- **If the key cannot or cannot be turned from the "LOCK" position to the "ACC" position, the steering wheel can be turned back and forth. If you have to turn off the engine while the vehicle is running, you can only turn the ignition switch to the "ACC" position.**
- **Do not turn the ignition switch on the steering column with your arm through the steering wheel. If the wheels are not aligned when parking, the steering wheel may rebound and hurt your arm.**

Reminding device for key not taken out

When the key is left in the off or ACC position of the ignition switch and the driver's door is opened, an alarm will sound to remind you to take out the key.

Electronic burglar alarm function

The electronic burglar alarm function is used to prevent others from illegally stealing vehicles. The transceiver chip in the remote key is equipped with an electronic code which is sent to the vehicle. The engine can be started only when the electronic code of the transceiver chip is consistent with the registered vehicle ID code. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

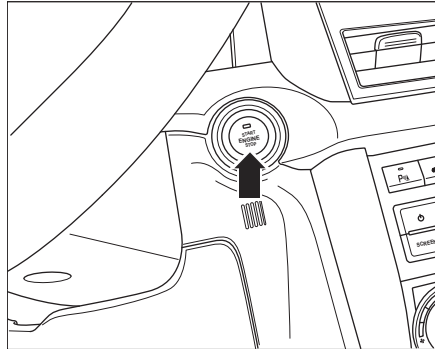
Attention

Do not modify, dismantle or disassemble the electronic anti-theft system of the engine. If the engine electronic anti-theft system is replaced or modified without authorization, the normal work of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Lock the steering wheel

When turning the ignition switch back to the "LOCK" position, pull off the key and turn the steering wheel until it is locked.

Start-Stop button *



The keyless "start/stop button" mode is consistent with the traditional "start/stop button" gear. When the smart key is in the car, the engine can be started and stopped by selecting "RUN", "ACC" and "OFF" modes by the start/stop button.

When the shift lever of the automatic transmission is in the "P" position and the brake pedal is not pressed; When the shift lever of manual transmission is in neutral and the clutch pedal is not pressed. The modes are switched in the following sequence by the start/stop button:

- When the button is not pressed: the "start/stop button" is turned off, which is the "OFF" mode (The button backlight is off);
- When the button is pressed for the first time: the "RUN" mode is turned on (Button backlight is green), the meter lights up, and all electrical equipment are on;
- When the button is pressed for the second time: the "ACC" mode is turned on (the button backlight is red), and the accessory circuits such as the radio navigation entertainment system and the cigarette lighter are connected;
- When pressing the button for the third time: return to "OFF" mode (the button backlight is off);

Press the engine start/stop button successively to switch circularly among the three modes of "OFF," → "RUN," → "ACC".

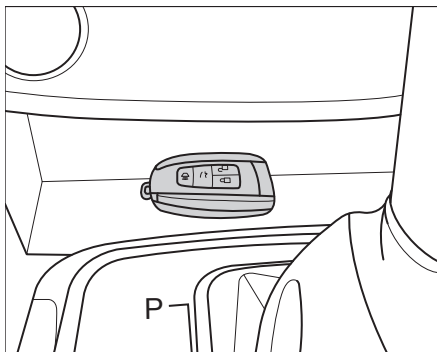
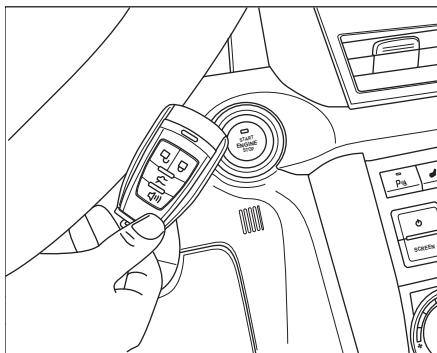
Depress and hold the brake pedal (for automatic transmission models)/clutch pedal (for manual transmission models), and press the start/stop button once to open the "START" mode and start the engine.

Tips

The shift lever must be in park or neutral (P/N) position, and the engine can only be started by pressing the brake pedal (automatic model)/clutch pedal (manual model). In automatic model, the engine cannot be started when the shift lever is in other position.

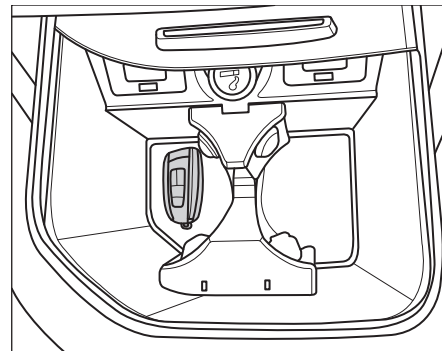
Smart key backup start function

If the vehicle is in a strong signal interference area, or when the battery of the smart remote key is low, when you press the "Start/Stop button" to try to start the vehicle, the "smart remote key not found" will be displayed on the trip computer display on the instrument. At this time, the standby start function is required.



Vehicles with automatic transmission:

6AT model: Put the gear in the "P/N" position, press the brake pedal, press the start/stop button with the top of the smart key (the angle between the start/stop button and the key is greater than 15), or put the smart key in the storage box in front of the shift lever to start the engine.



8AT model: Put the gear in the "P/N" position, press the brake pedal, put the intelligent key in the cup holder with the key logo, and start the engine.

Vehicles with manual transmission:

Place the gear in neutral position, press the clutch pedal, and press the start-stop button with the top of the smart key (the angle between the start-stop button and the key is greater than 15°) to start the engine.

Emergency shutdown function

When the normal mode cannot stop the engine, the emergency shutdown mode can be used. Step on the brake, press the start/stop button twice within 2s or long press the start/stop button for 2s to stop the engine.

Tips

The engine can be started only when the electronic code of the transceiver chip is consistent with the registered vehicle ID code. The engine can be started only when the electronic code of the transceiver chip is consistent with the registered vehicle ID code. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

Engine started

Equipped with one-button start vehicle

When the smart key is in the effective range, the starting method is as follows:

Vehicles with automatic transmission:

1. Press the brake pedal down all the way and hold it there.
2. Move the shift lever in "P/N" position;
3. Press the start/stop button to start the engine.

When the temperature is $-10\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ or below, the engine start-up time may increase. Because the starter needs to run for a longer time to overcome the running resistance and adapt to the harsh combustion environment, all unnecessary electrical equipment should be turned off when starting.

Vehicles with manual transmission:

1. Press the clutch pedal to the bottom and keep it in this position;
2. Move the shift lever into neutral position;
3. Press the start/stop button to start the engine.

When the temperature is $-10\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ or below, the engine start-up time may increase. Because the starter needs to run for a longer time to overcome the running resistance and adapt to the harsh combustion environment, all unnecessary electrical equipment should be turned off when starting.

Attention

- **Once the engine is started, release the start/stop button immediately.**
- **Even if the engine fails to start, if the engine fails to start within about 10 seconds, the start operation must be stopped and the start must be tried again at least about 30 seconds later.**
- **On automatic transmission models, the shift lever must be in the parking (P) or neutral (N) position to start the engine; On manual transmission models, the shift lever must be in neutral (N) position to start the engine.**

Not equipped with one-button start vehicle

1. The shift lever is in neutral.
2. Fully depress the clutch pedal and hold it in this position so that the starter only drives the engine.
3. Rotate the ignition switch to "START" position and start the engine.
4. Release the ignition key as soon as the engine starts.

Shut down the engine.

(Vehicles equipped with one-button start)

1. Stop the vehicle stably, step on the brake pedal, put the shift lever at "P" for automatic vehicles, and put the shift lever at neutral for manual vehicles, and pull the hand brake.
2. Press the start / stop button once, the engine will stop, and then the brake pedal or clutch pedal can be released.

Shut down the engine.

Vehicles with ignition switch

Stop the car stably, pull up the parking brake handle, place the shift lever in neutral, release the brake pedal and clutch pedal, and stop the engine.

2. Turn the ignition switch to "ACC" and the engine will shut down.

Warning

In the event of an accident, the accident vehicle may leak fuel. In order to prevent fire, the engine shall be shut down and fire sources such as fireworks shall be prohibited from approaching the vehicle.

Vehicle starting

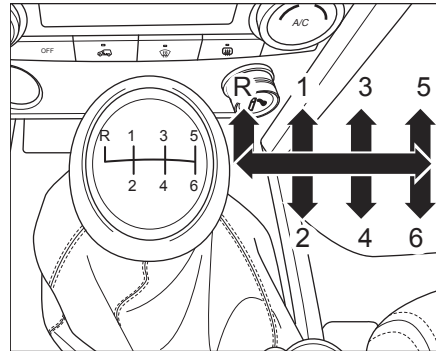
The idle speed is related to the engine coolant temperature. The engine idle speed gradually decreases to the normal idle speed as the coolant temperature increases. In cold weather, it may take a long time for the engine to drop from high idle speed to low idle speed. If you want to start at high idle speed, you should run the engine for at least 15 seconds before starting. For manual transmission vehicles, the speed of releasing the clutch pedal shall not be too fast to prevent accidents caused by sudden forward movement of the vehicle.

 **Warning**

- Do not start or run the engine in a poorly-ventilated place or closed space. Otherwise, the colorless, odorless and poisonous exhaust gas will cause personal coma or even suffocation.
- When the engine is running, do not leave the vehicle alone without supervision.
- Do not start the engine with any auxiliary starting device. Doing so can cause explosion or the engine to race, resulting in personal injury or death.
- To prevent damage to the starter, do not start the engine for more than 10 seconds each time. Wait for 10 to 15 seconds before starting the next time.

Driving description

Manual transmission models:



Press the clutch pedal down all the way and then start the engine.

The shift lever of the transmission is put into "1" or "2" gear from neutral, and the clutch pedal is slowly lifted so that the vehicle can start running.

When shifting up or down, make sure you push the clutch pedal down all the way, shift to the next gear, and let the pedal up gradually.

 **Attention**

- Do not try to start the engine when the transmission is in gear, because the vehicle may move.
- Before starting the engine, verify that the shift lever is in the neutral position.

Recommended driving speed

Gears	Vehicle speed (km/h)	
	Normal driving	Acceleration driving
1st gear	5-20	0-30
2nd gear	10-40	20-60
3rd gear	30-70	40-100
4th gear	Above 50	70-150
5th gear	60-120	—
6th gear	70-140	—

Tips

Forced downshift and deceleration: the vehicle speed shall not be greater than 50km/h when shifting to the 2nd gear; The vehicle speed shall not be greater than 30km/h when shifting to the 1st gear.

Correct operation of manual transmission

Shift with gentle force, and do not use excessive force to prevent damage to the transmission gears.

Do not put your hand on the shift lever all the time during the driving of the vehicle to avoid premature wear of the shift fork.

When shifting from forward gear to reverse gear, or from reverse gear to forward gear, it must be done when the vehicle stops completely, so as not to damage the transmission.

Do not use low-speed driving for a long time, so as not to reduce the engine life. When the vehicle is driving at high speed in a certain gear, do not force it to change into low gear, so as not to damage the engine or transmission.

When slowing down or going uphill, don't overload the engine or drive too slowly in a certain high gear. You should shift into low gear according to the speed requirements to avoid overheating of the engine.

When the vehicle is running or the engine is idling, do not step on the clutch pedal to avoid overheating or even damage to the clutch.

Do not use the "half-clutch" method to stop the vehicle on a slope to avoid damaging the clutch.

The clutch should be fully depressed when shifting gears to avoid damage to the transmission or clutch.

When the vehicle is stuck and needs to be impacted by shifting the forward gear and the back-up gear, the vehicle speed should not exceed 25km/h to avoid damage to the drive train.

Warning

- **Don't slide in neutral when going downhill, and don't turn off the engine.**
- **The speed should not be too fast when reversing.**
- **When the vehicle is towed, please keep the driving wheel off the ground.**

Shift to reverse position.

When the engine is running, press the clutch pedal to the bottom before engaging the back-up gear, pull up the back-up gear cable and select the shift lever to the back-up gear position. Once the back-up gear is engaged, the instrument will give a prompt sound. For vehicles with gear information display, the current gear lever position and gear position will also be displayed on the trip computer display screen, and the reverse radar system will start to work. For more information on the backup sensor system, see "Backup Sensor System *" on page 201.

i Tips

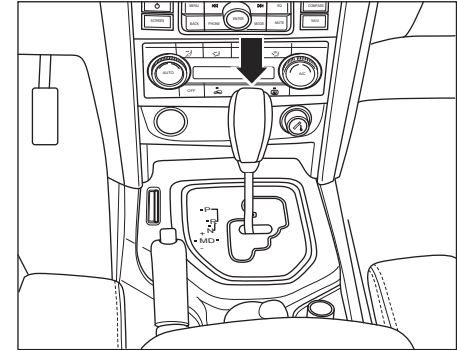
The reverse cable control device is under the shift ball head. Before engaging the back-up gear, pull it up and select the back-up gear position before engaging the back-up gear.

! Warning

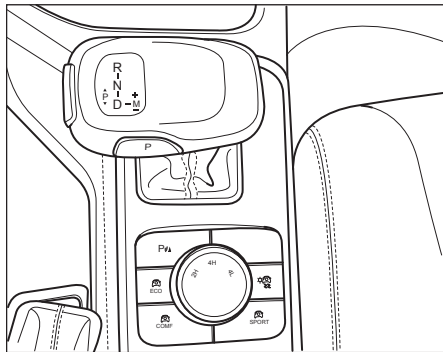
The reverse gear can only be engaged after the vehicle has stopped steadily.

When engaging the back-up gear, step on the clutch pedal for 3 seconds before gently engaging the gear, otherwise the service life of the back-up gear of the transmission will be affected. If the back-up gear is stuck and cannot be engaged, press the clutch pedal again and then engage it again.

Automatic transmission model I(6AT Model)*



Automatic transmission model II (8AT Model)*



- The shift control mechanism of the automatic transmission model I is a mechanical elbow shift type. You can refer to the gear prompt on the shift panel to perform the shift operation in the specified direction.
- The shift control mechanism of the automatic transmission model II is an electronic bistable self-reset shift type, and the shift operation can be performed in the specified direction by referring to the gear prompt on the shift handle.

Gears description of Automatic transmission model I

"P" gear (parking gear)

- Only after the vehicle is completely stopped and the brake pedal is fully depressed can the "P" gear be engaged or moved out.
- The automatic shift control mechanism has a "P" gear locking structure, which means that only after the brake pedal is pressed and the vehicle is powered on or started, the shift lever can be pushed right and backward to move the gear out of the "P" gear.

"R" gear (reverse gear):

- When entering the "R" gear, make sure that the vehicle has completely stopped; From the "P" gear or "N" gear into the "R" gear, you must step on the brake pedal to the bottom; When the gear is in "R" gear, the reversing light will come on automatically.

"N" gear (neutral gear)

- When the vehicle is completely stationary and the engine needs to be idle for a short time (such as waiting for traffic lights), the "N" gear can be selected. When the gear is in neutral, the transmission is not locked, and the parking

brake must be used or the brake pedal must be pressed.

"D" gear (driving gear):

- Use this position for your normal driving. The transmission automatically shift up or down according to the engine load and the vehicle speed.

"M" gear (Manual transmission):

- When the shift lever is shifted from the "D" gear to the "M" gear position, the transmission enters the manual gear mode at this time, and the current actual gear will be displayed on the instrument panel. By pushing the shift lever back and forth, the operation of adding and subtracting gears can be realized, and the corresponding actual gear will be displayed on the instrument panel at the same time. When the shift lever is shifted from the "D" gear to the "M" gear position, the transmission enters the manual gear mode at this time, and the current actual gear will be displayed on the instrument panel. By pushing the shift lever back and forth, the operation of adding and subtracting gears can be realized, and the corresponding actual gear will be displayed on the dashboard at the same time.

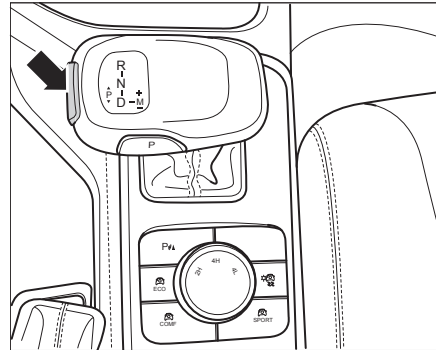
Gears description of Automatic transmission model II

Shift lever position and status:

- The shift lever has two steady-state positions, which are the center position and manual mode position respectively, and the rest positions are transient. (Note: Steady-state position refers to the position where the shift lever can be stabilized; transient position means that the shift lever can be pushed to this position by hand, but it will automatically return to the steady-state position when the shift lever is released.)
- When the shift lever is located in the center position, push forward has two transient positions, which are the first order and the second order in turn; Pushing back also has two transient positions, first order and second order.
- When the selector lever is in the center position, push it to the right to the manual mode position, push the manual mode position forward to have a transient position, push it backward also has a transient position, and push the manual mode position to the left to return to the center position .
- When the front and rear first-order and second-order shift operations are

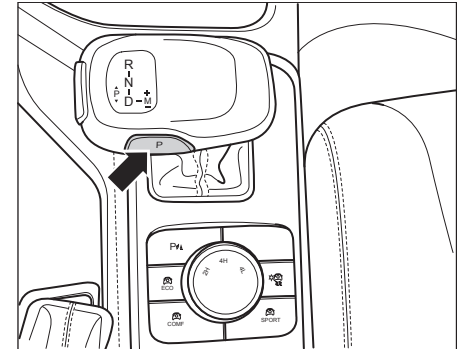
carried out, the automatic transmission will shift to the adjacent first gear in the corresponding direction according to the gear prompt on the shift handle when it is pushed forward or backward to the first order and the shift conditions are met;

Unlock button:



- The button on the left side of the shift handle is an unlock button, which needs to be pressed when moving out of "P" gear and into "R" gear, otherwise it will not be able to move out of "P" gear or into "R" gear successfully.

P gear button:



- The button with the "P" character on the rear side of the shift handle is the "P" gear button. When the vehicle is completely stopped, press the "P" gear button to directly shift the automatic transmission from any gear to the "P" gear .
- "P" gear (parking gear)
- After the vehicle stops completely, press the brake pedal to the bottom or pull up the parking brake, and press the "P" button to put the automatic transmission into the "P" gear, and the internal transmission gear of the transmission is stuck.

- As this model is an electronic gear shifting mechanism, in order to ensure safety, the transmission has a locking structure that automatically shifts into the "P" gear (when the complete vehicle is powered down, the automatic transmission will automatically shift into the "P" gear). Therefore, the automatic transmission will be automatically put into the "P" gear under the following conditions:

When the vehicle is stopped, the automatic transmission is in any gear of R/N/D/M, and the engine is turned off;

2. When the driver's door is open and the brake pedal is released after the R/D/M gear is engaged in the parking state with the brake pedal depressed.
- As the transmission of this model has a locking structure that automatically shifts to "P", the gear can be moved from "P" to other gears only when the brake pedal is fully depressed, the complete vehicle is started, the unlocking button of the shift handle is pressed, and the shift lever is pushed forward or backward to the first or second-order position.

"R" gear (reverse gear):

- When engaging the "R" gear, make sure that the vehicle has come to a complete stop. When shifting from "N" or "P" or "D" gear to "R", the brake pedal must be fully depressed, the unlocking button of the shift handle must be pressed, and the shift lever must be pushed forward to the first or second-order position before shifting to "R". When the gear is in "R", the "R" gear will be displayed on the instrument panel and the shift handle, and the reversing light will automatically light up.

"N" gear (neutral gear)

- When the vehicle is completely stationary and the engine needs to be idle for a short time (such as waiting for traffic lights), the "N" gear can be selected. When the gear is in the "n" position, "n" will be displayed on the instrument panel and the shift handle. If the transmission is not locked, the parking brake must be applied or the brake pedal pressed.

"D" gear (driving gear):

- Generally, this gear is used when the vehicle is driving forward, and "D" gear will be displayed on the instrument panel and the shift handle. The system will

automatically shift to the high gear or low gear according to the engine load and vehicle speed.

"M" gear (Manual transmission):

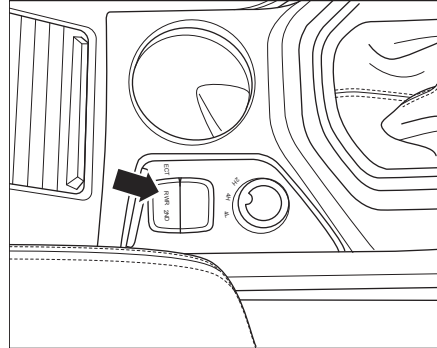
- Only when the current gear is "D", push the shift lever to the right to the manual mode position, and the automatic transmission enters the "M" gear mode. At the same time, the current actual gear M will be displayed on the dashboard, and the "M" gear will be displayed on the shift handle. At this time, the shift lever can be pushed back and forth to manually add and subtract gears, and the corresponding actual gear will be displayed on the dashboard.
- If the gear is in the "P", "R" and "N" gear, push the shift lever to the right to the manual mode position, and the automatic transmission will keep the original gear at this time, and the whole vehicle will display a prompt message on the dashboard and send out a prompt tone for pushing the shift lever to the left.
- If the automatic transmission is automatically shifted into the "P" gear when the engine is turned off in the "M" gear, please be sure to push the shift lever to the left center position, if not, you will

not be able to start the engine again. At this time, a prompt message is displayed on the dashboard and a prompt tone is issued to prompt the shift lever to be pushed to the left.

Driving operation:

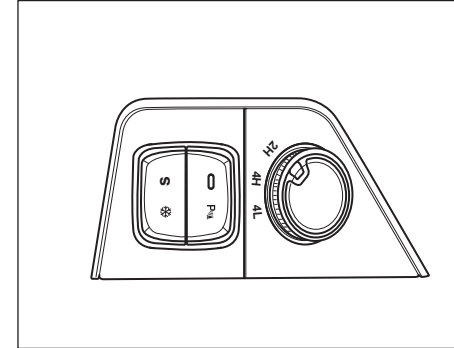
- Press the brake pedal to the bottom, turn the gear of the vehicle to P/N gear, and start the engine.
- Press and hold the brake pedal, shift the shift lever into "D" gear, and enter the normal shift procedure.
- After engaging the gear, first release the parking brake, then release the brake pedal, and slowly depress the accelerator pedal before the vehicle can start. When parking, depress the brake pedal, stop the vehicle, apply the parking brake, and engage the shift lever in "P" gear.

Sport mode (Type I) *



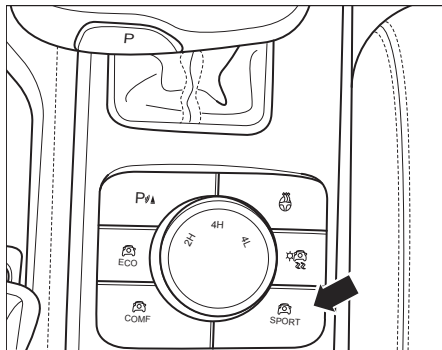
Sport Mode: Press the Sport Mode "PWR" button, the transmission will activate Sport Mode. This gear mainly delays the upshift time, that is, the transmission will only upshift when the engine is at a higher speed, so that the power of the engine can be fully utilized.

Sport mode (Type II) *



Press sport mode "PWR (or s)" to enter sport mode.

Sport mode (Type III) *



Press sport mode "PWR (or s)" to enter sport mode.

 Attention

- The vehicle starts the corresponding shifting program based on changes in resistance (e.g., traction, climbing a long slope, etc.), and moves the shift lever to a lower gear to give the vehicle more power. This can prevent frequent shifting.
- The speed of the cold engine is very high when it is just started, so please be careful when shifting to "D" or "R" gear before the engine warms up.
- Before starting the engine, make sure that the gear is in "P" or "N", and do not try to start the engine in other gears.
- When shifting the shift lever from "n" to other gears, please keep the engine at idle speed.

- When driving in manual mode, the vehicle will only be forced to upshift when the engine speed is too high. Please also note that the vehicle speed and load will be upshifted in time, otherwise the engine and automatic transmission will be damaged.

- For automatic transmission model II, the transmission will automatically shift to "P" gear when the engine is switched off. You should pay attention not to switch off the engine when the transmission
- "N" gear is required (such as vehicle washing device, towing trailer, etc.).
- For automatic transmission model II, when the engine cannot be started or must be shut down, if the transmission needs to be in "N", it is necessary to use the transmission "P" emergency unlocking mechanism to forcibly unlock the transmission and shift it to "N".
- For automatic transmission model II, when the engine is switched off at the "M" position, the transmission will automatically shift to the "P" position. Please be sure to push the shift lever to the left position to avoid affecting the
- When the vehicle is towed, please keep the driving wheel off the ground.

 Attention

For automatic transmission model II, automatically shift into "P" gear under the following conditions:

- When the vehicle is stopped, the automatic transmission is in any gear of R/N/D/M, and the engine is turned off;
- When the driver's door is opened and the brake pedal is released, if the D/M/R gear is engaged in the parking state.

 Warning

- The driver must carry the remote key when leaving the car. Otherwise, the passenger in the vehicle can start the engine or turn on the electrical equipment accidentally, resulting in serious personal injury or death.
- When parking the vehicle, you must exert parking brake. If the vehicle is stopped, no one shall be left in the vehicle, otherwise it may inadvertently release the parking brake and make the vehicle move.
- When parking or stopping with the engine running, be careful not to press the accelerator pedal for a long time. Otherwise, the engine or exhaust emission system may overheat and cause fire.
- Do not park the vehicle near flammables and explosives. Park the vehicle in the proper direction. Do not let the exhaust gas blow out the plants, causing damage to the green belt.

Shift lever position display *

On vehicles equipped with automatic transmission, the gear display in the combination instrument will display the current gear information of the transmission.

The gear character on the shift panel or the shift handle has the gear display function, that is, when the transmission is in a certain gear, the gear character will be illuminated,

highlighted or discolored with the gear. When the transmission and the shift lever are in any gear of the manual mode, the M, + and - gear characters are illuminated or highlighted or changed color with the gear.

How to use automatic transmission

The following information is particularly important for drivers unfamiliar with vehicles equipped with automatic transmissions.

- It is forbidden to use "D" gear when idling for a long time;
- When "D" or "R" gear is selected and the vehicle is stationary, do not run the engine at high speed (always select "N" gear if you need to idle for a long time).

- When the vehicle is parked for a long time, use the "P" gear and use it with the handbrake.
- Always apply the parking brake until you are ready to drive away, remember that once the drive gear is selected, the automatic vehicle will drive slowly forward or backward.
- When the vehicle is driving, especially when driving at high speed, please do not use the "N" gear to slide;
- When the vehicle is towed, please keep the driving wheel off the ground;
- Do not start the engine in gears other than "P" and "N";
- When driving on slippery roads, vehicles should start in snow mode. The specific operation is as follows: After the vehicle stops completely, put the gear lever into the "D" gear, press the snow mode button, step on the accelerator slowly, and start driving.

Attention

- **When the vehicle is running, please do not put into "P" or "R" gear, otherwise it will seriously damage the transmission.**
- **When the vehicle is driving, please do not engage in neutral gear for coasting.**

Shift to reverse position.

1. Stop the vehicle firmly.
2. After engaging in the gear, r, slowly release the brake pedal, and the vehicle will run in back-up gear.

When driving in reverse gear

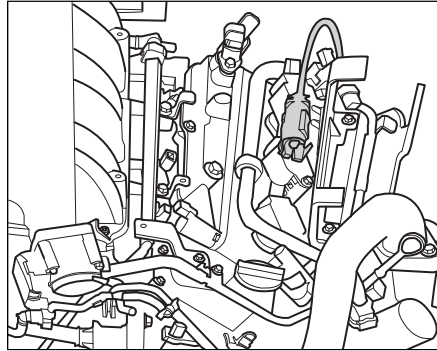
- The backup signal lights come on.
- Reversing rear-view system is activated automatically and the reversing image appears on the radio navigation entertainment system display (for some vehicle models).
- When the parking sensor is activated, it will sound an alarm with different frequencies when approaching an obstacle (see "Park Assist System" on page 195).

Special circumstances of limited use of transmission function

When the hardware, CAN communication, or TCU operation of the transmission fails, the vehicle function is restricted, and the corresponding limping mode is entered (the phenomenon that the vehicle cannot normally rise and fall, or is fixed in a specific gear, etc. may occur), and a Warning is given on the instrument through the gearbox fault indicator light or text. The vehicle can continue to drive. It is recommended to repair it as soon as possible.

Transmission P emergency unlocking

If the transmission cannot switch from "P" to another gear normally, the transmission "P" can be forcibly unlocked by emergency unlocking of the transmission. The emergency unlocking handle of the transmission is arranged under the trim cover in the engine compartment.



Attention

- **When this fault occurs, it is recommended to contact the authorized dealer of BAIC, and the professional will operate to remove the fault. Doing it yourself may damage vehicle-related components.**
- **When the transmission needs to be unlocked in an emergency, it means that there is a problem with the vehicle and needs to be checked and repaired at a authorized dealer of BAIC.**

1. Apply parking brake. .
2. Rotate the transmission emergency unlocking handle counterclockwise to

make it enter the sliding slot.

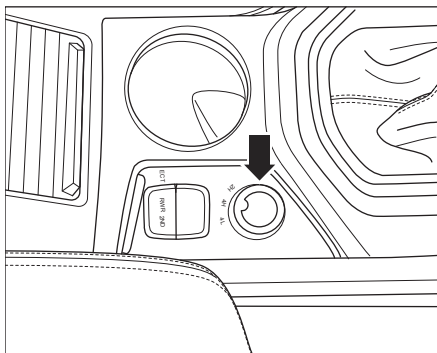
3. Pull the rope on the handle outward, pull it to the outermost side, rotate the transmission emergency unlocking handle clockwise, and there will be a slight "click", indicating that the handle position has been fixed, and the transmission is in the "P" gear unlocking state. At this time, the vehicle will give an alarm, the instrument will display "transmission parklock failure", and the transmission fault light will be on. At this time, the transmission is in "N" gear.
4. After the vehicle is moved, please immediately follow the reverse operation steps of the above methods to restore the transmission emergency unlocking handle to its original position.

Attention

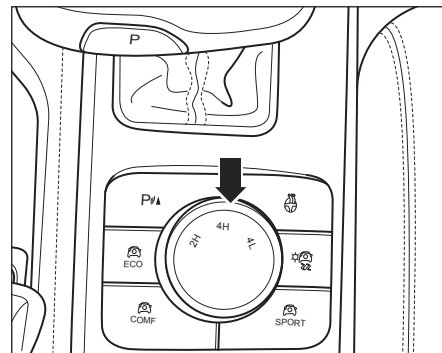
- **Forced release of transmission "P" gear for a long time should be avoided.**
- **In the case of forcibly releasing the "P" gear of the transmission, the transmission is not locked. If you need to stop the vehicle, you must use the parking brake or step on the brake pedal.**

Transfer Case

Vehicles equipped with electronic transfer gears (type I)*



Vehicles equipped with electronic transfer gears (type II)*



This vehicle is equipped with Electronic time-sharing 4WD transfer case, which has the following gears:

2H: Two-wheel drive, high-grade, rear-wheel drive, used under normal driving conditions, without four-wheel drive.

4H: Four-wheel drive high-grade, four-wheel drive, can be used in rain, snow, muddy, gravel areas or general cross-country roads for a short time, and is not allowed to be used on dry or paved roads.

4L: Four-wheel drive low-gear, four-wheel drive, can be used on off-road roads requiring low speed and high traction for a short time, and is not allowed to be used on dry or paved roads.

Gears shift

Switching between 2H and 4H:

During the driving process of the vehicle (the required speed is lower than 30km/h), the driver can switch between 2H and 4H at will without stopping the vehicle, but it should be done when driving in a straight line at a constant speed.

Switching between 4H and 4L:

1. Stop the vehicle and keep the engine running
2. Depress the clutch pedal or move the shift lever to the N position;
3. Rotate the transfer case shift switch to 4L or 4H. Note: For MT models, do not lift the clutch before the transfer case shift is completed; during the shift process, the target gear flashes, and after the gear shift is completed, the target gear is always on.

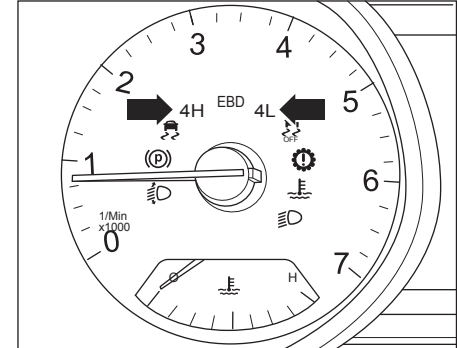
Warning

The electronic switch can only be operated after the vehicle has stopped stably.

- If the transfer case gear is not fully engaged, the transfer case may be damaged or the vehicle loses power and control, resulting in personal injury accidents.
- Do not put the transfer case in the neutral (N) position without first applying the parking brake lever. When the transfer case is in the neutral (N) position, the front and rear axles are disconnected from the powertrain.
- Do not drive on dry and hard roads for a long time in 4WD mode (Vehicles with electronic transfer case).
- If abnormal vibration of chassis is found during turning, please check whether the transfer gear is not placed in "2H" gear first (Vehicles with electronic transfer case).
- Use the "4L" gear only when extra traction is needed, and do not use the "4L" gear for a long time.
- The driving speed of the vehicle in

4WD mode shall not exceed 60km/h (Vehicles with electronic transfer case).

Electronically controlled four-wheel drive transfer case



The 4WD status indicator lights are located in the tachometer in the combination instrument and include:

1. Four-wheel drive low gear status indicator "4L": When this light is on, it means the vehicle is in four-wheel drive low gear.
2. 4WD high-gear status indicator "4H": When this light is on, it means that the vehicle's transfer case is in a high-gear state.

Drive system

General

When the vehicle is on off-road road, improper operation of the driver will cause abnormal damage to the transmission system.

Operation requirements (steep hill, uneven mountains and muddy sections):

1. Four-wheel low-gear drive, maintain stable throttle. Drive slowly, and the speed should not exceed 25 km/h.
2. Do not accelerate or lift the clutch sharply to avoid abnormal damage to the transmission system.
3. Once the vehicle can't get out of trouble by itself, don't force it to operate. Please quickly ask for help from external forces to help you get out of trouble

Attention

When driving into a cross-country zone, remember to drive slowly and the speed should not exceed 25 km/h.

Avoid sudden acceleration to prevent the wheels from turning suddenly and violently, resulting in idling and skidding.

When the vehicle is out of trouble, it is forbidden to accelerate sharply or lift the clutch suddenly.

The following will cause failure of transmission parts, remember to avoid:

1. Press the brake pedal and accelerator pedal at the same time, and lift the clutch sharply.
2. The front-wheel encountered a big obstacle, so it was eager to get out of trouble and slammed on the accelerator pedal.
3. The wheels soar and step on the accelerator pedal.
4. The steering wheel is turned to the end, and one wheel is under stress (such as a step or a dimple), and the drive axle is over-stressed.

Mechanical Locking Differential (if optional) Operating Instructions *

1. Automatic locking:

The rear axle is optionally equipped with a

mechanical locking differential. When the vehicle speed is lower than 25km/h, when the speed difference between the left and right rear wheels reaches 120r/min, the mechanical locking differential is automatically locked to help the vehicle get out of trouble.

2. Manual unlocking

After the vehicle is out of trouble, the driver only needs to turn the steering wheel gently to the side of the skidding wheel to unlock it. If the driver can't accurately judge which side the skidding wheel is located on, it can also be unlocked by tapping the steering wheel in the left and right directions.

Attention

- **At the moment of locking, the mechanical locking differential will produce slight impact and deviation, which is a normal phenomenon and will not cause vehicle damage;**
- **After the vehicle is locked by the mechanical locking differential, the differential must be unlocked in time to prevent danger during driving.**

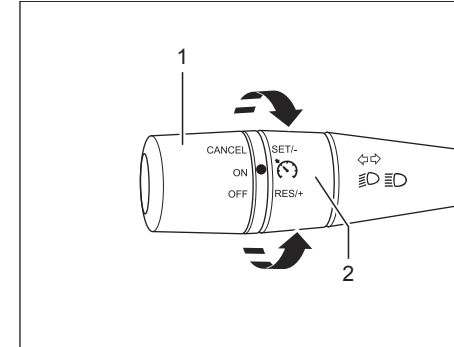
Cruise Control System (Type I)*



The cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed of 45 km/h and above without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

Warning

- **To avoid accidents, the cruise control is not recommended for conditions such as traffic-intensive sections, hills, winding roads, or slippery roads. You should have full control of the vehicle under those conditions.**
- **The set speed and the vehicle-to-vehicle distance must be adapted to the current traffic conditions. The cruise control is only a parking assist system. Use the cruise control with extra care.**
- **Be sure to deactivate the cruise control after using it.**

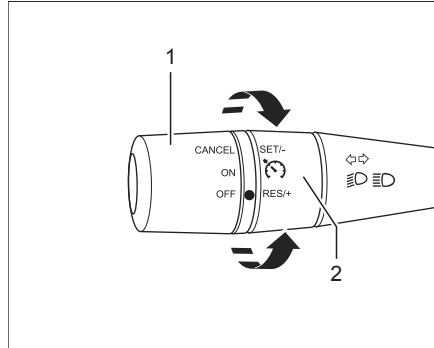
Cruise start button




1. Rotate the cruise control main switch - 1 - to the "ON" position, the indicator light  in the meter lights up, and when the vehicle speed is set to enter the cruise function, the indicator light  is always on.
2. Raise the vehicle speed to the cruising starting speed (not less than 45km/h).
3. Continuously rotate the cruise speed setting key - 2 - "set / -" to continuously reduce the speed; Continuously rotate the vehicle speed setting key - 2 - "RES / +" to continuously increase the vehicle speed.

- Release the accelerator pedal and the vehicle enters the cruise control state.

Cruise off button

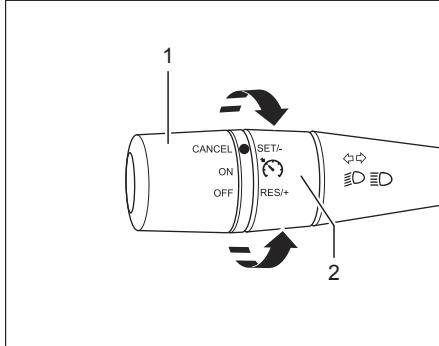


When the cruise function is on, turn the constant speed cruise main switch - 1 - to the "OFF" position to turn off the constant speed cruise function. At the same time, the green cruise indicator light  goes out in the dashboard and the vehicle speed memory is cleared. The vehicle speed needs to be reset next time.

If any of the following conditions occurs during the cruise control mode, the cruise control will also be automatically exited and the memorized cruise speed will also be cleared:

- Brake and speed failure.
- Accelerator pedal failure or airbag explosion.
- Throttle valve failure or emergency fuel cut-off.

Cruise release button



Rotate the cruise control setting button -1- to the "CANCEL" position, the current cruise will be canceled, but the vehicle speed memory will not be cleared, and it will turn off at this time.

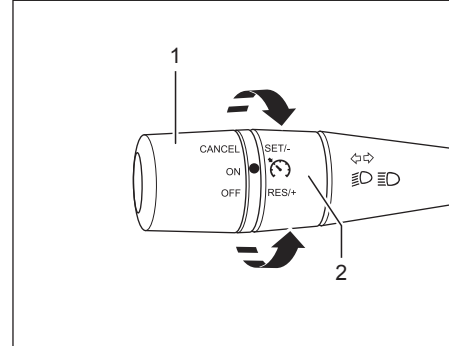
i Tips
 When the switch - 1 - is turned to the "CANCEL" position, the switch will automatically return to the "ON" position when the switch is released, but the cruise has been released.

i Tips
 For vehicles equipped with automatic transmission, when the shift lever is in the "P", "N" or "R" position, the constant speed cruise control cannot be entered.

If any of the following conditions occurs during cruise control driving, cruise control will be automatically released, but the memorized cruise speed will be retained:

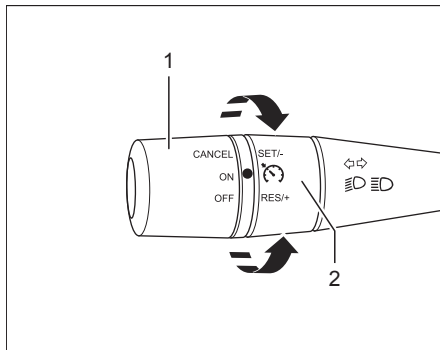
- Forced exit with the CANCEL switch.
- The transmission is shifted to neutral (automatic transmission model).
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Step on the accelerator pedal.

Cruise speed reduction button



Under the premise that the cruise has been entered, rotate the vehicle speed setting button "SET/-" to reduce the target vehicle speed, each time the SET/- switch is rotated, the vehicle cruising speed will be reduced by 2 km/h.

Cruise speed increase / return button



Under the premise that the cruise has been entered, rotate the cruise speed setting button "RES/+" to increase the target vehicle speed, each time the RES / + switch is rotated, the vehicle cruise speed increases by 2 km/h.

When the cruise function is canceled due to external factors, rotate the cruise speed setting button "RES/+" and hold it for 1-2 seconds to re-enter the cruise mode, and the vehicle speed will return to the last recorded speed in the cruise mode.

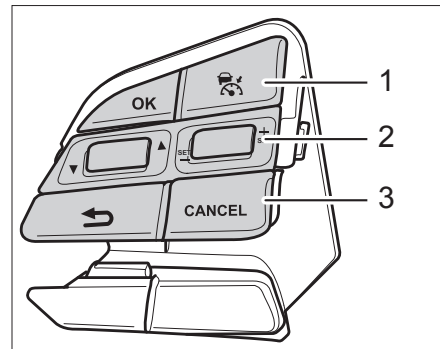
Cruise Control System (Type II)*



The cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed of 45 km/h and above without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

Warning

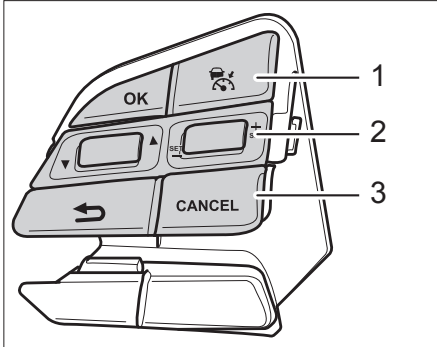
- **To avoid accidents, the cruise control is not recommended for conditions such as traffic-intensive sections, hills, winding roads, or slippery roads. You should have full control of the vehicle under those conditions.**
- **The set speed and the vehicle-to-vehicle distance must be adapted to the current traffic conditions. The cruise control is only a parking assist system. Use the cruise control with extra care.**
- **Be sure to deactivate the cruise control after using it.**


Cruise start button



1. Short press the cruise control main switch - 1 -, the indicator light  in the meter lights up, and when the vehicle speed is set to enter the cruise function, the indicator light  is always on.
2. Raise the vehicle speed to the cruising starting speed (not less than 45km/h).
3. Continuously dial down the cruise speed setting button -2- "SET/-" to continuously decrease the vehicle speed; continuously dial up the vehicle speed setting button -2- "RES/+" to continuously increase the vehicle speed.
4. Release the accelerator pedal and the vehicle enters the cruise control state.

Cruise off button

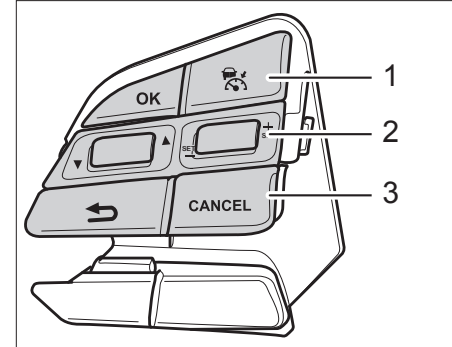



When the cruise function is on, short press the cruise control main switch -1- to disable the cruise control function of the vehicle; at the same time, the green cruise indicator light  in the dashboard turns off and the vehicle speed memory is cleared; Set the speed again the next time you use it.

If any of the following conditions occurs during the cruise control mode, the cruise control will also be automatically exited and the memorized cruise speed will also be cleared:

- Brake and speed failure.
- Accelerator pedal failure or airbag explosion.
- Throttle valve failure or emergency fuel cut-off.

Cruise release button



Pressing the button -3- "CANCEL" will cancel the current cruise, but the vehicle speed memory will not be cleared, and it will go out at this time .

Tips

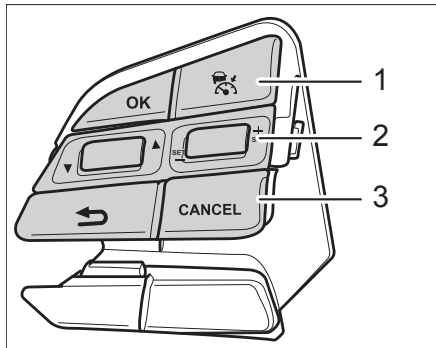
For vehicles equipped with automatic transmission, when the shift lever is in the "P", "N" or "R" position, the constant speed cruise control cannot be entered.

3

If any of the following conditions occurs during cruise control driving, cruise control will be automatically released, but the memorized cruise speed will be retained:

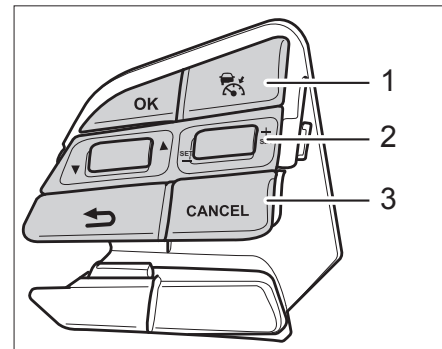
- Forced exit with the CANCEL switch.
- The transmission is shifted to neutral (automatic transmission model).
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Step on the accelerator pedal.

Cruise speed reduction button



Under the premise of entering cruise, press down the vehicle speed setting button -2- "SET/-" to reduce the target vehicle speed, each time you press the SET / - button, the vehicle cruise speed will be reduced by 2 km/h.

Cruise speed increase/return button



Under the premise that the cruise has been entered, dial up the cruise speed setting button "RES/+" to increase the target vehicle speed, each time the RES / + switch is dialed up, the vehicle cruise speed increases by 2 km/h.

When the cruise function is canceled due to external factors, dial up the cruise speed setting button "RES/+" and hold it for 1-2 seconds to re-enter the cruise mode, and the vehicle speed will return to the last recorded speed in the cruise mode.

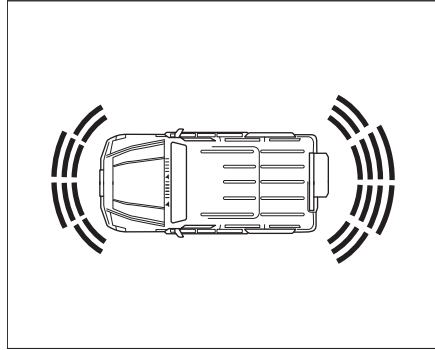
Park Assist System and Back-up rear-view system*

Park assistance system Vehicles not equipped with a back-up rear-view system

The parking assist system of this model is equipped with 4 rear parking sensors and 4 front parking sensors. 4 rear parking sensors are mounted on the rear bumper and 4 front parking sensors are mounted on the front bumper.

The parking assist system is a safety aid for the car when parking or back-up. It uses ultrasound to detect the approximate distance to an obstacle, displays it on the radio navigation entertainment system display, and informs the driver of the result (via an intermittent audible signal). Parking radar is only a parking assist system and cannot replace the driver's own objective analysis of obstacles.

Radio navigation entertainment system display



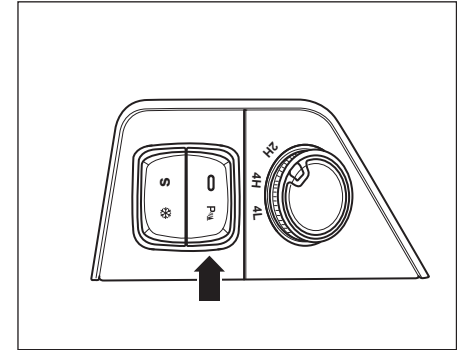
The four or three segments of the parking display indicate the distance of the obstacle from the vehicle, and a buzzer Warning will sound.

When the distance is getting closer and closer, the indicator strip will gradually decrease on the corresponding side, and the buzzer will sound more and more rapidly, reminding the driver to pay attention to the obstacles behind.

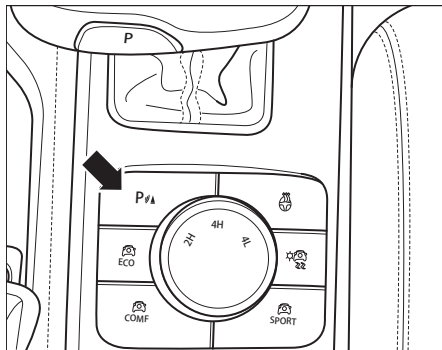
When the reverse gear is engaged, the front parking sensor and the rear parking sensor work at the same time, and the display screen of the radio navigation en-

tertainment system displays the reversing interface.

Front parking sensor function (type I)*



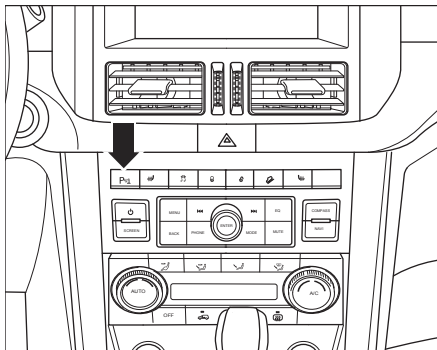
Front parking sensor function (type II)*



Press the **P** button to switch the front parking sensor function on and off.

When engaged in reverse gear, the front parking sensor function can be activated. After the function is turned on, if the forward speed is lower than 15km/h and there is an obstacle in front of the vehicle, the radio navigation entertainment system will display the back-up interface.

Park assist system off function



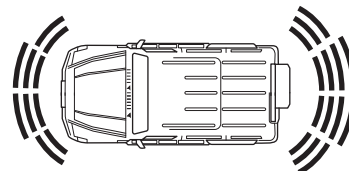
When the start/stop button is in "RUN" mode, or the ignition switch is in "ON" mode, and the button status indicator light is on, the parking assist system is on; when the **P** button status indicator light is not on, the parking assist system is on. is closed

- Press **P** the button to switch the Park Assist system ON or OFF.
- When engaged in back-up gear, the park assist system can be activated

- When the vehicle speed is greater than 15km/h, the parking assist system is automatically turned off.

Front system detection area

Please pay attention to the actual surrounding environment to ensure safety



Park assistance system

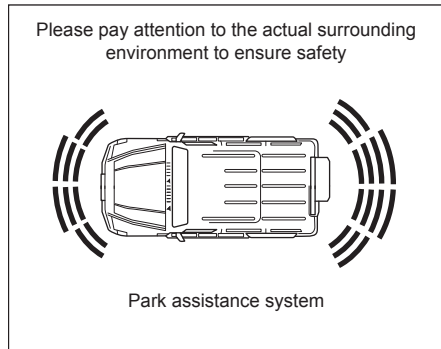
The detection distance of the front parking assist system sensors is divided into 3 areas.

1. Parking area: The first layer is displayed by a red display bar, the obstacle is 0cm-30cm away from the front of the vehicle, and the alarm will sound long.
2. Slow-moving area: the second layer is displayed by a yellow display bar, the obstacle is 30cm-60cm away from the front of the vehicle, and the alarm

sounds rapidly and intermittently.

3. Early Warning area: The third layer is displayed by a yellow display bar, the obstacle is 60cm-90cm away from the front of the car, and the alarm sound is intermittent at medium speed.

Rear system detection area



The detection distance of the rear parking assist system sensors is divided into 4 areas.

1. Parking area: The first layer is displayed by a red display bar, the obstacle is 0cm-30cm away from the front of the vehicle, and the alarm will sound long.

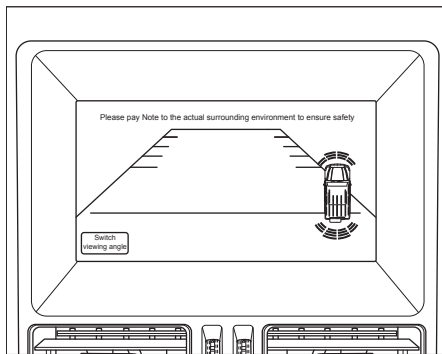
2. Slow-moving area: the second layer is displayed by a yellow display bar, the obstacle is 30cm-60cm away from the front of the vehicle, and the alarm sounds rapidly and intermittently.
3. Early Warning area: The third layer is displayed by a yellow display bar, the obstacle is 60cm-90cm away from the front of the car, and the alarm sound is intermittent at medium speed.
4. Early Warning area: On the fourth layer, the honorable models are displayed with yellow display bars, while the non-honorable models are displayed with green display bars. The obstacles are 90cm-150cm away from the front of the car, and the alarm sounds slowly and intermittently.

Vehicles equipped with a back-up rear-view system

The parking assist system of this model is equipped with 4 rear parking sensors and 4 front parking sensors. 4 rear parking sensors are mounted on the rear bumper and 4 front parking sensors are mounted on the front bumper.

The parking assist system is a safety aid for the car when parking or back-up. It uses ultrasound to detect the approximate distance to an obstacle, displays it on the radio navigation entertainment system display, and informs the driver of the result (via an intermittent audible signal). Parking radar is only a parking assist system and cannot replace the driver's own objective analysis of obstacles.

Radio navigation entertainment system display



The four or three segments of the parking display indicate the distance of the obstacle from the vehicle, and a buzzer Warning will sound.

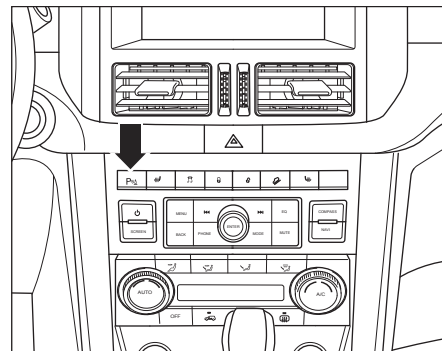
When the distance is getting closer and closer, the indicator strip will gradually decrease on the corresponding side, and the buzzer will sound more and more rapidly, reminding the driver to pay attention to the obstacles behind.


When the reverse gear is engaged, the front parking sensor and the rear parking sensor work at the same time, and the display screen of the radio navigation entertainment system displays the reversing interface.


Tips

When the automatic transmission model is engaged in the "P" gear or the handbrake of the manual transmission model is pulled, the parking assist system will be turned off and the parking sensor will not work at this time.

Park assist system off function

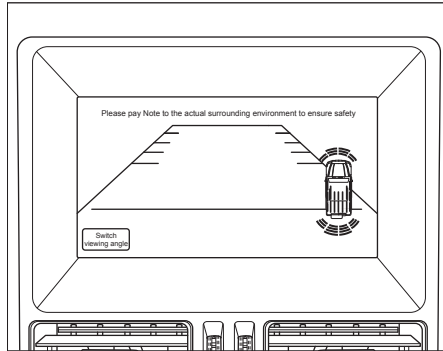


When the start/stop button is in "RUN" mode, or the ignition switch is in "ON" mode, and the  button status indicator light is on, the parking assist system is on; when the button status indicator light is not on, the parking assist system is on. is closed.

- Press  the button to switch the Park Assist system ON or OFF.
- When engaged in back-up gear, the park assist system can be activated

- When the vehicle speed is greater than 15km/h, the parking assist system is automatically turned off.

Front system detection area



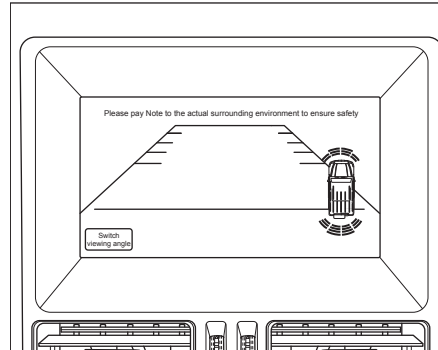
The detection distance of the front parking assist system sensors is divided into 3 areas.

1. Parking area: The first layer is displayed by a red display bar, the obstacle is 0cm-30cm away from the front of the vehicle, and the alarm will sound long.
2. Slow-moving area: the second layer is displayed by a yellow display bar, the obstacle is 30cm-60cm away from the front of the vehicle, and the alarm

sounds rapidly and intermittently.

3. Early Warning area: The third layer is displayed by a yellow display bar, the obstacle is 60cm-90cm away from the front of the car, and the alarm sound is intermittent at medium speed.

Rear system detection area



The detection distance of the rear parking assist system sensors is divided into 4 areas.

1. Parking area: The first layer is displayed by a red display bar, the obstacle is 0cm-30cm away from the front of the vehicle, and the alarm will sound long.

2. Slow-moving area: the second layer is displayed by a yellow display bar, the obstacle is 30cm-60cm away from the front of the vehicle, and the alarm sounds rapidly and intermittently.
3. Early Warning area: The third layer is displayed by a yellow display bar, the obstacle is 60cm-90cm away from the front of the car, and the alarm sound is intermittent at medium speed.
4. Early Warning area: On the fourth layer, the honorable models are displayed with yellow display bars, while the non-honorable models are displayed with green display bars. The obstacles are 90cm-150cm away from the front of the car, and the alarm sounds slowly and intermittently.

 **Warning**

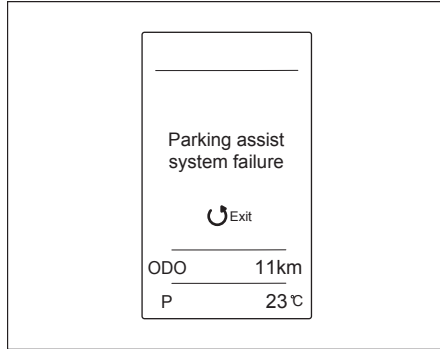
- The parking assist system is only a back-up assist system. Since the sensor probe of the parking assist system has a blind spot when detecting obstacles, the driver still needs to pay attention to the surrounding environment during the back-up process. Avoid reverse collision accidents.
- It is recommended that the reversing speed should not exceed 15km/h, when the park assist system continues to sound, immediately stop reversing. Then, the vehicle is extremely close to the barrier. Be sure to avoid accidents.
- The sensor probe of the parking assist system is a precision component, so do not disassemble it for maintenance without permission. Damage caused by removal, installation or repair without authorization is not covered by the warranty.
- The surface of certain items does not reflect signals from the Parking Assist System sensor probes, resulting in the sensor probes not being able to detect such items or persons wearing such clothing.

 **Attention**

- If there are water drops attached to the surface of the sensor probe, the sensitivity of the sensor probe will decrease. The sensitivity can be restored by wiping the water drops attached to the sensor probe.
- The outside noise source may interfere with the alarm system, so that the system cannot detect the items or persons properly.
- When reversing in a narrow space or uphill, the system may detect the railings, trees or slope. This is a normal phenomenon.
- To ensure the function of the sensor probe on the bumper, keep it clean and avoid icing. Be sure to clean the parking sensor probe gently and shortly with a high pressure washer. Make sure the distance between the nozzle and the sensor is at least 10 cm and more.

- Detection distance refers to the distance from the spare tire to the obstacle.
- When the obstacle detected by the front/rear parking assist sensor is stationary for more than five seconds, the speaker is forbidden to sing.
- When the parking assist system fails, please go to the authorized dealer of BAIC for repair in time.

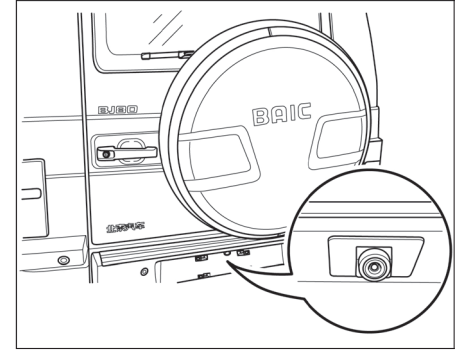
Parking assist system failure display



When the parking assist system fails, the tip information "Parking Assist System Failure" is displayed on the trip computer display of the combination instrument, and the display screen of the radio navigation entertainment system displays the corresponding fault graphic without Warning sound. Please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC motor for inspection and maintenance as soon as possible.

Backup rear-view system *

There is a back-up camera installed on the rear bumper of the vehicle. The image behind the vehicle is captured by this camera and transmitted to the display screen of the radio navigation entertainment system in the cab. The driver can clearly see the road conditions behind the vehicle, so as to intuitively assist the driver's safety and avoid collisions. The back-up rear-view system is a system for displaying the environment behind the vehicle when the car is parked at low speed (such as entering a garage). The backup rear-view system is only a parking assistance system, which can not replace the objective analysis of obstacles by the driver.



Turn on and off the reversing rear view system

ON:

When the start/stop button is in the "RUN" mode or the ignition switch is turned on to the "ON" position, the shift lever is engaged in the reverse gear ("R" gear), the back-up rear-view system is activated, and the display of the radio navigation entertainment system shows that after reversing View video.

OFF:

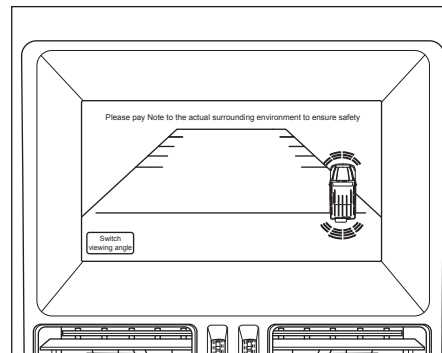
1. The shift lever exits from reverse gear ("R" gear), and the back-up rear-view system is closed after reversing;
2. When the vehicle speed is greater than 15km/h, the back-up rear-view system is turned off after reversing.

Attention

- **When reversing, pay attention to control the speed and observe the surrounding environment. Don't take it lightly because the vehicle is equipped with back-up rear-view system.**
- **In the process of reversing, only when the speed is less than 15km/h, the back-up rear-view system will be turned on. When the speed is greater than 15km/h, the trip computer display screen displays a Warning "Warning!!! The speed is too fast, the back-up safety assist system is turned off, please drive safely! "**
- **When the vehicle speed is less than 15km/h again, the back-up rear-view video is displayed again.**

Switch viewing angle

The screen of the back-up rear-view system is superimposed on the screen of the parking assist system. For details, please refer to the "Parking Assist System" section.



Switch the viewing angle button to cycle by the "normal viewing angle", "top view viewing angle" and "bird's eye view viewing angle".

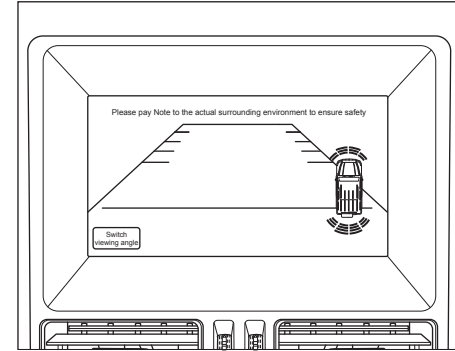
For the default viewing angle setting when power on, please refer to the "Radio Navigation Entertainment System Manual" for details.

In the "normal viewing angle", the static track and dynamic track lines are displayed.

Rear-view track line function description

Attention

The position of the guideline displayed on the screen will change with the vehicle load (number of passengers, number of luggage, etc.). Before operation, always visually check the environment behind and around the vehicle.



The red line is 0.3 meters, and the yellow scales are 1 meter, 1.5 meters, 2 meters, 2.5 meters, and 3 meters in order from near to far.

The track line swings left and right with the rotation of the steering wheel, indicating the driving track of the vehicle when reversing.

Conditions affecting the rear view effect of back-up

To get optimal image, keep the rear camera always clean and don't cover it. When cleaning camera, use soft wet cloth to avoid scratching of camera lens.

When the backup rear-view system fails, the backup rear-view screen has no image. At this time, the backup rear-view system cannot work normally, so it should be repaired and at the licensed dealer of our company as soon as possible.

Attention

- **When reversing, please don't be completely attracted by the picture of the back-up rear-view system. The driver should observe the surrounding conditions of the vehicle at any time, and don't take it lightly because the vehicle is equipped with the back-up rear-view system.**
 - **The rear-view system can't accurately judge the distance between the vehicle and the object, and it needs to be judged according to the actual situation.**
 - **There are inevitably some blind spots in the back-up rear-view system, and it is impossible to photograph the situation in the blind spots.**
 - **The image of the rear-view camera is blurred by sundries such as ice, snow and soil. Please keep the camera clean at any time.**
- **In extreme weather, such as strong light, rain and snow, the effect of reversing rear-view system may be affected. Please change the driving mode.**
 - **When reversing, the driver must make sure that there are no people or children in the driving area.**

Brake System

General Introduction

All four wheels of the vehicle are equipped with disc brakes. The Booster helps reduce the amount of force required to depress the brake pedal.

The service brake system has two sets of brake lines. One pipeline failed, and the other could stop the vehicle normally. However, the brake pedal must be pressed harder than usual. Please contact the special dealer of BAIC for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Placing your foot on the brake pedal during driving will cause the brake to operate slightly and generate heat, thus reducing the effectiveness of the brake, shortening the service life of the brake friction plate and reducing the fuel saving efficiency. If the brake light is always on, it will also cause confusion to the driver behind.

When going down a long slope, continuous use of the brake will cause it to accumulate heat, thus reducing the effectiveness of the brake. At this time, keep your foot off the accelerator pedal and shift to a lower gear to assist braking with the engine.

After driving through deep water, the

brakes must be checked. Press the brake moderately and feel whether the braking effect is normal. If there is any abnormality, the brake should be lightly pressed frequently until the braking effect returns to normal.

Braking operation includes feeling time and reaction time.

First, the driver has to decide whether to step on the brake pedal, which is the feeling time. Then you must raise your foot and press the pedal. This is the reaction time.

The average reaction time is about three quarters of a second. But this is only the average time. Maybe one driver's reaction time is shorter, but the other driver's reaction time will be as long as two to three seconds, or even longer. Reaction time is affected by age, physical condition, vigilance, coordination and vision, as well as alcohol, drugs and depression. The vehicle will move forward for 20 meters when the speed is 100km/h even if the response time is about three quarters of a second. And in an emergency, the distance may be too long. Therefore, it is very important to keep enough distance from other vehicles.

Of course, the actual braking distance will vary depending on the road surface (eg paved or sandy), road conditions (wet, dry,

icy), tire tread, braking vehicle weight, and braking force.

Do not apply the brake pedal urgently when it is not required. Some drivers drive too uncontrollably. For example, they step on the accelerator pedal and then the brake pedal, failing to keep pace with the speed of traffic flow. This is a wrong approach. The brakes do not have time to cool down between consecutive emergency braking, and if the brake pedal is frequently pressed hard, it will accelerate the wear of the brakes. Keeping pace with the traffic flow and keeping a certain distance between vehicles will greatly reduce unnecessary emergency braking, which will improve the braking effect and prolong the brake life.

If the engine stalls during driving, the normal braking shall be adopted but the inching braking shall not be adopted, otherwise it will be difficult to step on the brake pedal. Even if the engine is stopped, there is still some brake assistance for braking, but it will be consumed during braking. Once the brake power is exhausted, the braking time will be prolonged, and it will be more difficult to step on the brake pedal.

Factors affecting the braking effect

1. Abrasion

The wear of brake friction plates depends to a great extent on the use mode and driving conditions, especially for those cars that often travel in urban traffic and short distances or drive in sports mode. Therefore, within the prescribed time interval of maintenance, it is very necessary to go to the special dealer of BAIC to check the thickness of brake friction plates.

When driving downhill, you should change gears in time to make use of the braking force of the engine, which can reduce the burden on the brakes. To increase braking force, do not brake continuously but intermittently.

2. Moist or sprinkled salt

Under certain driving conditions, such as driving in water, rain, or after washing the car, due to the freezing of brake discs and friction discs due to humidity or low temperature in winter, the braking effect will lag, so it is necessary to brake several times first and dry the brakes.

When driving on rainy days and slippery roads, the vehicle speed should be controlled to prevent slippage; when encountering water, the vehicle should be passed at a low speed and a uniform speed. After passing through a road with deep water, the brake pads and brake discs will be soaked in water, which will affect the braking effect. It is necessary to lightly step on the brakes a few times to keep the brake parts dry and restore performance.

When driving on salted roads, if the brakes have not been applied for a long time, the braking action will be delayed and lagged. To resolve it, it is necessary to eliminate the salt layers on the brake discs and brake linings.

3. Plateau environment

Because of the high mountains and long slopes in plateau areas, the brakes are used frequently and for a long time, and often work continuously under forced dynamic conditions, these factors will make the braking effect worse. Therefore, we suggest that the vehicle should not slide in neutral and avoid frequent braking when going downhill. Try to use low gear to control the vehicle speed through the braking effect of the engine itself, which can reduce the working intensity of the wheel

brake and reduce the brake temperature. When using engine braking, the lower the transmission gear, the higher the engine speed, the greater the drag force, and the more obvious the braking effect.

The air in plateau area is thin and the air pressure is low, which is different from the atmospheric pressure in plain and has different boosting effects. In a plateau area, because the atmospheric pressure acting on the diaphragm of the brake booster per unit area is less than a standard atmospheric pressure force, the brake booster will become smaller and the time for producing the same boosting effect will become longer, which is a normal physical phenomenon, so it is necessary to apply greater brake pedal force when braking in the plateau area. When braking is needed, do not slam the brake pedal many times, but keep your feet on the brake pedal and control the brake pedal force to ensure the braking effect.

4. Snow and ice weather

Because of the low friction coefficient of ice and snow road surface, the braking distance will be greatly prolonged during braking, and the braking distance will raise with the raise of vehicle speed. Therefore, special attention should be paid to controlling the vehicle speed when driving on ice and snow road surface, and a large safe distance should be kept from the front vehicle or the side vehicle.

No coasting with the Neutral position is permitted when driving on icy and snowy road surfaces.

5. Surface rust

If the vehicle is parked for a long period of time or you have not operated the brake system for a long period of time, the brake disc may become rusty and the lining may become dirty. We recommend that you apply the brakes repeatedly to clean the brake discs when the vehicle is moving.

6. Brake system failure

If you suddenly find the braking distance becomes longer or brake pedal stroke becomes longer, there may be a trouble in the braking system. In this case, you should immediately drive to the nearest the special dealer of BAIC for inspection and maintenance. On the drive to the special dealer of BAIC, please drive at a low speed, adjust your driving style, and apply more force to the brake pedal when braking.

7. Over-heated brake

Never "slip rotation" the brake by lightly stepping on the brake pedal when braking is not required, which will cause the brake to overheat, extend the braking distance and raise wear.

If the spoiler, wheel trim panel, and other relevant accessories are installed, it must be ensured that the airflow to the brake is not affected, otherwise, the brake will overheat.

Brake pedal

Do not place thick floor mats or other foreign objects near the brake pedal. This affects the travel of the brake pedal in an emergency. Make sure that the brake pedal operates freely in all conditions.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal when braking is not required. Otherwise, the brake temperature will rise, the brake pads will wear prematurely, and even the brake will be damaged.

Brake lining

When the brake lining is worn to the limit, the disc brake equipped with a Warning device will emit a squeal of metal friction. If you hear this sound, go to the special dealer of BAIC to replace the new brake lining as soon as possible.

After replacing a new brake lining, avoid emergency braking as much as possible during the first 200km of driving.

Warning

Do not drive a vehicle with excessively worn brake linings, which will make it difficult to brake the vehicle and may cause accidents.

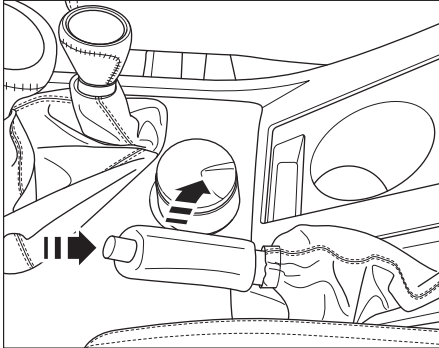
Brake system status and brake system fault Warning light

When the parking brake handle is pulled up and not released, the handbrake work indicator light will light up. When the brake fluid level is lower than the specified level, the brake fluid level low indicator light will light up.

Before driving, release the parking brake handle completely and ensure that the brake level low indicator light goes out. If the low brake level indicator light lights up while the vehicle is running, it means that the braking efficiency is weakened. Park the vehicle in a safe place by:

- If the brake pedal is pressed, when the braking effect is weakened, press the brake pedal with greater force.
- If the braking effect is weakened, reduce the transmission gear, reduce the vehicle speed by engine braking, and then slowly pull up the parking brake handle and press the brake pedal at the same time.

Parking Brake System



When using the parking brake, pull the parking brake handle upward as hard as possible.

To release the parking brake, pull the brake handle slightly upward, press the button at the end of the brake handle, and then completely lower the brake handle.

Attention

- **When leaving the vehicle, the parking brake handle must be pulled up.**
- **Make sure that the parking brake handle is fully relaxed before starting, otherwise brake damage or other accidents will occur.**
- **The brake Warning indicator light is displayed on the combination instrument when parking. If the parking brake handle is not fully relaxed, the Warning indicator light will not go out on the combination instrument.**

ABS (anti-lock braking system)

The anti-lock braking system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking when the vehicle is braking, which will ensure the vehicle's maneuverability and directional stability when braking.

The purpose of ABS is to improve the active safety during driving. ABS will automatically adjust the brake pressure of each wheel. Before the wheel is about to lock up, the braking pressure will automatically decrease, and then raise the braking pressure until the wheel is about to lock up. The braking system's electronics get a signal from the wheel speed sensor, which accurately contains the time the wheel rolls. This information is processed continuously in order to adjust the brake pressure as accurately as possible. The braking pressure can be adjusted up to 12 times per second, but the ABS cannot be expected to shorten the braking distance in all cases. For example, on gravel roads or smooth roads that have just snowed, even if you drive carefully and slowly, the braking distance may still belong.

Working Mode of ABS Anti-lock Braking System

ABS cannot shorten the braking distance on gravel and snow-covered roads, however, it can still allow the driver to control the vehicle steering because the wheels will not be completely locked.

When the ABS system works, you can feel the brake pedal shaking and hear the clicking sound at the same time, which is a normal phenomenon. If the speed range of a wheel is too low relative to the vehicle speed and tends to lock up, the ABS will reduce the brake pressure on the wheel. This adjustment process can be detected by the noise of the brake pedal. From this, as a driver, you know that the wheels are tending to lock (ABS adjustment range). At this time, keep the brake pedal completely depressed and control the vehicle out of danger.

Never release the brake pedal before the vehicle stops or the danger is over! It is also not allowed to repeatedly press the brake pedal, which will stop the work of ABS and may increase the braking distance.

If the road is slippery, ABS will be enabled even if the brake pedal is lightly pressed, so that the driver can obtain the road characteristic information through braking, and then adjust his driving style.

Warning

Any ABS braking system shall not violate the physical principle. Therefore, please develop good driving habits and do not use the advantages of ABS system to drive fast.

To achieve the shortest braking distance possible and to improve trajectory stability on wet and dry roads, brake as hard as possible and perform emergency avoidance operations as necessary.

ABS system Warning light

ABS integrates a monitoring system to check whether all system related electrical components are working properly in real time.

When the ABS system fails, the ABS Warning light is on. During vehicle self-inspection, when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, the light will be on for 2 ~ 3 seconds and then go out. Make sure that the light is off before the vehicle is driven.

When the ABS system Warning light is on while driving, do not brake hard at this time, otherwise the vehicle may be in danger of unstable driving. Always depress the brake pedal gently and park the vehicle in a safe place. Restart the engine and check if the Warning light goes out after a few minutes of driving. If the Warning light goes out while driving, there is no problem.

If the Warning light does not go off, or if the Warning light comes on again while driving. Please contact the special dealer of BAIC for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

 Warning

After the ABS system fails, the normal braking system will work normally and will not be affected by the partial loss of ABS function, but the braking distance will be correspondingly longer.

ABS system routine maintenance

ABS is composed of mechanical-electrical integration components, which have high working reliability and usually do not need regular maintenance. Pay attention to the following points to help improve the performance of the system and further reduce the failure rate of the system:

- ECU of ABS is composed of precise electronic parts, and electronic parts are easily damaged by strong collision and knocking. Therefore, ECU should be avoided from collision as much as possible.
- Do not let oil contaminate the electrical connectors of ABS system, especially metal terminals, so as to avoid poor electrical contact.
- Do not contaminate the wheel sensor with oil or other sundries, especially near the gear ring position.

- Excessive water content of brake fluid will not only cause poor braking due to vaporization of water, but also corrode the brake system and lead to degradation of ABS performance. Therefore, brake fluid should be replaced regularly, generally at least once every two years.

When the ABS Warning light has the following conditions:

1. Continue to light up
2. Light up for a long time while driving
3. When the start / stop key is turned from "off" to "run", the ABS Warning light on the combination instrument will not be on.

The above situation must be checked and repaired in time. Before using the braking system before troubleshooting, you must pay attention to controlling the braking intensity to avoid wheel locking.

EBD electronic brake force distribution system

Automatically adjusts the distribution proportion of braking force between front and rear axles to improve braking efficiency, shorten braking distance to a certain extent, and cooperate with ABS to improve braking stability.

EBD system is integrated with a monitoring system. When the EBD system fails, the EBD fault light will light up. After the start/stop button is turned on, the EBD system will carry out self-inspection, and the EBD lamp fault lamp will light up for 2 ~ 3 seconds and then go out; If the EBD fault light does not go out or goes out after self-inspection but lights up again during the driving process of the vehicle, it indicates that the EBD system is faulty. At this time, the vehicle can still be braked by conventional braking methods, and the EBD system does not work. Please contact the special dealer of BAIC for maintenance as soon as possible..

ESP (Electronic stability program) *

The electronic stability program (ESP) can effectively reduce the risk of the vehicle sliding sideways.

ESP only works when the engine is running. In special cases, the ESP function should be deactivated, for example:


- When the vehicle is driven with snow chains.
- When driving on deep snowy or spongy road surfaces.
- When the vehicle is stuck somewhere (e.g. on a muddy road) and needs to move back and forth.

If there is no such situation, turn on the ESP.

The use of ESP can improve the control of the vehicle in the dynamic driving limit state. For example, during acceleration and curve driving, It can reduce the risk of vehicle side slip under all road conditions, thereby improving the driving stability of the vehicle.

Also integrated in the electronic stability program are Anti-lock Brake System (ABS), Electronic Brakeforce Distribution (EBD) and Traction Control System (TCS), Hill Assist (HHC), Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA), Hill Decent Control (HDC), Roll Movement Intervention (RMI).

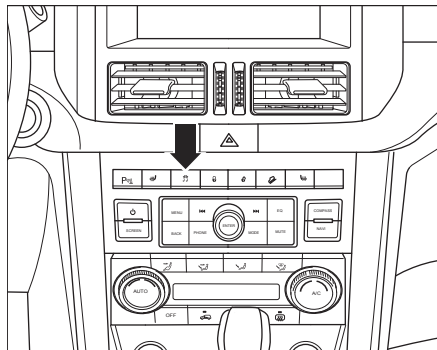
ESP indicator light

When the start/stop button is in the "RUN" position, the ESP indicator light in the combination instrument  will light up, and the ESP self-check will begin, and the indicator light will turn off after the self-check is completed.

During driving, if the ESP indicator light flashes, it means that the ESP is currently working.


If the ESP indicator light does not go out after the self-test or remains on during driving, it indicates that the ESP is faulty. The vehicle should drive at a low speed to the nearest authorized dealer of BAIC for inspection and repair.

ESP OFF function






When the transfer case is 2H: in the default state, the ESP function is turned on.




Press the ESP off button to turn off the ESP function. At this time, the ESP indicator on the combination instrument will light up.

Press the ESP off button again to start the ESP function. At this time, the ESP indicator light "" on the combination instrument will go out.

Attention

- When the transfer case is in 4H/4L, short press the ESP off button for < 3s, only the ESP
- and TCS torque control functions can be turned off, and other functions are reserved.
- When the transfer case is in 4H/4L, long press the ESP off button (3s-10s), only the ESP and TCS functions can be turned off, and other functions are reserved.
- When the transfer case is at 2H, press the ESP off button for < 10s, only the ESP
- and TCS functions can be turned off, and other functions are reserved.
- Press the ESP off button for more than 10s, this operation is invalid.
- When the ESP function is turned off by pressing the ESP off button, when the driving speed is higher than 80km/h, the ESP function will be restored automatically, and the ESP OFF indicator light will be off.

When the transfer case is at 4H: the ESP OFF indicator lights  up by itself, indicating that the ESP is in a partial functional state in this state, including: ABS function, EBD function, TCS function, hill assist function, hydraulic brake assist, and hill decent control . When the ESP is working, the ESP OFF indicator light  goes off and the ESP indicator light  flashes.

When the transfer case is at 4L: the ESP OFF indicator light  lights up by itself, indicating that the ESP is in a partial functional state in this state, including: ABS function, EBD function, TCS function, hill assist function, hydraulic brake assist, and hill decent control . When the ESP is working, the ESP OFF indicator light  goes off and the ESP indicator light  flashes.

Warning

ESP has certain limitations in controlling the driving stability of the vehicle and the driving mode should be adjusted according to the road conditions and traffic conditions at any time even if the vehicle is equipped with ESP. This is especially important for driving on smooth and wet roads. Do not drive at risk just because this system improves the safety of the Driving safety;; otherwise there will be a risk of accidents!

TCS traction control system *

The TCS traction control system prevents the drive wheels from slipping during acceleration.

The TCS traction control system is part of the electronic stability program (ESP). Under extremely adverse road conditions, only the TCS traction control system can make starting, accelerating and climbing possible or easier.

Operation mode of TCS traction control system:

The TCS traction control system functions automatically, i.e. without driver intervention. It monitors the rotation speed of the driving wheel with the help of ABS sensors. If the wheels slip, the engine torque is automatically reduced to match the driving force with the road conditions, which can be achieved in all speed ranges.

The TCS traction control system works in conjunction with the ABS brake anti-lock system. When ABS fails, TCS also loses its function.

HBA brake assist*

The brake assist system is used to optimize the braking force. The brake assist system helps to increase the braking force and thus shorten the braking distance. When the driver presses the brake pedal very quickly, the brake assist system will automatically adjust the braking force to the maximum until ABS carries out control intervention. The brake pedal must be depressed until the required braking is completed. Once the brake pedal is released, the brake assist system switches off automatically.

In case of ABS failure, the brake assist system is also unavailable.

HHC Hill-start hold control *

When the slope is greater than 4 degrees, Whether you stop when going uphill and then move forward, Or reverse after stopping when going downhill, the ramp starting auxiliary system automatically comes into work at any time and releases the brake. The braking system will still provide powerful braking force in about 0.5 ~ 2 seconds, ensuring the braking of the vehicle, preventing the vehicle from sliding on the slope, making the driving smooth, and no longer having the trouble of sliding backward, and greatly improving the comfort and control safety.

HDC Hill Descent Control*

HDC hill descent control allows the vehicle to maintain a constant speed when going downhill.

The hill descent function is an additional function of the ESP. It can be used when the driver wants to maintain a constant speed (when the transfer case is 2H/4H, the range is 8km/h ~ 35km/h; when the transfer case is 4L, the range is 4km/h ~ 35km/h) downhill.

Operation mode of hill descent function:

1. Press the HDC switch to start the hill descent function. At this time, the instrument green HDC light is on, indicating that the HDC function is on and in standby state; Press the HDC switch again to turn off the HDC function;
2. When the HDC function is turned on and the vehicle is on a downhill slope, the driver does not perform braking and acceleration operations, and when the transfer case is at 2H/4H, the vehicle speed ranges from 8km/h to 35km/h; When the transfer case is at 4L, the range is from 4km/h to 35km/h; The hill descent function starts to work, and the vehicle can drive at the initial speed; At this time, the green HDC light of the instrument will be flashing;
3. When the driver makes the vehicle speed over 35km/h through the accelerator pedal, the HDC function will stop working and be in a standby state; when the vehicle speed continues to increase over 60km/h, the HDC function will be completely withdrawn, and the HDC light of the instrument will be off, and the HDC function will be in a closed state. .

RMI Roll Movement Intervention*

When the vehicle starts after the body roll or the wheel height from the ground exceeds a certain limit, or the driver's driving direction exceeds a certain limit, which may cause the vehicle to roll over, the RMI Roll Movement Intervention will reduce the risk of rollover by braking the wheels and reducing the engine torque.

Driving skills

Wading driving

Although your vehicle has the function of wading, there are still some precautions to consider before this:

Attention

When driving in water, the speed of the vehicle should not exceed 8 km/h. As a precaution, be sure to probe the water depth before driving the vehicle into the water, and check all fluids after passing through the water area. Damage that may result from driving the vehicle in water is not covered by the new vehicle warranty.

Take extra care when driving in water to ensure safety and prevent damage to your vehicle. If the vehicle must be driven in water, be sure to determine the water depth and submerged road conditions (and location of obstacles) before entering the water. Be careful when driving in deep water and maintain a steady control speed below 8 km/h to reduce the effects of water waves.

When a vehicle is driving in water, in addition to keeping a low speed, it should try not to stop, shift gears, recover the throttle

or accelerate. It should pass at a constant speed with medium and high throttle in low gear, instead of passing quickly and splashing big waves or water.

After the vehicle leaves the accumulated water road surface, it should drive at low speed and lightly step on the brake pedal several times to dry the moisture in the brake pads.

If the car stalls in the water, do not start the engine immediately. Instead, shift the gear of the car to neutral as soon as possible and drag it to a safe place with less water.

Driving on muddy road

After the vehicle runs on the mud road, the mud attached to the chassis shall be cleaned in time. Special attention should be paid to the vent plugs of the front and rear axles. If the mud is not cleaned in time, the vent plug cover will be pasted after it is dried, resulting in the failure of the vent plug to open normally for pressure relief, and eventually resulting in the leakage of the drive axle.

Running water

If the water is flowing and the water level is rising (such as during a storm), you should avoid crossing and wait for the water level to recede and/or the flow rate to decrease

before driving. If you have to drive through the water flow area, but you cannot drive in the water more than 20 cm deep. Running water will erode the riverbed and may cause vehicles to sink deeper into the water. Please determine the drive-in water position and drive-out water position in advance.

Still water

Do not driving in still water more than 50 cm deep, and reduce the speed appropriately to reduce the influence of water waves. Driving in water below 50 cm deep, the maximum speed is not higher than 8 km/h.

Maintenance

After driving your vehicle out of deep water, check your vehicle fluids and lubricants (engine oil, transmission fluid, axles, transfer case) to make sure the fluids are not contaminated. Contaminated fluid (creamy, foamy appearance) should be flushed/replaced as soon as possible to prevent damage to parts.

Warning

Water entering the engine is a very serious problem. If you try to start the engine again at this time, the engine will be damaged.

After the vehicle is wading in water, the moisture in the brake pads should be removed in time, otherwise it may cause serious danger or accident due to loss of braking.

Essentials of driving in winter

The engine shall be fully preheated. After starting the engine, warm it up for a period of time to lubricate each cylinder with engine oil, and then drive the vehicle slowly. Drive at low speed at the beginning, so that the lubricating oil of transmission, transfer case and rear axle has enough time to lubricate all lubricating parts.

Check battery and cable condition

Check the battery, including connectors and wires. In particularly cold weather, the battery will be affected. Because more energy is required to start the vehicle and drive, the capacity of the battery will decrease. Before driving the vehicle, check whether the engine speed is normal. Check that the headlights are as bright as usual. Charge the battery or replace the battery if necessary. When the weather is particularly cold, the battery with very low capacity may freeze and the vehicle cannot be started normally.

Make sure the oil viscosity is suitable for driving in cold weather

In winter, if a large amount of summer oil remains in the engine, it may cause the vehicle to be difficult to start. If you are not sure which oil to use, please contact the nearest authorized dealer of BAIC for assistance.

Check the engine coolant

Coolant approved by our company must be used.

If the engine coolant is found to be insufficient, please replenish the coolant in time.

Avoid freezing the door lock

Spray some deicing agent or glycerin into the door lock hole to prevent freezing.

Use Windshield Washer Fluid with Antifreeze

This product is sold at the authorized dealer of BAIC

Don't accumulate snow and ice under the fender

Ice and snow accumulate under the fender, which will make steering difficult. When driving in cold weather, stop frequently to check whether there is snow and ice under the fender.

According to different driving destinations, BAIC suggests to carry some necessary emergency supplies.

Items that may need to be placed on the vehicle include: Tire snow chains, window scrapers, sandbags or salt bags, signal flash devices, small shovels, jumper cables, etc.

Efficient use of vehicles

- Maintain correct tire pressure. Insufficient air pressure can cause tire wear and adversely affect fuel economy.
- • wheel alignment can cause the tires wear out faster, increase the engine load and waste fuel.
- Avoid loading unnecessary weight in your vehicle. Excessive load will increase the engine load, resulting in a large amount of fuel consumption.
- Slowly accelerate speed, and avoid sudden start. Shift to a higher gear as soon as possible.
- Try to avoid traffic jam to prevent continuous acceleration and deceleration as well as stop-go which cause fuel Economical efficiency waste.
- Avoid unnecessary parking and braking and keep a stable vehicle speed. When driving with traffic lights, you can minimize the number of stops or drive on the main road without traffic lights. Keep a proper distance from other vehicles to avoid sudden braking. This will also reduce brake wear.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal. This will cause excessive wear, overheating and fuel waste.
- Avoid hitting curbs while driving. Slow down when driving on rugged roads.
- Don't let the chassis stick mud. This can reduce self-weight of the car and prevent corrosion.
- Adjust the vehicle to keep it in the best working condition. Dirty air filter, improper valve clearance, dirty spark plugs, dirty oil and grease, etc., will reduce engine performance and waste fuel. To extend the service life of all components and reduce operating costs, be sure to perform scheduled maintenance. Maintain your vehicle more frequently if you often drive under a severe condition.
-

Fuel economy

Fuel economy is related to many factors. Personal driving habits will have an important impact on fuel consumption. The recommendations listed below help to achieve optimum fuel economy:

- After cold start, you can drive away slowly for several minutes. Do not accelerate until the engine warms up.
- Unload the unnecessary cargoes before driving.
- Keep the tire pressure properly.
- Try to drive on good roads.
- Avoid rapid acceleration. Press the accelerator pedal gently. Do not press the accelerator pedal hard when starting or press the brake pedal hard to stop.
- Do not drive at high speed with the windows open.
- Use the air-conditioning, audio system and other properly.
- Close all doors unnecessary to open.
- If you need to park your vehicle for an extended period of time, shut off the engine and prevent the engine from idling for a prolonged time.
- Drive on level road surfaces at economic speed.
- Always drive in an appropriate gear based on the running speed. Do not drive in a low gear at high speed.
- Be sure to maintain your vehicle as per the scheduled maintenance.
- When the vehicle starts again after it stops at the signal light or stop sign, it shall accelerate slowly and evenly.
- Plan your route to avoid unnecessary stops.
- Keep the tire pressure at the recommended pressure.
- Keep the air filter clean.
- Keep the vehicle state adjusted. Improper engine adjustment will waste fuel and increase costs.

4. Maintenance

Safety maintenance.....	222
Fuel system	225
Interior maintenance	226
Exterior maintenance.....	230
Engine compartment.....	237
Engine oil.....	242
Coolant.....	248
Brake fluid	252
Power steering fluid	255
Battery	257
Windshield washer fluid and wiper blades	261
Tire.....	264

Safety maintenance

The service items not mentioned in this chapter shall be completed by approved or other qualified technicians.

Important Safety Precautions

To eliminate potential hazards, read the instructions before you begin, and make sure you have the tools and skills required.

- Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the engine is off, and the parking brake is set.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degrease or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- Keep ignited cigarettes, sparks and open flames away from batteries and all related components of the fuel system.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.

Warning

Incorrect vehicle maintenance or unresolved driving failures may cause traffic accidents, resulting in serious injury or death.

Potential Vehicle Hazards

- Carbon Monoxide: Carbon Monoxide from engine exhaust is poisonous. Be sure there is adequate ventilation whenever you operate the engine.
- Burns from hot parts: The engine, cooling system and exhaust system are very hot during operation, and this can cause scalding easily. Therefore, stop the vehicle for at least 30 minutes to let the engine, cooling system and exhaust system cool down before touching any parts.

Attention

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

Regular Maintenance

The safety, reliability and good performance of a vehicle depend on how you maintain it.

Because maintenance is the owner's responsibility, you must carry out routine maintenance, oil change, routine inspection and brake fluid and coolant change according to BAIC recommendations.

Maintenance record

The "Quality Guarantee" contains a maintenance record page, which can be used to record the oil change and inspection information of the vehicle. Beijing auto dealerships will also use maintenance record pages to record information such as changing brake fluid, replacing airbag modules and seat belt tightening devices.

After each oil change and inspection, you must have the signature and stamp of the authorized dealer of BAIC on the maintenance record page.

Replace the brake fluid

Brake fluid should be changed every 2 years, regardless of the mileage of the vehicle. BAIC authorized dealer will change the brake fluid at the same time as the oil change or inspection when the 2 years expire, so as to avoid you having to visit the authorized dealer of BAIC one more time for this.

Replace the coolant

Engine coolant should be changed at least every 2 years, regardless of the mileage the vehicle has driven. BAIC authorized dealer will change the coolant at the same time as the oil change or inspection when the 2 years expire, so as to avoid you having to visit the authorized dealer of BAIC one more time for this.

Exhaust Emission Control

Your vehicle is equipped with exhaust emission and evaporation devices that comply with national and legal regulations. You should know that it is illegal for the owner or motor vehicle maintenance personnel to replace, modify and adjust these devices without authorization, and they are responsible for all consequences.

Moreover, you can't make any adjustments to the engine settings. The purpose of these regulations is to ensure that your vehicle complies with strict emission regulations. Incorrect engine settings can have a negative impact on exhaust emissions, engine performance and fuel consumption, as well as high temperatures that can lead to damage to the three-way catalytic converter and the engine.

Maintenance by vehicle owner

1. Check coolant level
2. Check brake fluid level
3. Check power steering fluid level
4. Check the fluid level of windshield cleaner
5. Check tire pressure and status
6. Check the A/C effect

Special operation state

If your vehicle is often driven in a dusty environment or in extreme weather with extremely high or low ambient temperature, you should pay extra attention to maintenance. For details, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC .

Safety during vehicle maintenance

After the engine stops running, the cooling fan may turn and continue to run for a period of time. Keep a distance from the fan when working in the engine compartment.

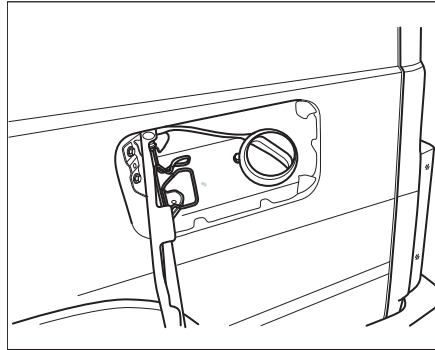
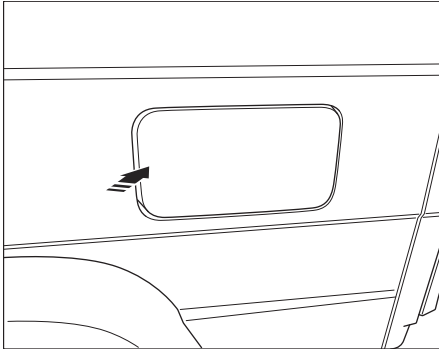
If maintenance of the vehicle is required, the following safety precautions should be observed:

1. Keep your hands, clothes, and drive belts and pulleys at a safe distance.
2. If the vehicle has just been used, do not touch the components of the exhaust and cooling system until the engine has completely cooled down.
3. Do not touch wires or electrical components when the engine is running or the ignition switch is turned on.
4. Do not let the engine run in poorly ventilated places, because the exhaust gas is poisonous and may cause danger.
5. Do not work under a vehicle supported only by a jack for changing wheels.

6. Make sure the sparks stay away from the engine compartment.
7. Wear protective clothing at work and gloves made of impermeable materials if possible.
8. When working in the engine compartment, remove the watch and jewelry.
9. Do not let the tools or metal parts of the vehicle contact the terminal of the battery.

Fuel system

The fuel filler is located behind the left rear side panel. Before opening, you need to unlock all doors lock by the central control or remote control key, and press - arrow - for fuel to open the fuel filler door.



1. Slowly twist the oil filler cap counter-clockwise by hand and slowly remove it
2. Fill fuel When filling fuel, pay attention to the holding mode of the fuel filling gun: do not make the filling gun skew. Insert the filler gun as deep as possible into the fuel tank filler line.

3. When the filling gun stops automatically, continue filling at a lower filling speed. When the refill gun stops for the second time, don't try to continue refilling.
4. Cover the filler cap and slowly twist it clockwise until you hear three "clicks".

Warning

- **As the fuel vapor is very flammable, smoking and sparks or open flames are prohibited in the vehicle refueling area,**
- **While opening up the fuel tank cap, never remove the cap immediately. On a hot day, if the fuel filler cap is suddenly removed, high pressure gas can be ejected from the filler and cause personal injury.**
- **Make sure the fuel filler cap is tightened to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

 Attention

- **Please comply with the above regulations when refueling; For example, after the fuel gun stops automatically for the second time, the fuel tank is "full", so there is no need to continue refueling, otherwise, the expansion space in the fuel tank will be filled-the fuel may overflow when heated.**
- **Wipe off the spilled fuel on the paint surface of the car body immediately.**
- **Try not to run out of fuel on vehicles equipped with catalytic purifiers. Irregular fuel supply will lead to misfire, resulting in unburned fuel entering the exhaust device, which will overheat and damage the catalytic purifier.**

Fuel

In order to ensure performance, it is necessary to use gasoline that conforms to the grade (see the technical data section for details).

Using low-grade or inferior gasoline will shorten the engine life.

 Attention

If the gasoline octane number (RON) selected in emergency is lower than the octane number required by the engine, the engine can only run at medium speed and low load. Large load or high speed of engine at full accelerator will damage engine. Fill in fuel with specific research octane value as much as possible.

Vehicles equipped with catalytic converters can only use unleaded gasoline, once refilling leaded gasoline will damage the catalytic converter.

Interior maintenance

 Attention

- **Never clean the instrument panel and the airbag module surface with solvent-containing detergent.**
- **The detergent containing solvent will penetrate the surface of the cleaned parts, resulting in fine pores on the surface and loosening of the parts. When the airbag inflates, this can significantly increase the chances of damaging such loose plastic parts.**
- **Never treat the leather materials with solvents (such as gasoline, turpentine), floor waxes, shoe polish or the like.**
- **Do not expose your vehicle to intense sunlight for long periods of time to prevent leather or similar items from fading. If your vehicle needs to be parked outdoors for an extended period of time, be sure to cover the leather materials to prevent them being exposed to sunlight.**

 Attention

- **Objects with sharp edges (such as zip-fastener, rivets, etc.) may leave permanent scratches or scratches on the leather surface.**
- **Do not remove the seat belt to clean it.**
- **Do not clean the seat belts with chemical cleaning agents, because the chemical cleaning agents will damage their fabrics.**
- **Seat-belts shall not be in contact with corrosive liquid.**
- **Check the seat belt conditions regularly. If any damage to the fabrics belts, seat belt connections, seat belt retractors and locking parts is detected, go to the authorized dealer of BAIC for repair.**

Cleaning and maintaining the instrument and plastic parts

Clean the surfaces of the instrument and plastic parts with a clean soft cloth and fresh water.

Otherwise, use the special solvent-free plastic cleaning agent.

 Warning

It's forbidden to clean the dashboard and airbag system with the compartment spray and solvent detergent; otherwise, the surface may get loose and the airbag may be triggered, resulting in serious injury to passengers.

Cleaning and maintaining the carpet

Please frequently clean dust on the carpet with the cleaner

Periodically shampoo the carpet with the foam-type cleaner to keep it clean.

 Attention

Follow the instructions that come with the cleaner.

It is strictly forbidden to add foam detergent into water. Make sure that the rug is dry.

Cleaning and maintenance of leather

1. Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather frequently.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with clear water.
3. Dry it with another dry soft cloth.
4. If the above work still can't clean the stains, you can use special leather washing soap or detergent to clean them.

Attention

After you wipe the leather using the special detergent, wipe it down as soon as possible with a soft, dry cloth.

Don't place a soft cloth dampened with detergent in any part of the interior for an extended period so as not to cause the resin or fiber of the interior braid to fade or break.

Cleaning and maintaining the seat belts

1. Pull out seat belt slowly and hold it.
2. Wipe off the stains on seat belts with soft brush and neutral soap water.
3. After seat belts become dry completely, retract the seat belts.

Warning

- **Do not use chemical cleaning agents to clean the seat belts to avoid damage to the seat belt webbing, affecting its function.**
- **When replacing the belt, be sure to use a new belt of the same model and structure.**
- **Prevent foreign matter or liquids from entering the seat belt buckles. Failure to do so can cause the buckles and the belts to function abnormally.**
- **Do not remove or modify seat belt.**
- **Always check the condition of your seat belts regularly. In case of damage to the seat belt base, connecting device, winding mechanism or lock catch, it must be repaired and replaced at the authorized dealer of BAIC as soon as possible.**

 Attention

- **Only after seat belts become dry completely, retract the seat belts; otherwise, the seat belt retractor will be damaged.**
- **You should check the condition of your seat belts regularly to keep them clean and ensure they function properly.**

Exterior maintenance

Attention

- To avoid damage to the braking function, always prevent the brakes from being damped or frozen.
- When you clean the bottom of the vehicle, the lower side of the fenders (wheel covers) and the wheel cover boards, be careful to prevent your hand from being scratched by sharp-edged metals.
- For automatic transmission model I, if the automatic vehicle washing device is used, the transmission must be put into "N" gear in advance, and turn off the ignition switch when washing the vehicle.
- For automatic transmission model II, if the automatic vehicle washing device is used, the transmission must be engaged in "N" gear, and care should be taken not to turn off the engine at this time.
- Do not use coarse sponge or corrosive cleaning products to clean the car body paint, the paint is in danger of damage!

- Do not cluster nozzles to clean tires! Even if the spray distance is large and the spray time is very short, the tires can be damaged.

Attention

- It is recommended to wax the vehicle after it has been driven for 6 months.
- Do not wax the vehicle windows.
- Do not clean the headlight surface with any sharp objects, which may damage the protective paint surface and form cracks in the headlight.
- Pay attention when cleaning wheels: damp, ice, and anti-skid salt scattered on the road will affect the braking effect.
- Do not install protective plates or apply anti-corrosion materials around high-temperature components such as exhaust mufflers, exhaust pipes, and catalytic converters. These substances may catch fire when the vehicle is running.

Vehicle Cleaning

Frequent washing helps preserve your vehicle's beauty.

Wash your vehicle in a shady area, not in direct sunlight. If the vehicle is parked in the sun, move it into the shade and let the exterior cool down before you start.

When cleaning vehicles through the automatic car washer, please follow the instructions of the car washer operator.

 Attention

- **Although the body paint is strong to withstand the flushing from the automatic car washer, pay attention to its impact on the paint. The washer structure, detergent, fresh water filtration, and type of wax solvent which do not meet the specified requirements are likely to cause damage to the paint.**
- **For automatic transmission model I, if the automatic vehicle washing device is used, the transmission must be put into "N" gear in advance, and turn off the ignition switch when washing the vehicle.**
- **For automatic transmission model II, if the automatic vehicle washing device is used, the transmission must be engaged in "N" gear, and care should be taken not to turn off the engine at this time.**

Automatic vehicle washer

The vehicle paint has certain durability. Generally, cleaning the vehicle in the automatic vehicle washing equipment will not affect the vehicle paint condition. Impact on vehicle paint largely depends on the structure of vehicle washing device and the

type of vehicle washing water filter, detergent and maintaining agent, etc. If vehicle paint is not glossy and even has scratches after vehicle washing, point it out to operator of vehicle washing device immediately

For automatic transmission model II, if the automatic vehicle washing device is used, the transmission must be engaged in "N" gear, and care should be taken not to turn off the engine at this time. If you need to move the vehicle with the engine off, be sure to shift the transmission forced unlock to the "N" gear by the emergency unlock mechanism of the transmission "P" gear ("Emergency unlock of transmission "P" gear on page 185). After washing the vehicle, the emergency unlocking mechanism of "P" gear of the transmission should be released, and the transmission should be put into "P" gear before starting the engine.

Manual cleaning of vehicles

1. Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with cool water to remove loose dirt.
2. Prepare a bucket of water and mix the water with special washing detergent.
3. Wash the vehicle, using a soft cloth, sponge or bristle brush. Start at the top and work your way down. Rinse frequently.

4. Finally, rinse the wheels, doorsills and others. When washing, replace the sponge or soft cloth.
5. After you finish scrubbing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with a plenty of water.
6. When you have washed and rinsed the whole exterior, dry it with a soft towel or fur.

 Attention

Check the body for road tar and other stains. Remove these stains with tar remover. Rinse it off immediately so it does not harm the finish. As you dry the vehicle, check it for chips and scratches. If found, it should be repaired at the authorized dealer of BAIC

Use extra care to wash the vehicle with a high-pressure washer. Follow the instructions and requirements which come on with the high-pressure washer. Pay special attention to the working pressure and spray distance, always maintain a distance of at least 30 cm between the vehicle and the nozzle of the pressure washer. Information on the correct distance can be obtained from the equipment manufacturer. When washing your vehicle, keep moving the pressure washer nozzle. Do not direct the

high-pressure washer at the door seam, seam and other parts.

Warning

Water, ice and antiskid salt in the Brake system can cause reaction retardation of the brakes, resulting in a longer braking distance which is likely to lead to accidents.

- **Press the brake pedal gently to test the brakes before driving.**
- **Try to avoid emergency braking before removing the ice or antiskid salt from the brakes. Apply the brake with extra care to avoid traffic accidents.**

4

Warning

- **Be sure to read and follow the relevant information and Warnings before using.**
- **When washing the vehicle, pay attention to personal safety, pay special attention to the bottom of the vehicle and the inside of the wheel cover, so as to prevent hands and arms from being hurt by sharp parts.**
- **When cleaning the vehicle, do not flush water directly into the engine compartment, otherwise the service life of various parts in the engine compartment will be affected.**

Waxing

Regular waxing helps protect your vehicle body's paint and keep the body bright and clean.

Waxing can only be carried out after drying the complete vehicle. You should use a quality paint protective wax.

In order to protect body paint surface, it is suggested to high quality hard wax every year to protect paint surface from being corrosive due to poor environment and withstand light mechanical scratch.

High quality wax type

Body wax: Waxes used to protect paint surfaces from external environmental damage such as sun exposure and air pollution, generally used in new cars.

Polishes: Polishes can restore the shine to paint that has oxidized and lost some of its shine. They are mainly used to restore the shine to paint.

Attention

Do not wax in a dusty environment.

Polishing

Polishing is needed only when vehicle paint becomes dim and more gloss can not be reached by using waxing materials. If the used polishing agent does not contain preservative composition, vehicle must be waxed subsequently.

Attention

Unpolished parts and plastic parts can not be treated with polishing agent or hard wax.

Vehicle paint damages

Slight vehicle paint damages, such as scrapes, scratches or stone bruises should be covered by vehicle paint before rusting.

If vehicle has been rusted already, thoroughly remove rust, Apply anti-corrosion primer and covering paint at the rusted position. These work should be carried out at the authorized dealer of BAIC.

Cleaning and maintaining the external plastic parts

In general, clean the external plastic parts with fresh water, soft cloth and bristle brush. If cleaning is needed further, use the recommended special solvent-free plastic cleaning agent.

Attention

Do not use solvent-containing cleaning materials when cleaning plastic parts, otherwise, it will easily cause damage to the plastic parts.

Maintenance of chromium-plated parts

Chromium-plated parts can be cleaned with a damp cloth, and then polished with a soft dry cloth. If the results are not good enough, use the maintenance agents for chromium.

The stain and dirt layer on the chromium-plated parts can be removed with the maintenance agents for chromium. Regular use of the maintenance agents for chromium can prevent the dirt layer from forming on the surface. When the maintenance agent for chromium is used, apply it onto the whole surface evenly and completely.

Window glass and rear-view mirror cleaning

Clean the window glass and mirrors with alcoholic glass cleaner, and then dry glass surface with a clean, lint-free, soft cloth or leather.

Attention

Do not wipe the window glass and exterior mirrors with leather that has been brushed against the body paint, otherwise the residual wax on the leather will cause the glass surface to become blurred.

If there is residual rubber, grease and silicone on the glass, remove it using the special window cleaner or silicone cleaner.

After the body surface is maintained, remove the residual wax on the glass with the special cleaner and a clean cloth to protect the wipers from being scratched.

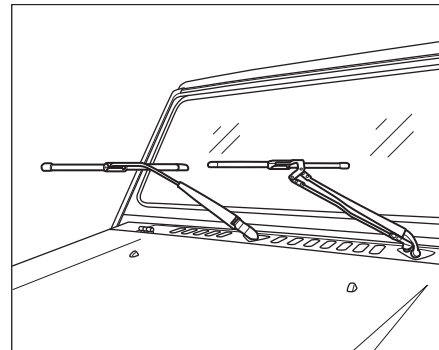
Remove the snows on the windows and mirrors using a bristle brush.

Deicing spray can be used to remove ice and ice removal shovels, but special care must be taken so as not to damage parts and remove ice in the same direction when used.

Attention

- **Do not scratch the window glass and rear-view mirror back and forth.**
- **Do not use warm water or hot water to remove the ice and snow on the window glass and rear-view mirror, otherwise the glass may burst.**

Front windshield wiper blade cleaning



Operation:

1. Lift the wiper arm away from the windshield.
2. Only hold the blade holder during operation.
3. Remove the dust and dirt from the blades with care with a soft cloth.
4. After cleaning, gently put the wiper arm to the original position.

 Attention

- **Replace the damaged blade in time.**
- **A new wiper blade surface is coated with a layer of graphite which can make the wiper blade to move smoothly without scratching noise. If the graphite layer is damaged, the wiping noise will rise, and replace the wiper in time.**
- **In winter or cold weather, check whether the wiper blades are frozen against the windshield before operating them. If so, first deicing treatment, otherwise it will cause damage to the wiper blade and wiper motor.**

Maintaining the sealing strips

Frequent and appropriate protection of the rubber sealing strips for the doors, windows and other parts can maintain their flexibility and prolong their service life. This can also improve the leakproofness, allow the door to be opened easily and reduce the impact sound of closing the doors. At the same time, it is not easy to be frozen in winter.

Maintenance operation:

1. Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the surface of the sealing strip.
2. Apply the special protective agent to the sealing strips regularly.

Cleaning and maintaining the wheels

Regular maintenance of wheels can keep beautiful, and at the same time, anti-skid salt and braking wear debris on wheels should be removed regularly, which can keep the smoothness of wheel surface and prolong its service life.

Regular operation

Every two weeks

Remove the antiskid salt and wear debris from the wheels.

Clean the wheels with acid-free detergent.

Every three months

Apply the high-quality hard wax to the aluminum alloy wheels.

 Warning

- **Be sure to clean the wheels with acid-free detergent.**
- **Do not clean the wheels with the auto polishing agent or other abrasive.**
- **If the protective clear-coat of the wheels is damaged, be sure to repair it in time.**
- **Using the high-pressure washer may cause permanent visible or invisible damage to the wheels, causing casualty.**
- **Never clean the tires with the cluster nozzles. Even a long-distance cleaning for a short period of time may cause damage to the tires, causing traffic accidents.**

Chassis Protection

The bottom of the vehicle has been protected to reduce the degree of chemical and mechanical damage. However, during driving, the protective layer damage is inevitable. It is recommended to check the protective layers of the vehicle bottom and chassis at regular intervals of time, preferably before the winter and in spring. If necessary, repair it. The authorized dealer by the BAIC can provide appropriate maintenance services.

 Warning

- **If the user accidentally holds the bottom of the vehicle during use, please go to the nearby authorized maintenance station by the BAIC for maintenance immediately.**

Description of catalytic exhaust purifier

Because the exhaust gas after combustion will generate high temperature, additional heat shields are installed in the area of exhaust gas catalytic purifier.

Do not use any base plate protective layer on these heat shields, catalytic converters and exhaust pipes, and it is also not allowed to remove the heat shields.

Cavity anticorrosion treatment

All vehicle cavities susceptible to corrosion hazards have been durable protected by BAIC. Anticorrosive treatment requires neither inspection nor follow-up treatment. If hard wax drips from the cavity due to external high temperature, the hard wax can be removed by washing with a plastic scraper and gasoline.

Engine compartment

Safety instructions for engine compartment

When operations such as checking and filling in operating fluid are carried out in engine or engine compartment, scalds or other injuries may occur, and risk of accidents and fires exist.

Therefore, attention must be paid to the following Warning instructions and basic safety regulations.

When filling the working fluid, it must be ensured that the working fluid is not confused, otherwise serious functional failure will be caused.

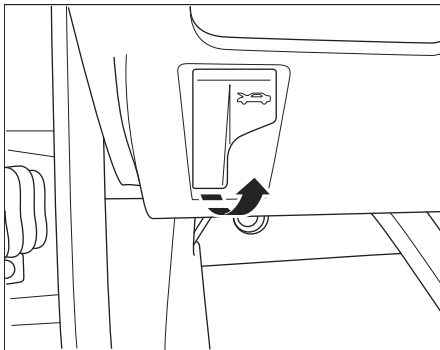
Warning

- Do not open the engine hatch if you see steam or coolant escaping - there is a risk of burns! Do not open the engine hood until no steam or coolant has escaped and the engine has cooled down.
- Do not leak working liquid in high temperature engine or exhaust device, there is a fire hazard!
- Do not touch the cooling fan. The cooling fan is temperature controlled and may be switched on automatically after the vehicle is turned off.
- For safety reasons, the engine compartment hood must be locked during driving. Therefore, it is necessary to check whether the locking device has been locked after closing the engine compartment hood. If it is locked, the engine compartment hood should be flush with the surrounding components of the body.

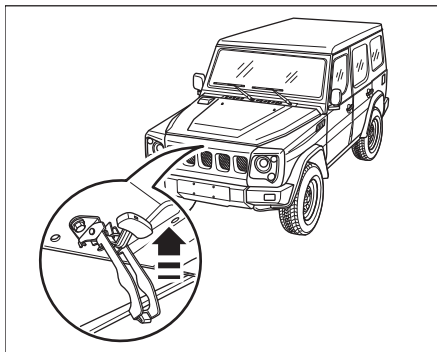
Warning

- To protect your face, hands, and arms from hot steam and coolant, cover the lock cap with a wide, heavy cotton cloth when removing it.
- No items, such as cleaning cloths or tools, should be left in the engine compartment.
- When people operate or repair the vehicle under the vehicle, they should ensure that the vehicle will not move and be firmly supported by jack support frame. Vehicle jacks alone are not enough-there is a danger of injury!

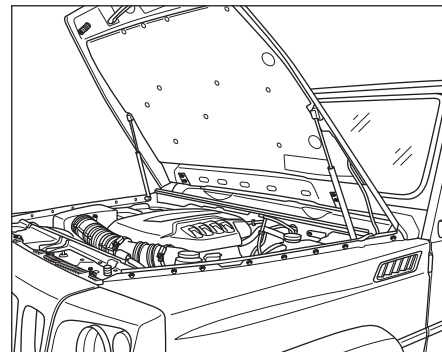
engine compartment hood on and off



Park the vehicle, apply the parking brake, and pull the hood lock release handle from inside the vehicle. At this time, the hood master lock is opened, and the hood will bounce up slightly.



Lift the engine compartment hood gently, press the secondary lock opening handle upward with your fingers, and lift the engine compartment hood upward.



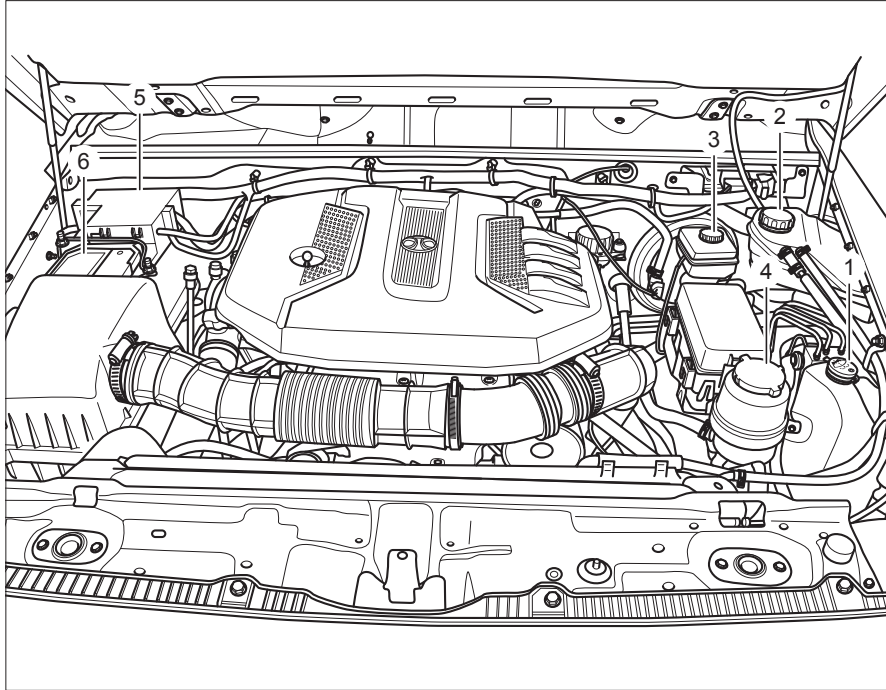
Lift the engine compartment hood. When the position of the engine compartment hood exceeds the balance point, the engine compartment hood can be automatically opened to the maximum opening.

When closing the engine compartment hood, pull the engine compartment hood down and lock it. After the engine compartment hood is closed, inspect whether the buckle is locked firmly.

Warning

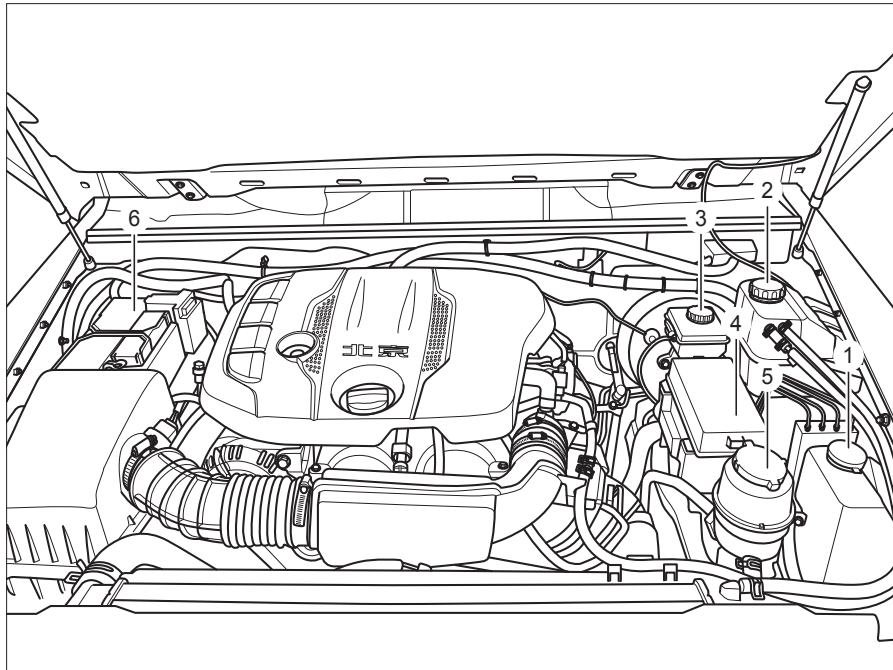
Do not drive the vehicle if the engine compartment hood is not securely closed.

Engine Compartment Layout (B201/B231 Gasoline Engine)



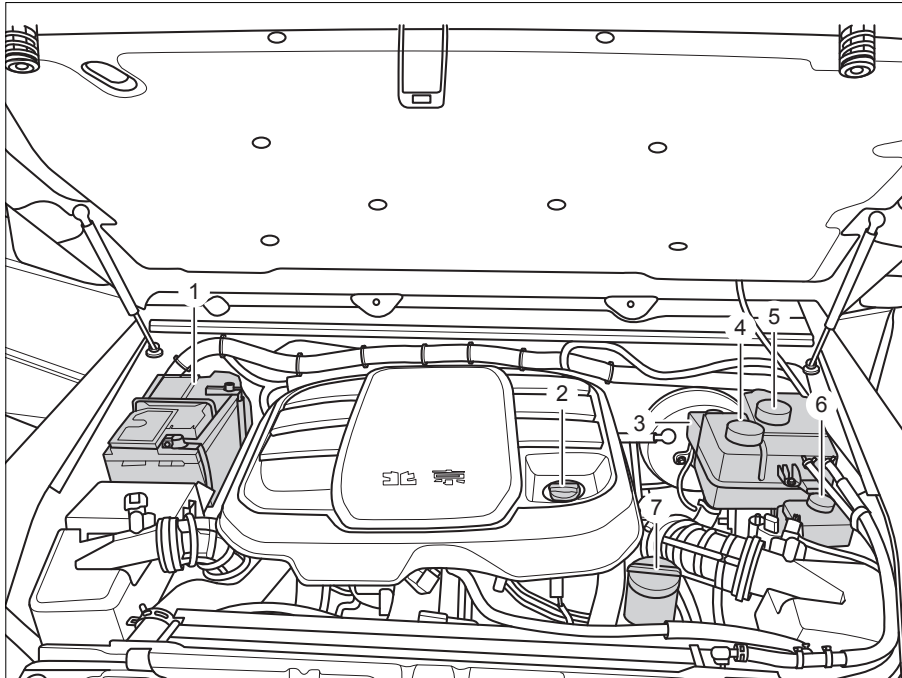
1. Washer fluid reservoir of windshield.
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake and clutch fluid reservoirs
4. Power steering liquid reservoir
5. Fuse box (located under the cover plate)
6. Battery

Engine Compartment Layout (B237R Gasoline Engine)



1. Washer fluid reservoir of windshield.
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake and clutch fluid reservoirs
4. Fuse box (located under the cover plate)
5. Power steering liquid reservoir
6. Battery

Engine Compartment Layout (6G30T Gasoline Engine)




1. Battery
2. Oil Filler
3. Brake and clutch fluid reservoirs
4. Engine coolant reservoir (low pressure)
5. Engine coolant reservoir (high pressure)
6. Washer fluid reservoir of windshield.
7. Power steering liquid reservoir

Engine oil

If it is lower than the lower limit mark of the oil dipstick, stop the vehicle on the flat ground in time. When the engine is cooled, it is the best time to check the oil level. If the engine is running and warmed up, shut down the engine and wait for at least 15 minutes before checking the oil level.

Low oil pressure indicator

The oil pressure Warning light is located in the display of the information center. When the ignition key is in the ON position or the start/stop button is in "RUN" mode (the engine does not start), the vehicle self-checks, the oil pressure Warning light is on, and the Warning light goes off when the engine is started.

If the Warning light  flashes while driving, you must immediately shut down the engine, check the engine oil level, and add engine oil if necessary.

Do not continue to drive or let the engine idle if the low oil pressure indicator still stays on even if the oil level is normal. Contact the authorized dealer of BAIC as soon as possible to overhaul the system.

Warning

Ignoring the low oil pressure indicator and the relevant Warnings can cause serious accidents.

Engine oil level check

If the Warning light in the information center display lights up, check the oil level immediately and add oil as required.

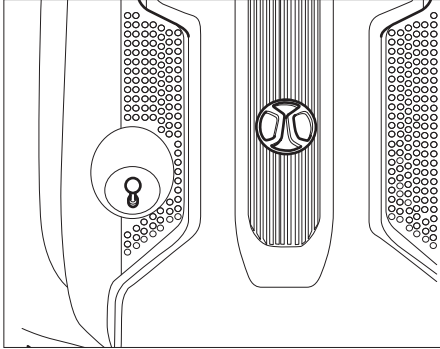
Check the engine oil level with the oil dipstick.

- The oil level near or below the lower mark can cause damage to the engine.
- Overfilling the engine oil may damage the catalytic converter or oxidation catalytic converter.

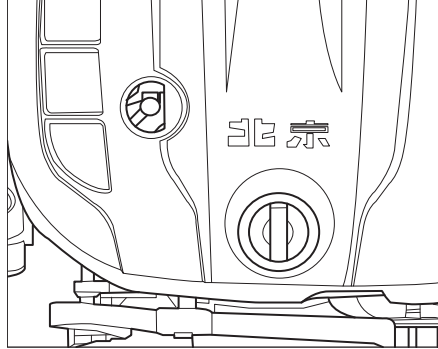
Attention

If inspecting engine oil level when the engine is in hot condition, please first stop the engine and wait for several minutes until the engine oil flows back to fuel pan, and then inspect engine oil level again. When the engine is in cooling condition, immediately inspect oil level.

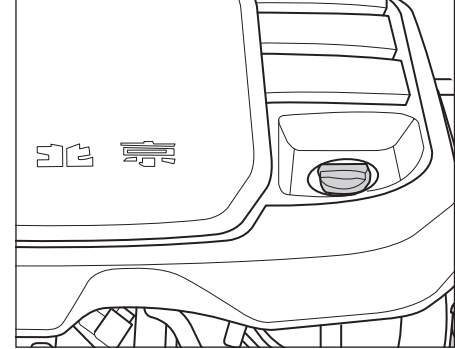
B201R/B231R gasoline models:



B237R gasoline models:



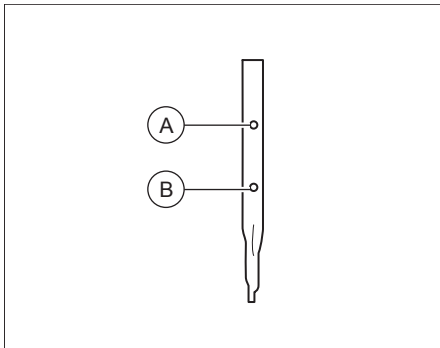
6G30T gasoline models:



Detailed steps are shown below:

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface and open the bonnet.
2. Place a rag under the end of the dipstick, and pull it out.
3. Wipe the oil dipstick off with a clean rag.
4. Insert the oil dipstick again
5. Place a rag under the end of the dipstick, and pull out the dipstick and check the oil level.

6. It is recommended that the number of consecutive inspections should not exceed 3 times. If the oil levels at both ends of the dipstick are not equal, the lower oil level shall prevail.



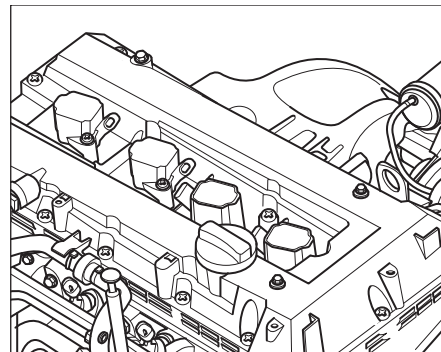
- The position indicated by the arrow - A - in the figure is the oil upper limit mark.
- The position indicated by the arrow - B - in the figure is the oil lower limit mark.
- The oil level shall be located in the shaded area in the figure, i.e. between the upper limit mark - A - and the lower limit mark - B -.

Every engine will consume a certain amount of oil which depends on the driving patterns and driving conditions. Therefore, regularly check the oil level. You'd better check the oil level while refueling and before long drive.

Do not let the oil level exceed the upper mark when the engine running in harsh conditions when the vehicle driving a long distance on a highway in summer, or towing a trailer, or traveling along a mountain road.

Engine oil addition

When adding engine oil, pour in the oil slowly and carefully by several stages.

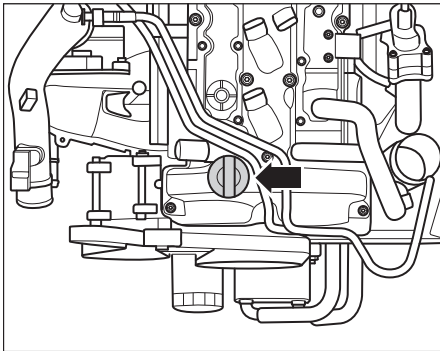


1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Open the engine compartment hood.
3. Turn the engine oil filler cap counter-clockwise as indicated by arrow and open it.
4. To avoid filling above the upper mark, add a little oil each time and recheck the oil level until you bring it to the upper mark.

- Once the oil level reaches the upper mark, please stop adding oil, reinstall and tighten the oil filler cap.

B237R gasoline models:

When adding engine oil, pour in the oil slowly and carefully by several stages.



- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Open the engine compartment hood.
- Press the oil filler cap and open it by turning it counterclockwise.

- To avoid filling above the upper mark, add a little oil each time and recheck the oil level until you bring it to the upper mark.
- Once the oil level reaches the upper mark, please stop adding oil, reinstall and tighten the oil filler cap.

Warning

- Read and follow the relevant Warnings before starting operation.
- Engine oil is a type of highly combustible material. Always add oil with extra care. Pour in the oil slowly and carefully so you do not spill any on the hot engine components or exhaust system.
- Always keep the oil fill cap tightened securely to prevent the oil from spilling when the engine operating, resulting in a fire.
- Only use the oil applicable to your engine.
- If other specifications of oil are used, the engine may be damaged, which may cause accidents

 Attention

If the oil level exceeds the upper mark, do not start the engine, otherwise the catalytic converter and engine may be damaged.

- **B201R/B231R/B237R/6G30T gasoline engine shall be filled with oil conforming to SN grade or higher in API grade.**
- **The premium-grade oil in the engine at the delivery of the vehicle can be used for a whole year except in an extremely cold climate.**
- **Engine oils of different brands can not be mixed.**

Replace of Engine Oil

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals specified in the Maintenance Schedule. Only when the engine oil is maintained and changed according to the regulations can the service life of the engine be guaranteed.

The engine oil will be replaced by the authorized dealer of BAIC.

If you drive your vehicle in severe conditions, or use the fuel of high sulphur content or frequently drive a short distance, or let your engine idle for a long time (e.g., taxi), or drive in dusty areas, or often drive your vehicle to tow a trailer, or drive your vehicle in cold areas, be sure to increase the number of maintenance times for some maintenance items between periodic maintenances, or narrow the maintenance period.

Additives in the engine oil may change the new oil color fade. This is normal. There is no need to change the oil in advance.

 Warning

Unless you have the knowledge and proper equipment, you should have the oil changed by a skilled mechanic.

- **Make sure the engine is cool before operating. Hot oil may seriously scald you.**
- **When unscrewing and removing the oil drain plug, be sure to place your arm horizontally to prevent the oil from flowing along it.**
- **If you get oil on your skin, be sure to rinse it thoroughly.**
- **Drain the used oil into a special container which is large enough.**
- **Do not store the used oil in a food container or other non-original container to avoid confusing, resulting in poisoning.**
- **As engine oil is toxic, before disposal of waste oil, please first put it on safe place to prevent children from touching it.**

 Attention

No lubricant should be added into engine oil; otherwise, it may damage engine. Any fault caused by addition of lubricant isn't included in quality guarantee.

 Tips

- Do not dispose of waste oil by yourself unless you have the professional knowledge and special tools. Therefore, it is suggested that the operation should be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC.
- Improper disposal of engine oil can be harmful to the environment and water source. Do not discard it in a sewer line or dump it on the ground. Otherwise, it will be very expensive to treat the soil polluted by the used oil.

Coolant

Coolant function

The correct use of coolant can prevent corrosion, cavitation and leakage, prevent the radiator from boiling, prevent scale and freeze, etc., make the cooling system always in the best working state, and ensure the normal working temperature of the engine.

Glycol based coolant has been added to the cooling system when the vehicle leaves the factory.

Tips

Coolant conforming to specifications should be used all year round whether antifreeze is needed or not.

It is necessary to improve the antifreeze ability of coolant in the severe cold season. please replace with a coolant suitable for the local minimum temperature.

Warning

- The coolant must be contained in a closed container and must be placed beyond the reach of children.
- Do not store the coolant in a food container or other non-original container to avoid confusing, resulting in poisoning, The discharged waste coolant should also be treated as such.
- In severely cold climates, to ensure the antifreeze ability of coolant, the appropriate coolant should be replaced according to the ambient temperature, otherwise, the coolant may freeze and cause vehicle damage. At the same time, due to the failure of the heating system, the driver and passengers are exposed to the severe cold, which may cause frostbite to others.

Attention

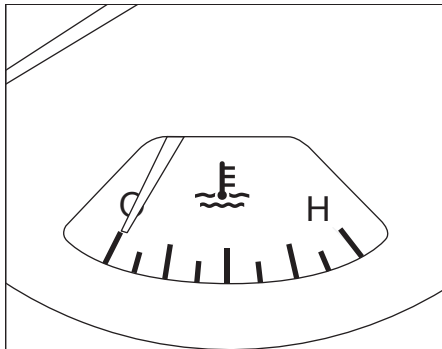
Do not add any other manufacturer's coolant into the coolant.

- The coolant shall not be mixed with any other coolant not approved by the company, otherwise it may seriously damage the engine and cooling system.
- If the coolant in the reserve tank becomes faded and the coolant is not mixed with other coolant of other color, change the coolant regularly as required.

Tips

Waste coolant must be collected and disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

Coolant temperature



The coolant temperature gauge shows the engine coolant temperature when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position or the start/stop button is turned to the "RUN" mode. If the engine coolant temperature is too low, the pointer of the gauge will stop at the "C" (cold) position until the engine warms up; The instrument scale shall be in the middle position under normal driving conditions. When engine runs at heavy load and the ambient temperature is high, the coolant temperature may rise and the scale reading increases. When the coolant temperature is too high, the pointer points to the red area and the engine coolant Warning lamp is on, it indicates that the ve-

hicle has a fault. At this time, stop at a safe place immediately, shut down the engine, and check the coolant level after the coolant cools down.

If the coolant level is normal, the system overheating may be caused by the radiator fan failure. Check whether the radiator fan fuse is blown. Replace the fuse as needed.

If the coolant temperature Warning light lights up again after a short distance driving, you must immediately stop at a safe place, shut down the engine, and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC as soon as possible to overhaul the system.

Warning

Be sure to operate inside the engine compartment with extra care.

- **Read and follow the relevant Warnings before starting operation.**
- **As engine compartment is a dangerous area, before opening engine hood, please carefully read and comply with relevant Warnings and instructions.**
- **If you can see the vapor or coolant escape from the engine compartment, to avoid scalding, do not open the engine hood. Wait until no vapor or coolant escapes from the engine compartment before opening the hood.**

Coolant Level Check and Fill

Whether the coolant level is normal or not is crucial to the proper operation of the engine cooling system.

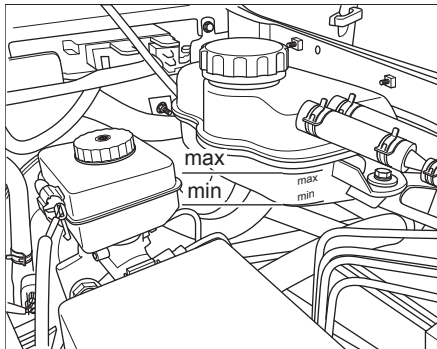
Park the vehicle on level ground before opening the engine hood. Be sure to read and follow the relevant Warnings.

i Tips

Coolant Specifications: Glycol based coolant.

4

Coolant level check

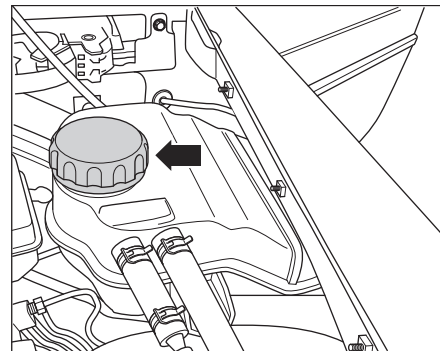


When the engine is cold, it is the best time to check whether the coolant level is within the marked range on the side of the expansion tank.

- "Max" is the coolant upper limit mark.
- "Min" is the coolant lower limit mark of coolant.
- The coolant level should be between the MAX and MIN marks.

If the coolant level is at or below the "min" mark, add coolant.

Opening of the coolant expansion tank cover



The engine must be stopped.

To prevent scalding, wrap the expansion tank - arrow - cover with a large and thick cloth and carefully unscrew it.

i Tips

Open the coolant expansion tank cover when the engine is cold.

Coolant refilling

Only add new coolant!

After filling, the coolant level must be between the lower mark of "Min" and the upper mark of "Max".

Attention

The liquid level must not exceed the mark line on the "max".

Attention

For 3.0T models, the high-pressure cooling system and the low-pressure cooling system need to be filled with coolant separately. When the filling is completed, the high-pressure (140KPa) expansion tank cover and the low-pressure (90KPa) expansion tank cover cannot be wrongly installed.

Coolant expansion tank cover closed

Install and tighten the expansion tank cover.

Tips

When the engine is cold, the coolant level may exceed the MAX mark slightly.

Attention

It is suggested to fill the coolant when the engine is cold, but the coolant level shall not exceed the "MAX" mark, otherwise the excessive coolant will overflow when the engine becomes hot.

If the coolant is needed to be added, only add new coolant. The coolant must be compliant with this manual. If a suitable coolant cannot be purchased for the time being, other types of coolant shall not be added. If necessary, add pure water temporarily, but add coolant as soon as possible as required.

If the coolant loss is large, the cold coolant can be added after the motor is cooled, otherwise the engine may be damaged. If too much coolant is consumed, it indicates that the system has leakage. At this moment, please inspect cooling system at the authorized dealer of BAIC to avoid damage of engine.

Brake fluid

Function of brake fluid

The brake fluid is used to transfer power in the hydraulic brake system.

Warning

Brake fluid is corrosive. Keep the container sealed and out of reach of children. If you find accidental swallowing of brake fluid, please seek medical advice immediately.

The skin or eyes shall not contact with the brake fluid. In case of contact, please wash immediately with plenty of water.

Do not splash the brake fluid on the hot engine, otherwise it may cause a fire.

4

During use, the fluid level in the brake reservoir may drop slightly due to the wear of the brake friction pad. If such a situation is found, the brake fluid level can be used to decide whether to add it or not. If the brake pedal stroke unexpectedly lengthens or the brake fluid level drops obviously, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC for inspection immediately. If the brake fluid level is lower than the minimum mark of the reservoir, do not continue driving the vehicle.

Attention

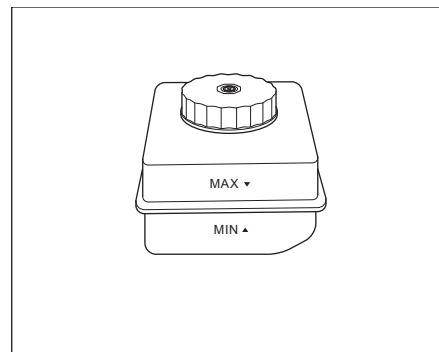
The brake fluid must be completely changed every two years.

Warning

Failure to change the brake fluid within the specified time may lead to failure of the brake system, which may lead to serious accidents and personal injury.

Brake fluid level

Check the brake fluid level regularly as per the Maintenance Schedule.



When the engine is cold, it is the best time to check whether the brake fluid level is within the marked range on the side of the reservoir.

- MAX—UPPER MARK
- MIN—LOWER MARK
- The brake fluid level should be between the MAX and MIN marks.

If the fluid level is at or below the MIN mark, add fluid. Or check whether the brake pads and brake discs of each wheel have been seriously worn.

Read and follow the Warnings before opening the engine hood.

Due to the wear of brake friction plates, the vehicle brake system will automatically adjust the brake pad, so the brake fluid level will drop slightly, which is a normal phenomenon, so there is no need to worry. However, if the brake fluid level drops significantly, this indicates the brake system leaks. In this case, immediately stop your vehicle in a safe place. Do not continue to drive. Contact the authorized dealer of BAIC as soon as possible to thoroughly check the braking system.

 Warning

- **Read and follow the Warnings before opening the engine hood.**
- **If the brake system Warning light does not go out or lights up during driving, it may be that the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is too low. In order to avoid accidents, stop immediately, do not continue driving, and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC for inspection and repair as soon as possible.**

Brake fluid replacement

The brake fluid is absorbent and absorbs moisture from the surrounding air. Excessive moisture content in the brake fluid will corrode the brake system, greatly reduce the boiling point of the brake fluid and reduce the braking effect.

The brake fluid used in this vehicle is specially developed by BAIC for the braking system of this vehicle. To ensure the normal operation of the braking system, it is recommended that the special dealer of BAIC replace the standard brake fluid for you.

 Tips

Brake fluid specification: DOT4.

 Warning

- Incorrect maintenance will cause brake failure and injury accidents.
- Before filling brake fluid, it is necessary to remove oil stains and dust from the fluid reservoir. Contaminated brake fluid may lead to brake failure and serious accidents.
- Only use brake fluid that meets the requirements. Different brands of brake fluid have different additives, and chemical reactions occur between them. Do not mix brake fluids of different brands.
- The fluid reservoir in which the brake fluid is stored must be clean, as any small amount of other fluids or
- After normal maintenance and inspection, the brake fluid level should not drop quickly, otherwise, you should immediately go to the authorized dealer of BAIC for overhaul.

 Warning

Using the used brake fluid or non-genuine one will greatly reduce the braking effect, or even cause the brake system failure!

- Brake fluid packaging containers are marked with brake fluid specifications, and brake fluid meeting the correct specifications must be used.
- The brake fluid is toxic.
- Do not store the brake fluid in a food container or other non-original container to avoid confusing, resulting in poisoning! Store the brake fluid in its original sealed container and store it in a safe place. Keep it clear out of the reach of children! Avoid poisoning.

 Attention

Due to corrosive effect, the brake fluid spilled on the body paint should be timely removed.

 Tips

Be sure to collect and dispose of the used brake fluid in accordance with the environmental regulations.

 Warning

The brake fluid must be changed according to the cycle specified in Maintenance Schedule, because if the brake fluid stays inside the system for a long time, air lock will be produced inside the pipeline of braking system. In this case, it will reduce brake effect and driving safety, and even cause complete failure of braking system and accidents.

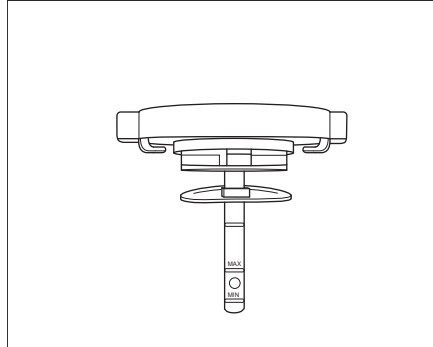
Power steering fluid

Steering fluid is filled into hydraulic steering system and used to pass power and achieve steering assistance.

Warning

- **The power steering fluid is corrosive. Please keep the container sealed and put it away from children. If you find accidental swallowing of power steering fluid, please seek medical advice immediately.**
- **If the power steering fluid comes into contact with skin or eyes, please wash it immediately with plenty of water.**

Steering fluid level check



To prevent dust from entering the reservoir, please wipe the filler cap before inspection, unscrew the filler cap in the figure for liquid level inspection:

- “MAX” means the upper limit of steering fluid level.
- “MIN” means the lower limit of steering fluid level.
- Steering fluid level should be between the upper limit and lower limit.

If the level is lower than "MIN", fill steering fluid.

Power steering fluid Refill

Add the power steering fluid slowly and carefully. Do not exceed the upper limit mark, so as not to affect the power steering effect and avoid the overflow of the power steering fluid.

It is suggested that the power steering fluid should be refilled by the authorized dealer of BAIC.

Tips

The power steering fluid will damage the paint surface. For the parts with power steering fluid, immediately use an absorbent cloth to absorb the splashed fluid and use vehicle cleaning agent mixed with clean water for cleaning.

The steering assist fluid that meets the specifications of ATF III H or Pan-Dongxing hydraulic transmission oil CHF 202 and is approved by BAIC can be used.

 Attention

- **Don't worry, the color of the available commercial steering fluid will vary from the color of the steering fluid that was filled into the system during the manufacturing process.**
- **If you use a steering assist fluid other than specified or mix the two fluids, it will cause seal failure, resulting in failure of the steering assist or damage to parts.**

Emergency operation






If there is frequent loss of power steering fluid, it should be checked by the authorized dealer of BAIC.

In any case, when the steering fluid level is lower than the "Min" mark or rapid and obvious steering fluid leakage is detected, the vehicle shall not be driven. If it is confirmed that the power steering fluid leaks slowly, the power steering fluid can be added to the "Max" marking line to ensure that the vehicle can drive a short distance to the authorized dealer of BAIC.


If the power steering fluid level is lower than the Min mark, fill the steering fluid before starting the engine, otherwise the steering pump will be damaged.

Battery

Alert symbols and descriptions for operation of the battery

	1. Always wear goggles when operating!
	2. The battery electrolyte is corrosive. Be sure to wear protective gloves and goggles when operating!
	3. Make sure the workplace is free of open flames, sparks, un-covered lights and smoke!
	4. The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during charging!
	5. Children shall keep away from electrolyte and the battery!


Unless you know the operational process and have proper equipment, do not do any operations on the vehicle electrical system. If there is no absolute certainty, relevant operations shall be carried out by the authorized dealer of BAIC.

 **Warning**

Hazards of injury, corrosion, accident, and fire when operating on vehicle batteries and electricity!

- Do not let acid or lead particles fall into eyes, skin or clothes.
- The acid in the battery is highly corrosive, so be sure to wear protective gloves and glasses during operation. Battery can not be turned over, or else acid liquor may flow out from exhaust vent. If acid splashes into your eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water, and then go to see a doctor immediately. If the acid splashes on the skin or clothes, it should be neutralized with concentrated soap immediately, and then washed with plenty of water. If you drink acid liquor by mistake, go to see a doctor immediately.

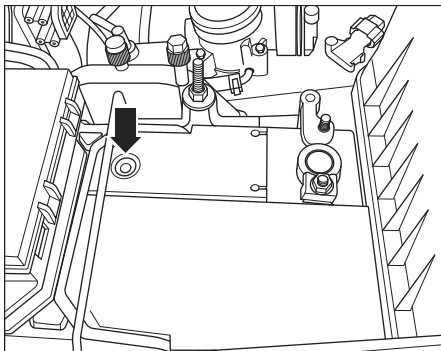
- **Flammable and explosive gas mixture will be produced during battery charging, so the battery should be placed in a well ventilated place during charging.**

 **Warning**

- **Open flame, electric spark, strong light and smoking are prohibited. When cables and electrical equipment are handled and static charges are discharged, avoid the generating electric sparks. Do not short circuit the battery terminal, otherwise, the high-energy spark generated by the short circuit may injure the operator.**
- **When battery is dismantled, dismantle negative cable first and then positive cable.**
- **Keep the children away from acid liquor and battery.**

Inspection of battery power

If you drive your car to a long distance, or use your car or battery on hot area for a long time, please regularly inspect battery capacity.



- The color in the monitoring indicator window is black, indicating that the battery is normal or needs to be charged.
- The color in the monitoring indicator window is white, indicating that the battery needs to be replaced.

Tips

If the color in the monitoring indicator window is colorless, tap the monitoring indicator window with a screwdriver to remove air bubbles. If the color in the monitoring indicator window does not change, the battery must be replaced.

Check the electric quantity of the battery regularly in one of the following service conditions or situations:

- Long mileage vehicles.
- Driving in a hot country or area.
- The battery is too old.
- Driving in cold countries and regions.

Warning

- **Before operation, carefully read and comply with relevant safety Warning and instructions about the operation of battery.**
- **Do not open the battery. Beware of chemical burns and battery explosion.**
- **Damaged or leaked battery isn't allowed to connect. Damaged or leaked battery should be recovered according to law of environment protection.**
- **Make sure the workplace is free of open flames, sparks, un-covered lights and smoke. When operating cables and electrical equipment, attention must be paid to prevent electric sparks and static electricity, and do not short circuit the battery terminal, otherwise, the high-energy electric sparks generated by the short circuit may injure the operator.**

Operation in Winter

There are particularly strict requirements for the use of on-board battery in winter, because the starting power provided by the battery at low temperature is lower than that at normal temperature. Therefore, we suggest that before the beginning of the cold season, it is best to check the on-vehicle battery at the authorized dealer of BAIC, and charge or replace it if necessary.

If the vehicle is parked in an extremely cold environment for several weeks, you should remove the on-vehicle battery and store it in a room with normal temperature to protect the battery from damage.

Battery charging and battery replacement

Do not perform operation on the battery unless you are professional enough.

If you often drive for short distances or store your vehicle for an extended period of time, maintain your battery more frequently.

If the battery is damaged or capacity is insufficient, it may be very difficult to start a car. If this happens, it is recommended to charge or replace the battery at the authorized dealer of BAIC.

Attention

Only electrical equipment that meets the national electromagnetic compatibility specifications and is approved by the authorized dealer of BAIC can be used.

Battery charging

If the battery is used for a long time, it may not be able to maintain the charging efficiency in a new state; If the vehicle is used too frequently or too many short starts, or operates in a cold environment, the battery needs to be regularly charged.

Check the battery condition before charging.

Warning

- **When the battery is connected to the vehicle, do not charge the battery, which may seriously damage the electrical system of the vehicle.**
- **Do not attempt to charge the battery if the battery monitoring indicator is colorless.**
- **If the battery is frozen, do not try to charge the battery.**

During charging, the battery will generate corrosive acid volatile gas and current that will cause serious damage to the electrical system. Therefore, observe the followings during charging:

- Before charging, it is necessary to disconnect the terminal from the vehicle and remove the battery. Charging the battery with connected wires will damage the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Before turning on the charger switch, make sure that the wire of the battery charger is safely connected to the terminal of the battery. Once the charger is turned on, do not move the wire.

- Pay attention to protect your eyes when charging.
- Keep a good ventilation environment around the top of the battery and avoid strong light near the battery
- (the battery will generate flammable hydrogen before and after charging). When the color in the battery monitoring indicator window is green, please stop charging, otherwise it will cause The battery is overcharged.
- After charging is complete, turn off the battery charger before disconnecting the wires from the battery terminals.
- If the ignition is left in the ON mode for a long time after the engine is turned off, or if lighting equipment such as headlights is turned on for a long time, the battery may discharge rapidly, causing the battery to lose power.

 Attention

In cold conditions, batteries take longer to charge. After charging, the battery needs to be left for more than 1 hour before putting on the vehicle again, the purpose is to dissipate flammable gases to minimize the risk of fire and explosion.

Replacement of Battery

Only the same type of battery can be replaced and conform to the original specifications. Other batteries may have different dimensions or different terminal positions, which may lead to battery damage, leakage, or fire.

When replacing the battery, make sure that the battery is installed correctly. Ensure that the battery tray and pressure plate are properly fixed to prevent the battery from moving in accident or emergency braking.

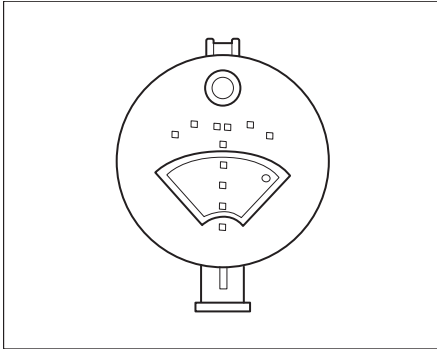
BAIC Motor's original battery can meet the requirements of vehicle maintenance, vehicle performance and safety.

 Attention

Read and follow the safety Warnings related to operating the battery before starting work.

Windshield washer fluid and wiper blades

Windshield washer fluid refill



Both the front and rear windscreen washers are supplied with cleaning fluid from the washer fluid reservoir in the engine compartment. If the liquid level of cleaning fluid is found to be too low, add cleaning fluid to the liquid storage tank in time.

It is difficult to thoroughly clean the front and rear windshields with pure water, and there is freezing phenomenon in a cold environment, so please use windshield washer fluid that complies with BAIC Motor's regulations.

Warning

Be sure to operate inside the engine compartment with extra care.

- **Read and follow the relevant Warnings before starting operation.**
- **Never add coolant or any other additives into the windshield cleaning solution, otherwise stains will be left when cleaning the glass, which will seriously affect the front vision, causing accidents.**

Windshield wiper blade replacement

Attention

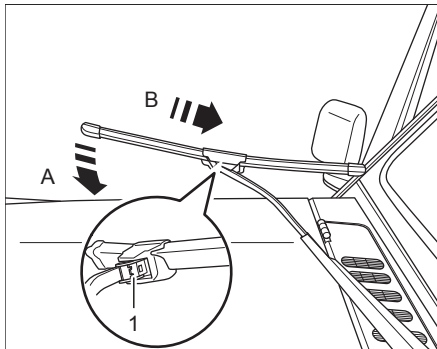
- **The wiper blades must be kept in good condition, which is very necessary to maintain a clear view.**
- **To prevent schlieren, wiper blades should be cleaned regularly with a windshield cleaning solution. If the windshield is very dirty, such as insect residues, the windshield can be wiped with a sponge and cloth.**
- **If the weather is cold, check whether the wiper blades are frozen before opening the windshield washer every time. The windshield washer can be operated only when the front and rear wiper blades are free of interference and obstruction.**

If the wiper blade makes a friction sound, it may be caused by the following reasons:

- When washing the car in the automatic car washing equipment, hard wax residue is consolidated on the windshield. Such hard wax residue can only be cleared away with dedicated detergent. This friction sound can be eliminated by adding windshield cleaner which can dissolve paraffin wax. Ordinary cleaning solution, which can only dissolve grease, cannot remove this deposit.
- If the wiper blade is damaged, it can also cause friction sound, so replace the wiper blade.
- If the positioning angle of the wiper arm is incorrect, please go to the special dealer of BAIC to check and adjust the positioning angle.

The wiper blade must be checked regularly and replaced as required, otherwise the front and rear windshield will be damaged.

Replace the front wiper blade



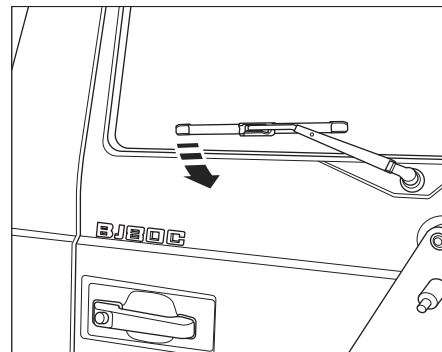
Pull up the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade to the position shown in the figure in the direction of the -Arrow A-.

Press locking knob -1- to unlock the wiper blade, then pull the wiper blade in the direction of -arrow B-.

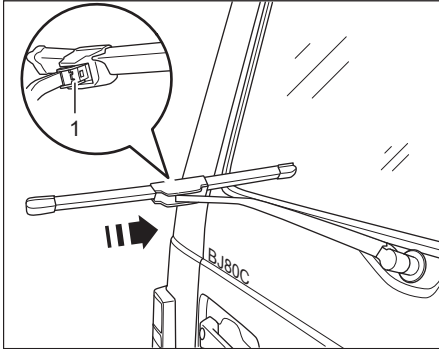
The new wiper blade can be installed in the reverse order of removal.

Replace the wiper blade

Before replacing the rear wiper blade, you need to remove the spare tire. For specific steps, please refer to the section on the removal of the spare tire.



Pull up the rear wiper arm - arrow -.



Press locking knob -1- to unlock the wiper blade, then remove the wiper blade in the direction of -arrow -.

Install a new wiper blade in the reverse order of removing the wiper blade.

⚠ Warning

All window glasses should maintain a good view during driving!

- Clean the wiper blades and all window glasses regularly.
- The wiper blade should be replaced once or twice a year.
- Please try to avoid direct wiping on the windshield by the wiper blade, so as to avoid the aging and wear of the weatherstrip and the fuzzing of the window, which will affect the driving safety.

Tire

Defective tires are very dangerous! Do not drive if the tire is damaged, excessively worn or under improper pressure.

Please pay close attention to the state of the tire when driving, and regularly check whether the tread and sidewall are deformed (bulge), whether there are scratches, abnormal wear, cracks, iron nails, etc.

The most common causes of tire defects:

- Striking or rubbing the shoulder;
- Drive through the deep pit on the road;
- The air pressure is lower or higher.

Attention

Beware of tires being attacked by oil, grease, gasoline and other vehicle fluids.

Tire Storage Conditions

Make a mark on the tire to indicate the direction of rotation before removing the tire. Re-install the tire according to the mark to keep the direction of rotation of the wheel and the dynamic balance state unchanged.

Store the removed wheel and tire in a cool and dry place. You'd better store them in a shaded place without direct sunlight.

Let the tire uninstalled to the wheel sit upright.

Tire pressure

Correct tire pressure can prolong the service life of tires, and at the same time ensure the best coordination of driving comfort, economy, and road handling.

When the tire pressure is too low, it will aggravate tire wear, which will greatly affect the road handling and economy of vehicles, and increase the danger of tire failure. Excessive tire pressure will lead to unstable driving and uneven tire wear, thus reducing the service life of tires.

Check the tire pressure (including the spare tire) at least once a week, and the tires must be at room temperature when checking - as long as you have driven 1.6km, the tires can heat up enough to affect the tire pressure.

The pressure in a hot tire is bound to rise; if the tire pressure must be checked while the tire is hot (after the vehicle has been driven for a while), the pressure should rise by around (20-50) kPa. In this case, do not deflate the tire to bring the tire pressure to the standard.

For cold tire pressure, see "Tire Information" on page 268.

When to check tire pressure

Check tire pressure at least once a week.

tire puncture

Your vehicle is equipped with tubeless tires. If the tires are punctured by sharp objects, the tires may not have obvious air leakage. If you find this happening, slow down immediately and drive carefully, and replace the spare tire or repair it.

This type of puncture will cause the tire pressure to decrease, so it is very important to check the tire pressure regularly. Punctured or damaged tires must be repaired immediately or replaced as soon as possible.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims is often difficult to be found. If abnormal vibration or deviation of vehicles is found during driving, it may be the fault of a tire. In this case, you should go to the special dealer of BAIC for tire inspection as soon as possible.



Warning

Precautions for Off-road Driving

It is important to pay attention to the following precautions to minimize the possibility of personal injury or damage to the vehicle:

- **When driving off-road, you must be very careful and predictable. Excessive speed and wrong driving may cause vehicle damage and personal injury. Do not drive in dangerous areas.**
- **When parking, please make sure that the tire will not be squeezed and deformed by curbs or other obstacles, otherwise it may cause the tire to bulge and even cause a flat tire while driving.**

- **Large wheels: for some tire sizes, the lower the section height, the lower the driving comfort on rough roads, the lower the rolling comfort and suspension comfort of tires, and the higher the risk of damage to wheels and tires when the vehicle passes through obstacles.**
- **If you have to pass curbs, speed bumps or similar convex places (such as uneven roads such as gravel roads and gravel roads with large falls), please try to pass at a low speed, otherwise, the tires (especially the sidewalls of tires) may be damaged.**
- **When driving on cross-country roads or bumpy roads, try to drive at a low speed, and do not jump, make sharp turns, hit objects, etc. Otherwise, tires, wheels and chassis may be seriously damaged, and vehicles may lose control or roll over, causing casualties.**

 **Warning**

You cannot get the adhesion from a new tire during the first 500 km, so, drive your vehicle at a moderate speed with care to avoid accidents.

- The tire which has not been run in or has been damaged provides insufficient adhesion, directly affecting the braking effect.
- Do not continue driving after the tire is damaged, otherwise it is very likely to cause accidents, because the damaged tire may burst during driving, resulting in traffic accidents, injury, even death.
- Tire pressure must comply with specifications; otherwise, it may cause accidents. If the tires are underinflated, continuous high-speed driving will exacerbate tire deflection, resulting in tire overheating which may lead to tire peeling off or burst.

- Do not use any tire which is damaged or worn down to its wear indicators. Be sure to replace it timely.
- Try to avoid using a tire more than six years old. If necessary, be sure to drive at low speed with extra care.
- Do not use any old wheel and tire of dubious background under any circumstances. Such wheel and tire, which can be damaged invisibly, will cause loss of control while driving, resulting in accidents.
- When the vehicle is running, if you feel it vibrates abnormally or pulls to one side, be sure to stop the vehicle in a safe place immediately and check the tires for damage.

Inflating valve

Keep the valve cap firmly tightened to prevent dust from entering the valve. When checking tire pressure, check the valve for air leakage (it is best to use the soap method to see if there are bubbles).

 **Tips**

Add an appropriate amount of household detergent in water and apply it on the valve to observe whether there are bubbles. If there are gas bubbles, it indicates that there is air leakage.

Tire inspection and transposition

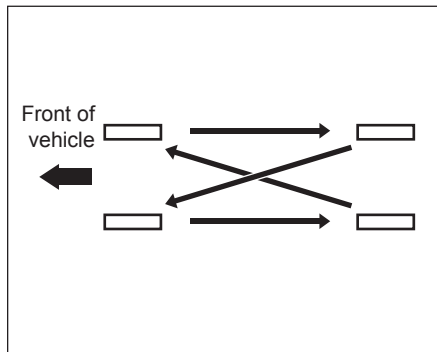
It is recommended that the tires should be rotated every 12000km or more frequently as required.

Rotate tires as soon as possible and check wheel alignment provided that abnormal wear is found. Meanwhile, also check whether tires or wheels are damaged.

In addition, the tightening torque of wheel nuts should be checked regularly, and the corrected torque should reach the specified value. It is recommended to check the tightening torque of each nut when the vehicle travels 1500km, 5000km, and 8000km, and tighten the wheel in strict accordance with the torque requirements every time it is disassembled in the future.

Tips

Regular tire rotation is aimed at making all vehicle tires be evenly worn.



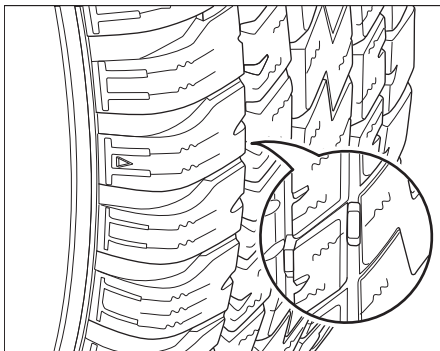
When tires are rotated, make sure to follow correct rotation mode as shown in figure below.

After tires are rotated, adjust inflation pressure of front and rear tires according to tire and load information volume label. Make sure all wheel nuts are correctly tightened.

Warning

Corrosion or dirt on wheels or wheel connectors will make wheel nuts loose after a certain period of time, which will lead to wheel falling off and traffic accidents. Therefore, when replacing the wheel, any rust or dirt at the connection between the wheel and the wheel must be removed. In case of emergency, it can be removed with a cloth or paper towel, but if necessary, it is also necessary to remove all rust or dirt with a scraper or wire brush.

When should a new tire be replaced



There are wear indication marks on original tires, which are located in narrow strips in tread grooves and distributed on the circumference of tires. There are small triangles on the sidewall of the tire to indicate the position of the mark. When the tread pattern wears to the indication mark, the tire should be replaced in time.

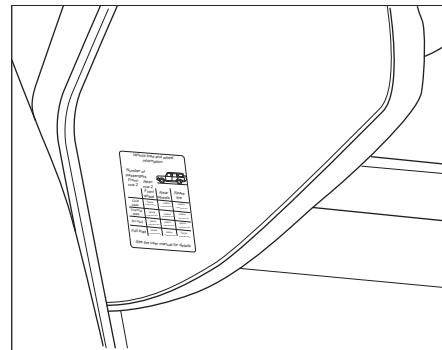
i Tips

If the tire is worn unevenly (only on one side of the tire) or excessively, go to the authorized dealer of BAIC for wheel alignment inspection.

If one of the following conditions occurs, the tire needs to be replaced:

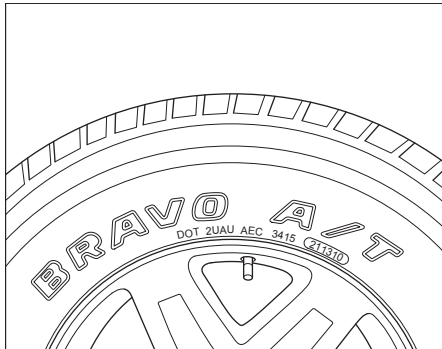
- Tire wear indicator marks have been worn.
- You can directly see the cord or cord fabric in the tire rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, and the crack is deep enough to see the cord fabric or cord.
- The tire is bulged, swelled or layered.
- The tire is punctured, scratched or otherwise damaged, and the size and location of the damage are difficult to repair.

Tire information



A data label on the left side of the dashboard with information about the tires should be inflated according to the tire pressure specified on the data label.

Buy a new tire



Check the tire and tire information labels on your vehicle to find out the tire model and size you need.

Warning

Mixing tires can cause the vehicle to lose control while driving. If you mix tires of different sizes or models (radial tires and Bias belted tires), you will not be able to operate the vehicle normally and cause accidents. Using tires of different sizes may also damage the vehicle. Therefore, all wheels must use the same size and model.

Wheel balance

The tires were properly balanced by the factory. The balance of your tires is dependent on many factors which can cause wheel imbalance and front-wheel shimmy.

You should timely treat and balance the unbalanced tires. Failure to do so can cause the steering system, suspension system and tires to wear out faster.

The dynamic balance of wheels must also be recalibrated after replacing tires.

Dynamic balance standard of wheel: residual unbalance on one side $\leq 10g$.

Incorrect Wheel Alignment

Misalignment of wheel alignment will lead to uneven tire wear, thus reducing driving safety. If uneven tire wear is found, wheel alignment inspection should be carried out at the authorized dealer of BAIC as soon as possible.

Replacement of rim

Rims that are bent, cracked or severely rusted or corroded should be replaced. If the wheel nut is often loose, replace the wheel and wheel nut. If the tire leaks, it should be replaced (except for some repairable aluminum wheels). In case of any of the above situations, repair should be carried out at the authorized dealer of BAIC.

The authorized dealer of BAIC knows which kind of rim should be used. The load capacity, diameter, width, and eccentricity of the new rim should be the same as those of the original wheel, and the installation method should be the same.

If you need to replace the rim, you should only use the original new accessories of BAIC to replace it, to ensure that the rim matches your vehicle.

Warning

It is very dangerous to use improper rims, which will affect the braking and handling performance of the vehicle, causing tire leakage, thus resulting in the vehicle out of control. It may cause an accident and cause injury to you or others.

The use of rims with inconsistent specifications will also cause problems in bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlight aiming, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and the clearance between tires or tire chains and the body and chassis.

It is also dangerous to replace the vehicle with used rims. You can't know how old rims have been used and how many miles they have traveled, and they may suddenly break down and cause accidents. If you need to replace the rim, you must use the new original rim of BAIC.

In the event of a puncture

Tire burst is not common during driving, especially when tires are maintained. If the tire runs out, it is likely to leak slowly. However, in case of tire burst, the phenomena and suggested corresponding measures are as follows:

If one of front wheels has punctured, the drag effect of the flat tire will cause the vehicle to run off to that side. At this time, release the accelerator pedal immediately and hold the steering wheel tightly. Turn the vehicle to stay in the original lane, and lightly press the brake to stop the vehicle in the emergency lane or a safe position.

If the rear wheel has a flat tire, release the accelerator pedal. Turn the steering wheel in the direction you want the vehicle to travel to maintain control of the vehicle. It may be bumpy and noisy, but you can still control the steering, gently press the brake to stop, and park the vehicle in the emergency lane or a safe position.

Snow chain

Do not install anti-skid chains without permission of BAIC, which may cause damage to braking components.

Improper snow chains can damage vehicle tires, rims, suspension, brakes or body.

Only use anti-skid chains recommended by authorized dealer of BAIC and tested by BAIC. When using, please pay attention to the following requirements:

1. The snow chains can only be installed on the drive wheels;
2. Please observe the tensioning instructions for the installation of anti-skid chains and the speed limits for different road conditions;
3. The vehicle speed should not exceed 50km/h.
4. To avoid tire damage and excessive tire chain wear, remove the chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

All season tires - if equipped

All season tires can provide traction throughout the year (spring, summer, autumn and winter). All season tires can be identified by MS on the tire sidewall. All four tires can only use all-season tires, otherwise the safety and handling of the vehicle may be adversely affected.

Summer tires - if equipped

Summer tires can provide traction in wet or dry road conditions, but cannot drive on snow or ice. Summer tires do not have the All-season tire logo or the Yamagata/Snowflake symbol on the sidewall. All four tires should only use summer tires, otherwise the safety and controllability of the vehicle may be affected.

Snow tires

Snow tires can greatly improve the safety and operating stability of the car when driving on icy and snowy roads. It is recommended to replace snow tires when the temperature is lower than -7°C . Snow tires can be identified by the chevron/snowflake symbol on the tire sidewall. If you need snow tires, choose the same size and type as the original tires. All four tires can only use snow tires, otherwise the safety and handling of the vehicle may be adversely

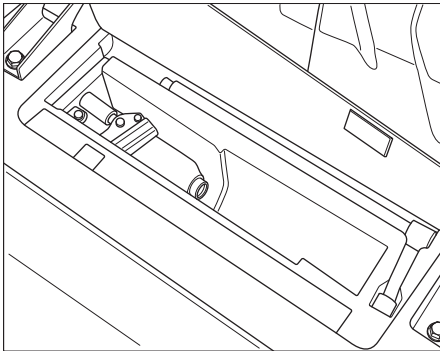
affected.

5. Accident Handling

Emergency triangle	273
Spare tire and in-vehicle tool	274
Fuse replacement	283
Replace the bulbs	295
Emergency start	295
Emergent traction.....	298

Emergency triangle

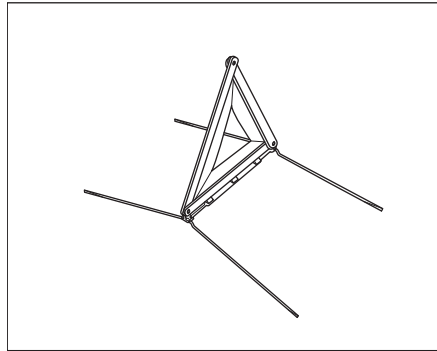
Warning triangle



i Tips

The Warning triangle is located under the rear seat.

If the vehicle breaks down on the road, park the vehicle in the emergency lane or a safe position, turn on the hazard Warning light, take out and unfold the triangle Warning sign, and place it at the specified position so that other vehicles can find the danger as soon as possible and slow down to avoid passing.

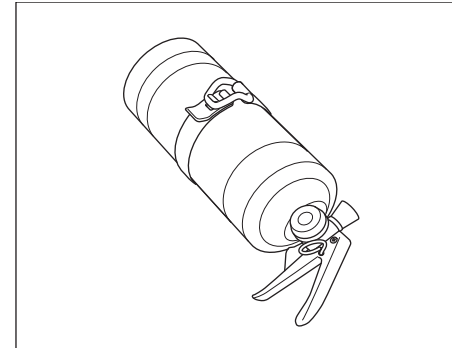


The triangle Warning sign shall be placed at the rear of the driving direction of the vehicle in accordance with relevant national laws and regulations. When setting up triangle Warning signs on ordinary highways during the day, the Warning signs should be set at about 50-100 meters in the direction of incoming vehicles. If on expressways, they should be set at least 150 meters in the direction of incoming vehicles. At night, the distance should be increased according to the actual situation.

👁 Attention

Please use the Warning triangle correctly according to the corresponding national laws and regulations.

Fire extinguisher (self-purchased)*

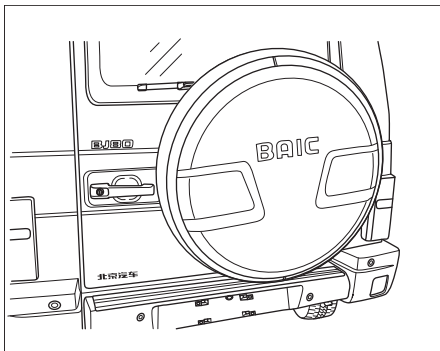


👁 Attention

The fire extinguisher shall be placed under the driver's seat to extinguish the initial fire of the vehicle.

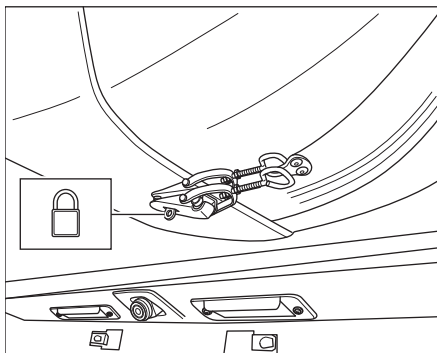
Spare tire and in-vehicle tool

Spare wheel



The spare wheel is located on the spare wheel carrier of the tailgate. Please take it out according to the following steps.

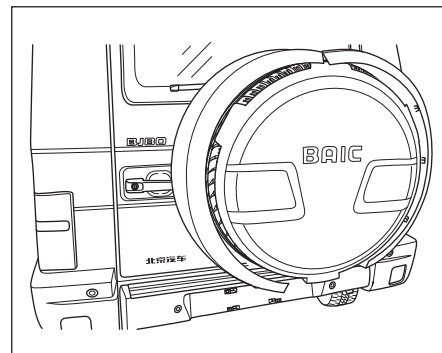
1. Take the wheel nut wrench and jack handle assembly out of the on-board tool.



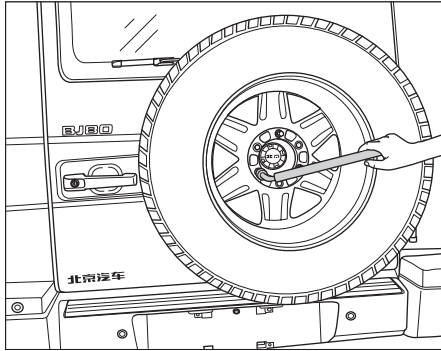
2. Unlock the safety buckle under the spare wheel cover down.

i Tips

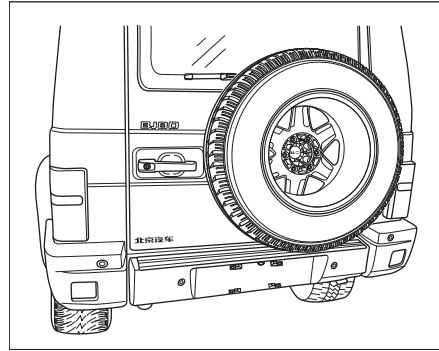
The spare tire cover has a safety buckle. Users can purchase the safety lock and lock the spare tire cover.



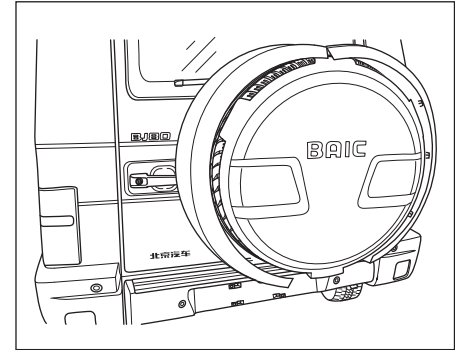
3. Open the spare tire cover as shown in the figure, take it off and place it in a flat and safe place.



4. When removing the spare tire, put the outer connecting rod of the jack handle assembly on the wheel nut wrench, press the outer connecting rod of the jack handle assembly and rotate counterclockwise.

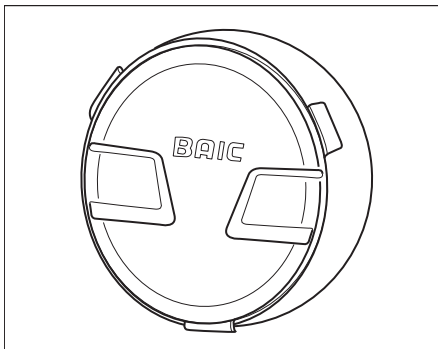


5. Align the center hole of the replaced wheel with the stud of the spare wheel carrier.
6. Pre-tighten the nut by hand, and then tighten it clockwise according to the specified value with the on-vehicle special tool.



7. Install the spare tire cover in reverse order after removal, and pay attention to the correct position.

Spare tire cover wordmark



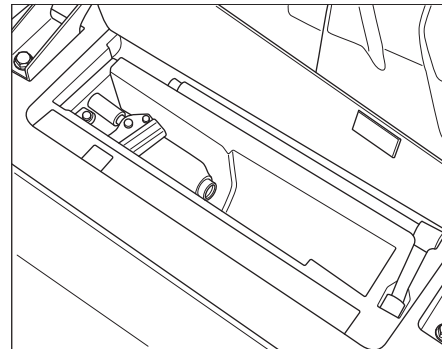
Spare tire cover wordmark -- located on the spare tire cover behind the tailgate.

5

Warning

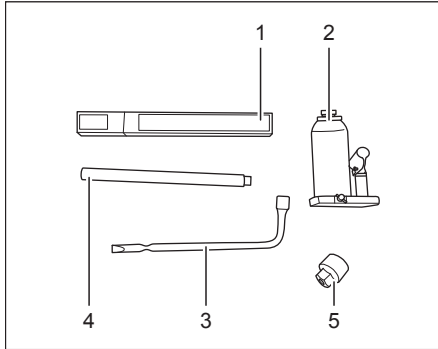
- Do not use the spare wheel which has been damaged or wears down to the wear indicators.
- If your spare wheel is over six years old, only use it in emergency with extra care.
- Check the tire pressure as soon as possible after installing the spare wheels to make it within the specified range.

In-vehicle tool



Tips

The vehicle is equipped with on-vehicle tools located under the rear seats.



In-vehicle tools include:

1. Warning triangles
2. Jack
3. Wheel nut wrench
4. Jack handle
5. Wheel lock key (depending on vehicle equipment)

(The reflective vest is arranged in the on-vehicle tool bag and on the second row of seat carpet)

⚠ Warning

- Using the jack improperly can cause serious injury.
- Only place the jack on solid and level ground.
- Only use your jack to jack up your vehicle. Do not use your jack to jack up other weight or vehicle.
- Do not start the engine when using the jack, otherwise, an accident will occur.
- To lessen the risk of personal injury, do not put any part of your body under the vehicle when the vehicle is on the jack.
- Place the appropriate protective support under the vehicle before getting under the vehicle.

👁 Attention

After using the jack, put it back in place, and pay attention to retract the extended part of the jack, so as to avoid failing to put the jack into the installation box.

⚠ Warning

- The wheel nuts must be tightened correctly according to the specified tightening torque, otherwise, the nuts may loosen when the vehicle is running, which will easily lead to traffic accidents.
- Fasten the wheel nut with the wheel assembly disassembly wrench provided with the vehicle, but the torque value cannot be guaranteed. Control the vehicle speed reasonably during driving to avoid rapid acceleration and emergency braking, and go to a professional place as soon as possible to check and ensure that the wheel fixing nut reaches the tightening torque. T

Replacement of flat tire

The rim size and tire size of the emergency spare wheel of the vehicle are the same as those of the damaged wheel.

When the emergency spare wheel is installed, the handling of the vehicle will change. Please control the vehicle speed reasonably to avoid sudden acceleration and emergency braking.

The spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure monitoring sensor, the instrument will alarm, and it is not recommended to use it for a long time.

Preparations

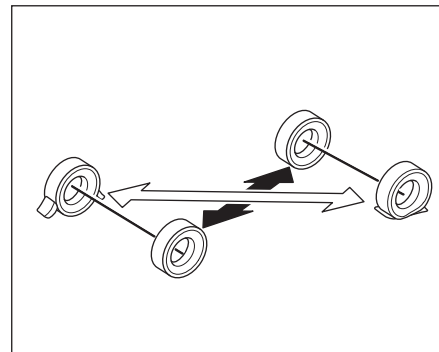
If you find a flat tire, drive slowly to a flat and safe place to avoid further damage to the tire and rim, and place a triangle Warning sign at a proper place behind the vehicle and turn on the hazard Warning light.

Warning

There is a danger when changing wheels. The vehicle may slide off the jack, roll over or press on you or others, causing serious injury or death. Please find a safe flat place to replace the tire. Relevant regulations must be strictly followed. All passengers must leave the vehicle and wait in a safe position.

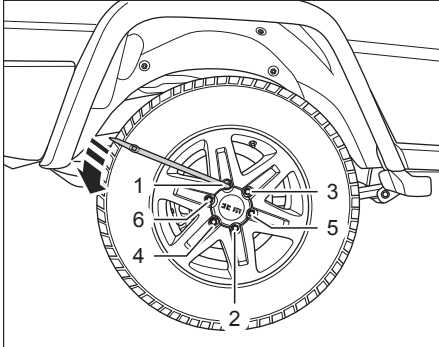
To prevent vehicle movement, the following measures shall be taken:

- 1. Apply parking brake. .**
- 2. The shift lever is pushed in neutral position**
- 3. Turn off the engine and do not start the engine while the vehicle is being lifted.**
- 4. Do not leave passengers in the vehicle.**



To further ensure that the vehicle does not move, you can place blocks in front of and behind the wheel farthest from the wheel being changed (the wheel that is diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed).

Loosen the wheel nuts



Before jacking up the vehicle, be sure to loosen the nuts on the wheels.

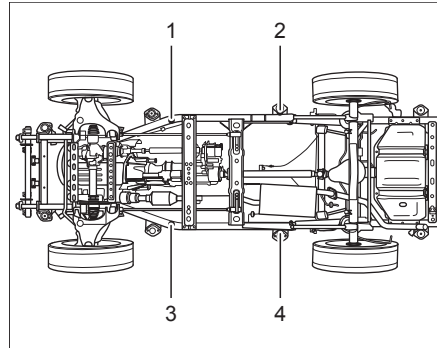
Turn the wheel nut counterclockwise in the direction of the arrow in the figure to loosen it. In order to obtain the maximum torque, insert the nut into the wrench as shown in the figure above, hold the end of the wrench handle and pull it upward. Be careful not to let the wrench disengage the nut.

Do not remove the nuts yet; just unscrew them by one cycle.

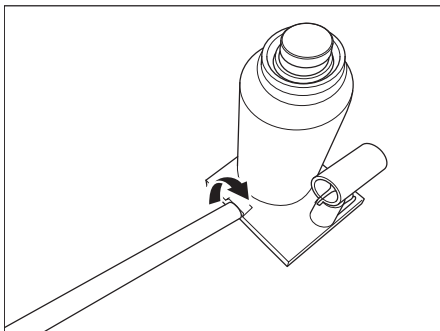
i Tips

- Only loosen each wheel nut 1 turn when the vehicle is on the jack.
- Loosen with the wheel nut wrench provided with the vehicle.

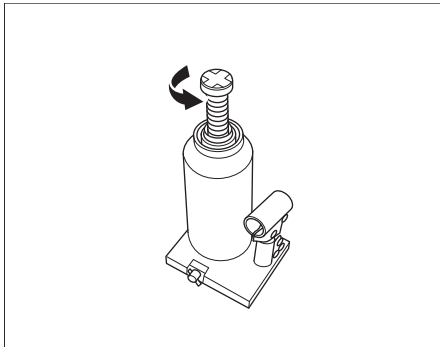
Jacking up the vehicle



Place the jack at the correct jacking point. Make sure the jack is placed on level and solid ground.

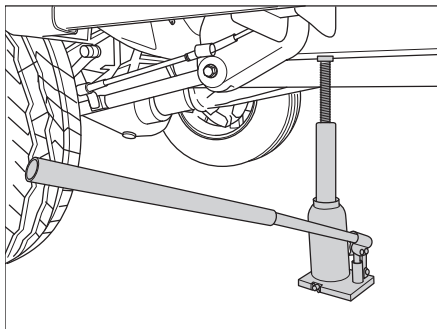


Lock the jack hydraulic switch with the jack handle in the direction of arrow.



5

Since the chassis of the vehicle is high, please also turn out the extension support anticlockwise according to the figure - arrow.



Press the jack handle up and down to lift the vehicle until the flat tire leaves the ground.

First remove the wheel nuts, and then remove the flat tire. Be careful when handling the wheel nuts, because the wheel nuts may become very hot due to driving. After removing the flat tire, place it on the ground with its outer surface facing up.

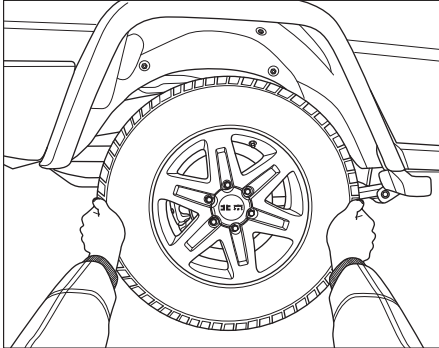
Attention

Only after loosening the nut of the replacement wheel can the lifting and subsequent replacement be carried out.

Warning

- Make sure the jack is on firm and level ground.
- Make sure the jack is placed under the proper jacking point.
- Follow the precautions for operating the jack.
- Disconnect your vehicle from the trailer (if equipped).
- When you raise the vehicle, continually observe the condition of the vehicle. If you observe the vehicle inclines obviously, stop raising it and find out the cause before trying again.

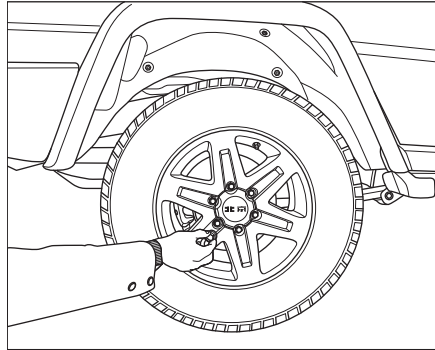
Spare tire installation



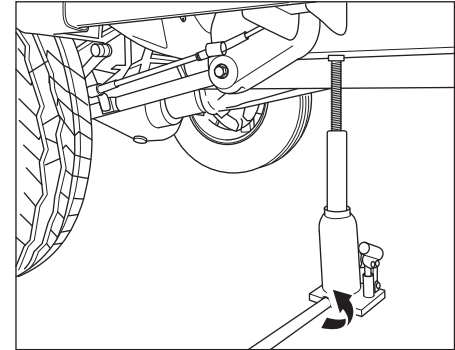
Align the mounting hole of the spare wheel with the mounting hole on the brake disc.

Attention

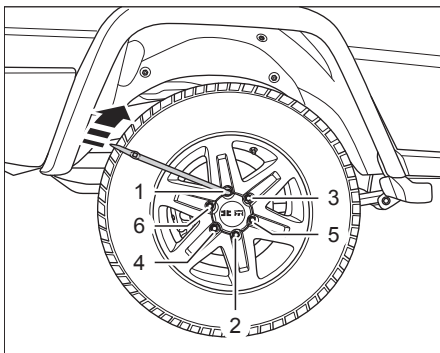
Before installing the wheel, please clear all corrosive substance off the installation surface with a wire brush.



When installing the wheel nuts, tighten the wheel nuts by hand as far as possible. Try to push the wheel backward to see whether it can be tightened further.



Turn the jack handle anticlockwise to lower the vehicle. During this process, it must be noted that personnel and body cannot be under the vehicle.



Tighten the wheel nut by the wheel assembly wrench. Do not use other tools or any lever tools other than hands, such as hammers, pipes or feet, and make sure the wrench is tightly fitted to the nut.

Tighten the wheel nuts evenly in the order shown in the figure.

5

Attention

- Tighten the wheel nuts evenly in the order shown in the figure.
- After the wheels are installed, go to the authorized dealer of BAIC as soon as possible to check whether the wheel nuts meet the tightening standards.
- If the nut is corroded or difficult to screw when replacing the wheel, the nut must be replaced when checking the tightening torque of the wheel nut and the bolt thread must be cleaned.

Warning

Threads on wheel nuts and hubs must be kept clean, and there must be no attachments such as grease.

Instructions for wheel replacement

- Install the flat tire into the flat tire well timely.
- Clean the tools and store the tools in the tool kit case.
- Check the wheel nuts torque as soon as possible.

- The damaged wheel must be repaired as soon as possible.

Attention

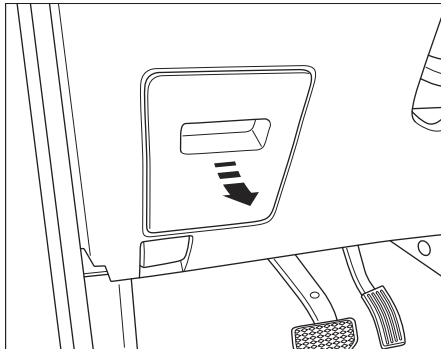
The emergency spare wheel or the replaced wheel must be reliably fixed on the spare wheel rack.

Warning

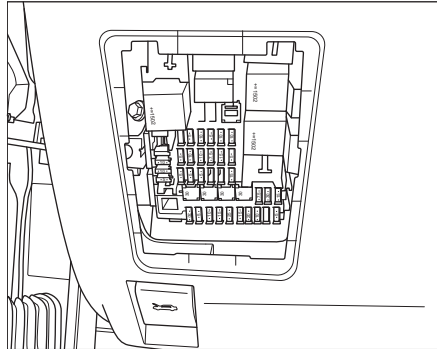
- If your spare tire is over six years old, only use it in emergency with extra care.
- Check the tire pressure as soon as possible after installing the spare wheels to make it within the specified range.

Fuse replacement

Interior fuse box



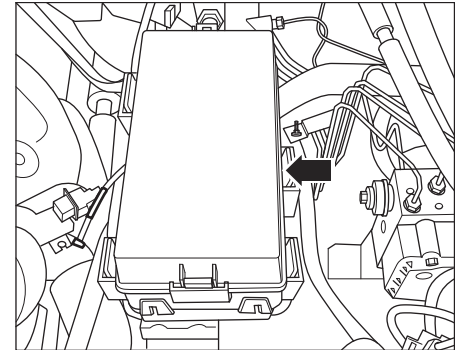
Remove the inner fuse box cover in the direction of - arrow- .



i Tips

The interior fuse box is located on the left side of the lower steering column of the dashboard and behind the knee protection cover plate, and the knee pad should be removed for easy viewing during inspection or maintenance.

Engine compartment power distribution center



i Tips

The engine compartment power distribution center is located in front of battery.

Check and replace the fuse.

If an electrical device on the car stops working, first check whether it is caused by fuse damage. It can be determined which fuse or fuses control the component according to the diagram or the location diagram on the fuse box cover. Before you can't determine whether the damaged fuse is the cause of the fault, you can replace all the damaged fuses and check whether the electrical equipment can work normally. If there is still a fault, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC.

Pull out the fuse that shuts down the electrical equipment and check it.

5

Check for the blown wire in the fuse. If the fuse has blown (the fuse shown in the figure has been disconnected), replace it with a spare fuse with the same or lower ampere value.

If there is no spare fuse for replacement, making the vehicle unable to move, the fuse with the same or lower ampere value can be removed from other circuits for replacement. However, it must be confirmed that you do not use this circuit temporarily, such as cigarette lighter or radio. Make sure that removing the fuse will not affect the vehicle driving.

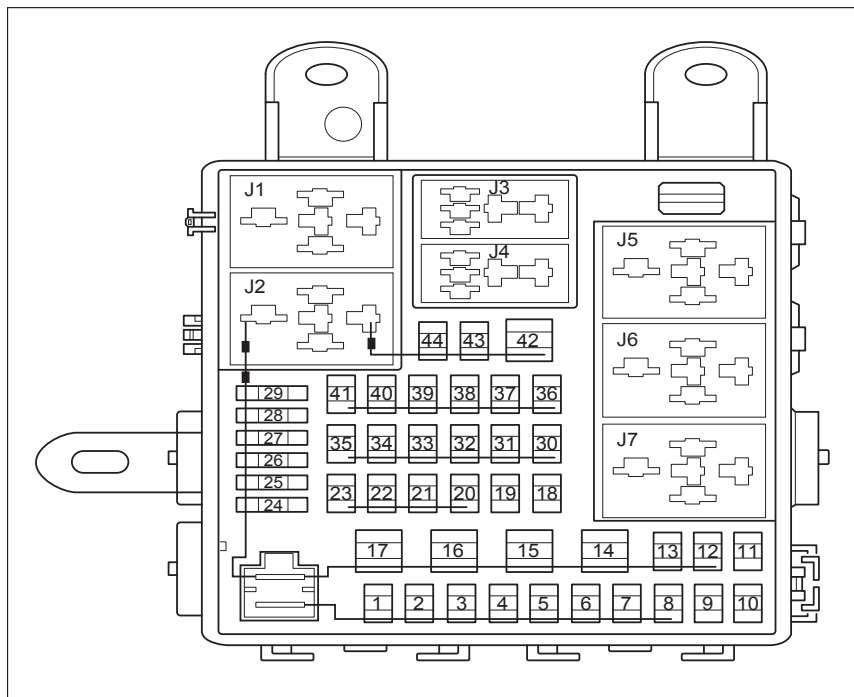
If the replaced fuse with the same rated value is blown again in a short time, it indicates that there may be serious electrical failure in the vehicle, at this time, leave the blown fuse on the circuit and contact the authorized dealer of BAIC.

Attention

If you replace a blown fuse with a spare fuse with a lower ampere value, it may blow again. If troubleshooting, it should also be replaced with fuses with correct rating as soon as possible.

In-vehicle fuse box layout

Equipped with gasoline engine models (3.0T models)



Specifications and functions of in-vehicle fuses

Position	Specification	Function
1	30A	B+
2	30A	220V
3	10A	Left front door module
4	10A	BCM Lighting
5	20A	BCM door lock
6	10A	BCM Lighting
7	20A	Four-wheel drive controller
8	10A	Left rear door module
9	10A	Interior light
10	5A	AV / Rear-row screen / Amplifier
11	15A	12V
12	30A	Sunroof / Recorder
13	7.5A	PEPS
14	30A	Front passenger / right rear seat adjustment
15	30A	Right glass motor
16	30A	Driver/left rear seat adjustment
17	30A	Left glass motor
18	25A	Cigarette lighter ACC
19	5A	Gateway IG
20	10A	Rear display screen
21	5A	Seat module
22	5A	Air conditioner

Position	Specification	Function
23	30A	Pedal lever module
24	5A	PEPS
25	30A	Driver/left rear seat heating
26	30A	Front passenger/right rear seat heating
27	15A	BCM
28	30A	Power amplifier
29	15A	Front fog light
30	5A	ESP/Shift mechanism
31	15A	Steering wheel heating
32	7.5A	Body / roof
33	10A	Instrument / Central Control /TPMS
34	10A	Airbag
35	5A	IG+
36	10A	Right rear door module
37	10A	Right front door module
38	5A	Gateway
39	15A	Video & audio
40	5A	Instrument
41	5A	Air Conditioning / Central Control / Brake Switch
42	30A	Rear defrost
43	—	Reserved
44	—	Reserved
J1	—	Reserved

Position	Specification	Function
J2	Small relay	Defroster relay
J3	Small relay	Left front fog light relay
J4	Small relay	Right front fog light relay
J5	Small relay	ACC relay
J6	Small relay	IG relay
J7	—	Reserved

 **Warning**

Using an inappropriate or repaired fuse can cause a fire or personal injury or death.

 **Attention**

Some fuses must be replaced by the authorized dealer of BAIC. For details, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC.

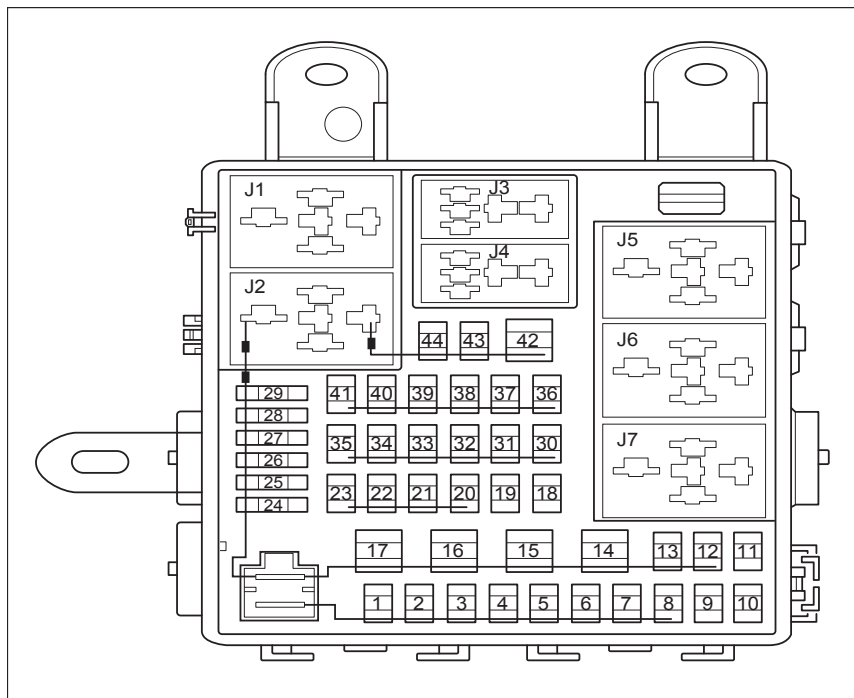
 **Tips**

The fuse contents described above are not guaranteed to apply to each vehicle model. If you need to know the purpose of the fuse in detail, please check the real vehicle. The fuses depend on the vehicle model.

An electrical device may be equipped with several fuses, or several electrical devices share one fuse.

In-vehicle fuse box layout

Equipped with gasoline engine models (2.3T models)



Specifications and functions of in-vehicle fuses

Position	Specification	Function
1	30A	B+
2	30A	220V Power
3	10A	Left front door module
4	10A	BCM Lighting power supply
5	20A	BCM door lock power supply
6	10A	BCM Lighting power supply
7	20A	4WD controller power supply
8	10A	Left rear door module power supply
9	10A	Interior lamp power
10	5A	AV ACC Power
11	15A	Passenger seat adjustment power supply
12	30A	Sunroof power supply
13	7.5A	PEPS power supply
14	30A	Passenger seat adjustment power supply
15	30A	Left window regulator motor
16	30A	Driver's seat adjustment power
17	30A	Left glass regulator motor
18	15A	Cigarette lighter ACC power supply
19	5A	Gateway IG1 power supply
20	10A	Rear display screen power supply
21	5A	Seat module

Position	Specification	Function
22	5A	A/C IGN2 power supply
23	20A	Pedal module power supply
24	5A	PEPS power supply
25	30A	Driver/left rear seat heating power supply
26	30A	Front passenger/left rear seat heating power supply
27	15A	BCM power supply
28	30A	Power amplifier power supply
29	15A	Front fog light power supply
30	5A	ESP Shift mechanism
31	15A	TCU IGN1 power supply
32	7.5A	Body & Roof
33	10A	Instrument & central control & tire pressure monitoring module & 4WD switch
34	10A	Airbag module IGN1 power supply
35	5A	IGN1 power supply
36	10A	Right rear door module power supply
37	10A	Right front door module power supply
38	5A	Gateway power
39	15A	AV & OBD interface power supply
40	5A	Instrument power supply
41	5A	A/C & central control power supply
42	30A	Rear windshield defrost power supply

Position	Specification	Function
43	—	Reserved
44	—	Reserved
J1	—	Reserved
J2	Small relay	Defroster relay
J3	Small relay	ING2 relay
J4	Small relay	Front fog light relay
J5	Small relay	ACC relay
J6	Small relay	IGN1 relay
J7	—	Reserved

 **Warning**

Using an inappropriate or repaired fuse can cause a fire or personal injury or death.

 **Attention**

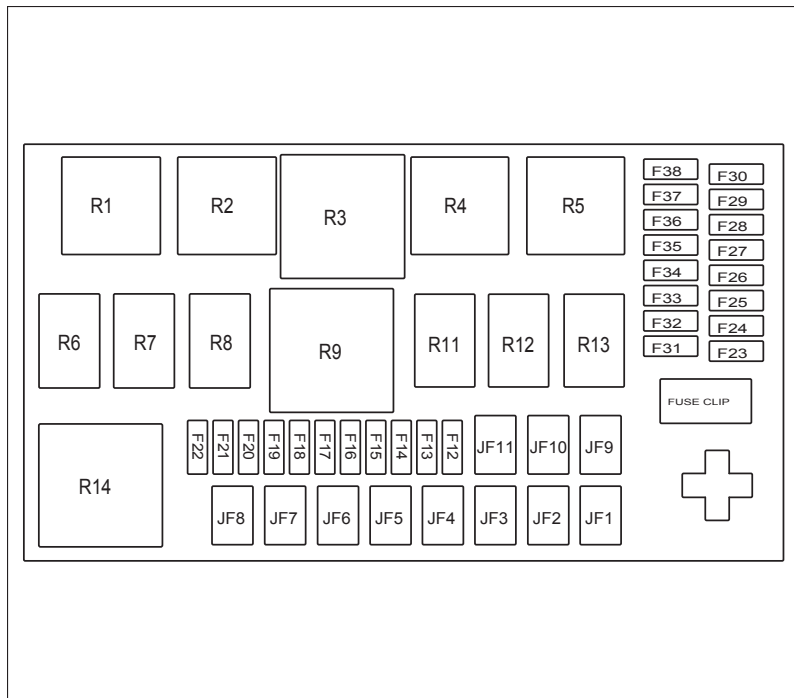
Some fuses must be replaced by the authorized dealer of BAIC. For details, please contact the authorized dealer of BAIC.

 **Tips**

The fuse contents described above are not guaranteed to apply to each vehicle model. If you need to know the purpose of the fuse in detail, please check the real vehicle. The fuses depend on the vehicle model.

An electrical device may be equipped with several fuses, or several electrical devices share one fuse.

Engine compartment power distribution center layout (3.0T model)



Engine compartment power distribution center specifications and functions

Position	Specification	Function
R1	Small relay	Main relay
R2	Small relay	Start relay
R3	—	Reserved
R4	Small relay	Low-beam relay
R5	Small relay	Horn Relay
R6	Small relay	Compressor relay
R7	Small relay	headlight washer relay
R8	Small relay	Water pump relay
R9	—	Reserved
R11	Small relay	Low speed wiper relay
R12	Small relay	High speed wiper relay
R13	Small relay	Fuel pump relay
R14	—	Reserved
JF1	60A	IEC
JF2	40A	ESP

Position	Specification	Function
JF3	—	Reserved
JF4	—	Reserved
JF5	30A	IG1
JF6	40A	Air blower
JF7	30A	Starter
JF8	30A	Main relay
JF9	30A	Front wiper
JF10	30A	Headlamp washing
JF11	60A	IEC
F12	7.5A	EMS
F13	15A	Horn
F14	30A	Low-beam light
F15	10A	Water pump
F16	10A	Compressor
F17	—	Reserved
F18	—	Reserved
F19	20A	Oil pump
F20	25A	ESP
F21	5A	Headlight adjustment
F22	10A	TCU
F23	—	Reserved
F24	—	Reserved
F25	15A	Engine system sensor
F26	15A	Injectors & ignition coils
F27	5A	Start feedback

Position	Specification	Function
F28	10A	Engine controller
F29	—	Reserved
F30	—	Reserved
F31	—	Reserved
F32	—	Reserved
F33	—	Reserved
F34	—	Reserved
F35	—	Reserved
F36	—	Reserved
F37	20A	Reserve
F38	15A	Reserve

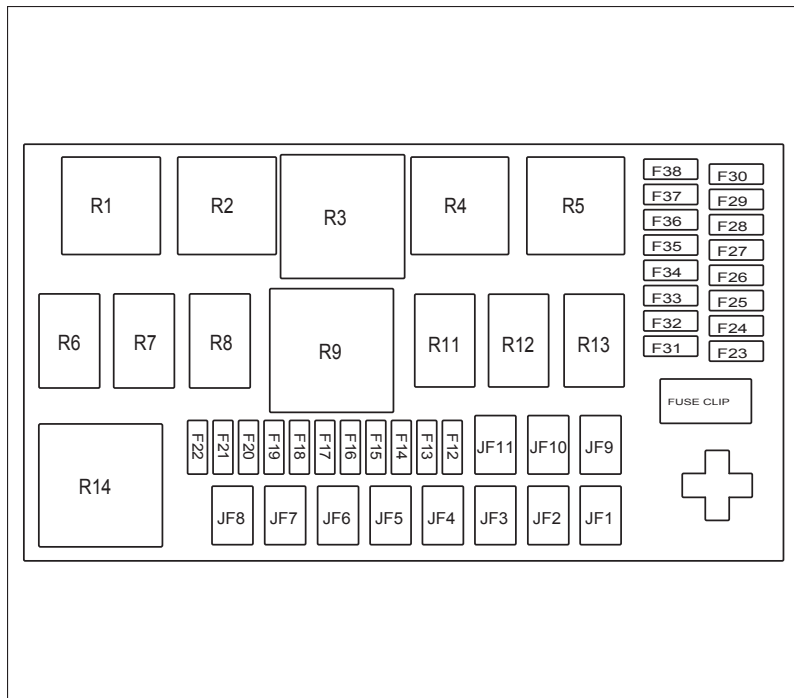
Tips

As shown in the picture, there is a spare fuse in the engine compartment power distribution center, which can be replaced with a spare fuse if the fuse on your vehicle is damaged.

The fuse contents described above are not guaranteed to apply to each vehicle model. If you need to know the purpose of the fuse in detail, please check the real vehicle. The fuses depend on the vehicle model.

An electrical device may be equipped with several fuses, or several electrical devices share one fuse.

Engine compartment power distribution center layout (2.3T model)



Engine compartment power distribution center specifications and functions

Position	Specification	Function
R1	Small relay	Main relay
R2	Small relay	Starter relay
R3	Small relay	Fan high-speed relay
R4	Small relay	Low-beam relay
R5	Small relay	Horn Relay
R6	Small relay	Compressor relay
R7	Small relay	headlight washer relay
R8	—	Reserved
R9	Small relay	Fan high-speed relay
R11	Small relay	Low speed wiper relay
R12	Small relay	High speed wiper relay
R13	Small relay	Fuel pump relay
R14	Small relay	Fan low-speed relay
JF1	60A	IEC power supply

Position	Specification	Function
JF2	40A	ESP power supply
JF3	60A	Low-speed fan
JF4	40A	High-speed fan 1
JF5	30A	IG1/ACC power supply
JF6	40A	Air blower
JF7	30A	IG2/Starter power supply
JF8	40A	Main relay
JF9	30A	Front wiper
JF10	30A	Headlight cleaning
JF11	40A	High-speed fan 2
F12	10A	EMS power supply
F13	15A	Horn
F14	30A	Low-beam light
F15	—	Reserved
F16	10A	Compressor clutch
F17	—	Reserved
F18	—	Reserved
F19	20A	Oil pump
F20	25A	ESP
F21	5A	Headlight level adjustment
F22	5A	TCU power supply
F23	—	Reserved
F24	—	Reserved
F25	15A	Fuel injector sensor
F26	15A	Ignition coil

Position	Specification	Function
F27	5A	Start feedback
F28	—	Reserved
F29	—	Reserved
F30	—	Reserved
F31	—	Reserved
F32	—	Reserved
F33	—	Reserved
F34	—	Reserved
F35	—	Reserved
F36	—	Reserved
F37	20A	Reserve
F38	15A	Reserve

Tips

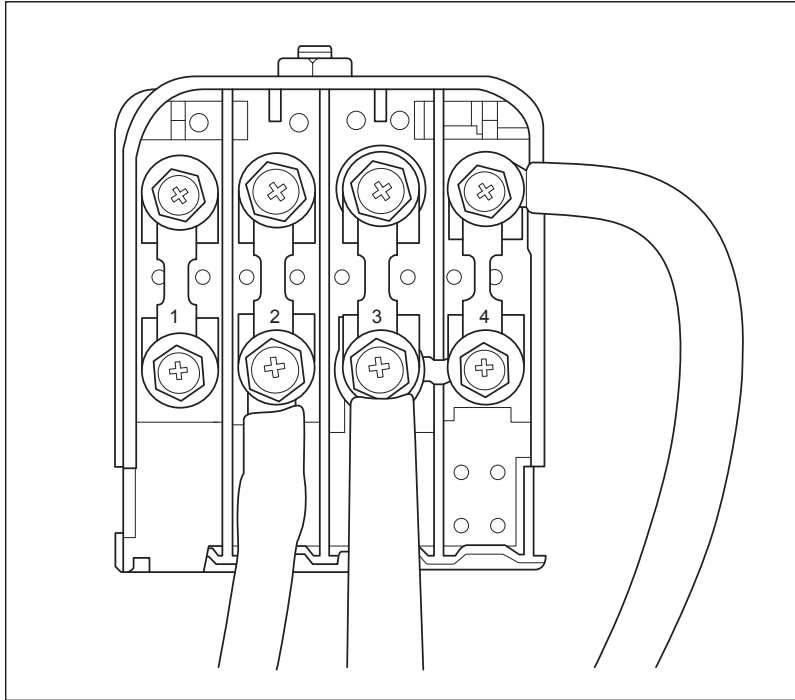
As shown in the picture, there is a spare fuse in the engine compartment power distribution center, which can be replaced with a spare fuse if the fuse on your vehicle is damaged.

The fuse contents described above are not guaranteed to apply to each vehicle model. If you need to know the purpose of the fuse in detail, please check the real vehicle. The fuses depend on the vehicle model.

An electrical device may be equipped with several fuses, or several electrical devices share one fuse.

Fuse box layout on battery

Equipped with gasoline engine models (2.3T models)

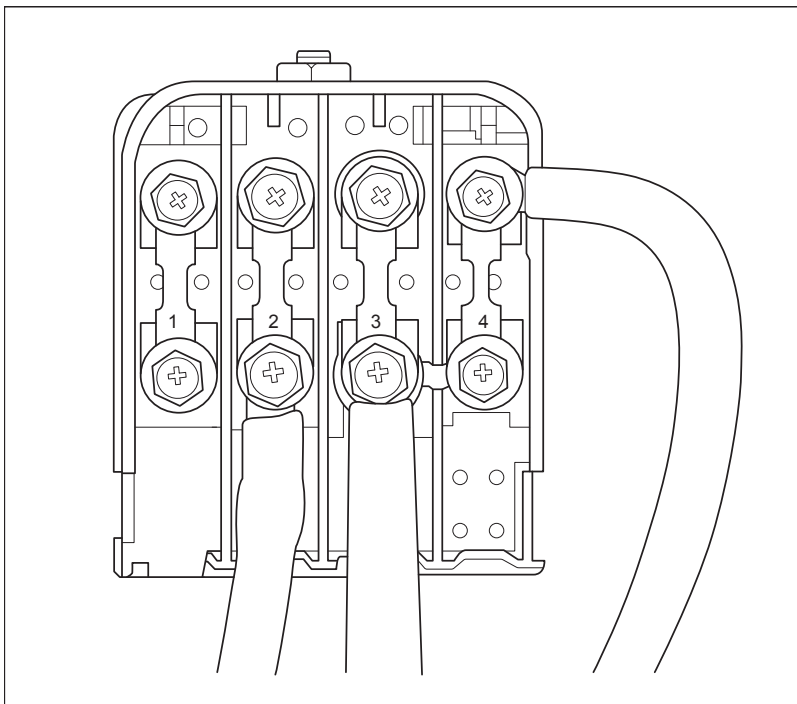


Specifications and functions of in-vehicle fuses

Position	Specification	Function
1	125A	Reserved
2	175A	Engine compartment fuse box power supply
3	175A	Alternator
4	80A	Dashboard fuse box

Fuse box layout on battery

Equipped with gasoline engine models (3.0T models)



Specifications and functions of in-vehicle fuses

Position	Specification	Function
1	60A	Right fan
2	175A	Engine compartment fuse box power supply
3	175A	Alternator
4	60A	Left fan

Replace the bulbs

Usually, it is impossible to replace bulbs without removing other vehicle parts first, especially for bulbs that can only be operated from the front engine compartment. So this job requires professional skills.

Therefore, we recommend that you go to the authorized dealer of BAIC to replace the bulb.

Warning

- **Pay special attention when working in the engine compartment!**
- **The bulb is pressurized and may explode when replaced-pay attention to the danger of injury!**

Emergency start

If the engine of the vehicle cannot be started due to battery discharge, the battery of other vehicles can be used to start by jumper cable, and the following points must be paid attention to:

- The rated voltage of the power supply battery must be 12V, and its capacity (Ah) must not be lower than that of the discharged automobile battery.
- Only jumper cables with large enough cross-sections can be used and pay attention to the instructions of the cable manufacturer.
- Only jumper cables with insulating electrode clamps can be used.

Warning

Never charge a frozen battery-explosion danger! Even if the battery is thawed, the acid solution of the battery may overflow during charging, causing corrosion damage, so the frozen battery must be replaced.

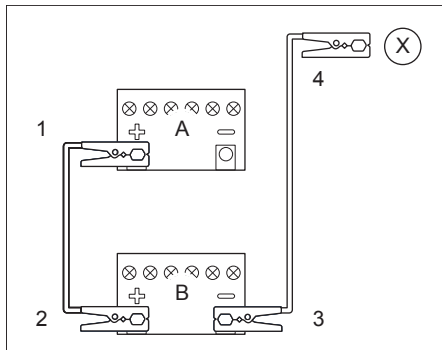
Attention

When jump starting, protect the disabled vehicle from contacting the booster vehicle. Otherwise, once the positive poles of the two batteries are connected, the current will be connected immediately, which will cause danger.

Read and follow the relevant Warnings before operating the batteries.

Jumper cable

When bumping a battery, the positive terminal must be connected first, and then the negative terminal.



1. Wear protective glasses and remove metal accessories such as watches and bracelets to prevent electric shock;
2. Turn the ignition key to LOCK position.
3. Connect one end of the red cable -1- to the positive (+) of the dead battery "A".
4. The other end -2- is connected to the positive (+) side of the power supply battery "B".

5. Connect one end of the black cable -3- to the negative pole (-) of the power supply battery "B", and the other end -4- to the engine block of the depleted battery "A" or the metal part that is fixedly connected to the engine block. .
6. Start the vehicle with the power supply battery installed, let it run at idle speed, and then start the engine of the vehicle with the power shortage battery, which needs to run for a period of time, so that the generator can charge the power shortage battery.
7. Remove the cables in the reverse order of the above. When disassembling, be careful not to be hurt by the rotating belt or fan.

Attention

- **Place the jumper cables in position to prevent them from touching the moving parts of the engine.**
- **When removing the jumper cable, it is necessary to turn on the blower or the rear windshield heater of the vehicle with a dead battery, which can reduce the voltage peak generated when removing the cable.**
- **In order to ensure successful jumper, the engine should be in idle running state during disassembly.**

 **Warning**

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

- **The engine compartment is a dangerous area. Improper operation may cause injuries or deaths.**
- **Do not connect the negative cable directly to the negative terminal of the battery without electricity, otherwise sparks will be generated when the cable is connected. The combustible gas produced by the battery may be ignited by sparks, causing explosion accidents.**
- **Do not connect the negative cable to the components of the fuel system or the brake pipeline, which may cause fire.**
- **Do not lean over the battery during operation to avoid being burned by acid.**
- **Do not touch open flame, otherwise it may cause explosion**

Emergent traction

The front and rear of the vehicle are equipped with traction rings for traction. When your vehicle breaks down or an accident occurs, you can use the front or rear traction rings as traction points to tow your vehicle.

Attention

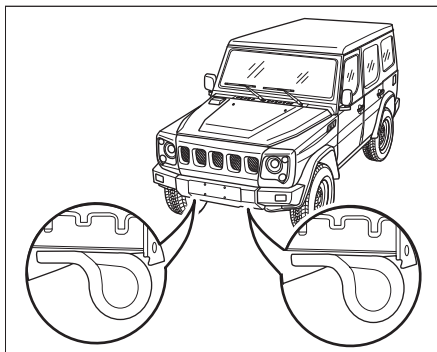
Towing rings should not be used to tow other vehicles, and should never be used to tow trailers.

The best traction method is to use a special tractor. If suspension traction (front wheel lifting) is required or the vehicle must be towed with four wheels on the ground at the same time, attention shall be paid to:

- Turn on the hazard Warning lights when the ignition key is in the "ON" position or the start/stop button is in the "RUN" mode.
- The transmission shift lever needs to be in the neutral or "N" position, and the transfer case shift lever or the transfer case electronic switch needs to be in the 2H position.

- For the automatic transmission model II, if you need to tow the vehicle, please be sure to put the transmission in the "N" gear through the "P" gear unlocking mechanism (the "P" gear emergency unlocking of the transmission" on page 185).

Front drag



The vehicle has two front traction rings, which are symmetrically distributed on the left and right sides of the lower part of the vehicle's front bumper as shown in the figure.

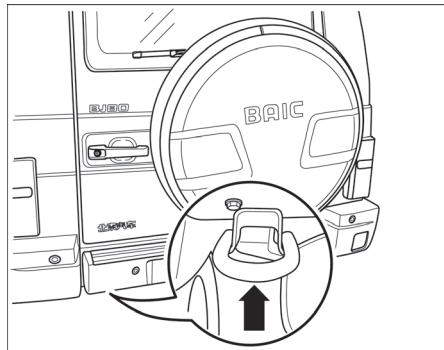
Warning

- **Unless you have the experience, do not tow other vehicle to avoid accidents.**

Attention

- **The driver in the towed vehicle must turn on the hazard Warning lights and follow the local laws and regulations.**
- **Be sure to strain the tow rope.**

Rear towing



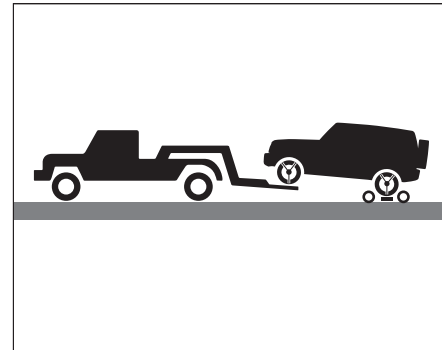
The rear traction ring (shown at the -Arrow-) is installed on the welding plate at the rear of the vehicle

Vehicle towing

If the vehicle needs to be towed, it is recommended that you entrust the authorized dealer of BAIC or a commercial trailer company to handle it. When you contact them, you must tell them which method you need to use to drag the vehicle.

Using proper equipment in towing can prevent damage to the vehicle. Personnel of commercial trailer companies are familiar with national / provincial and local Trailer laws and can seek their help!

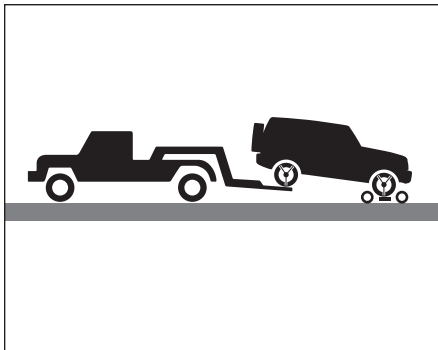
Drag from the front



Attention

Do not drag the vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground. When lifting the wheel, pay attention to make sure that the other end opposite to lifting end has proper leaving-off ground clearance. Otherwise, the bumper or body base plate may be damaged in towing.

Drag from the rear

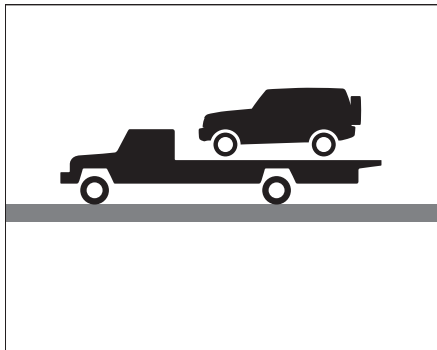


Attention

Don't tow the car from the rear when the front wheel is on the ground, because this may cause serious damage to the transmission.

This method is used to drag the vehicle. The distance of the automatic vehicle shall not exceed 50km, and the speed shall not exceed 50km per hour. It must be placed in gear N.

Use a platform truck



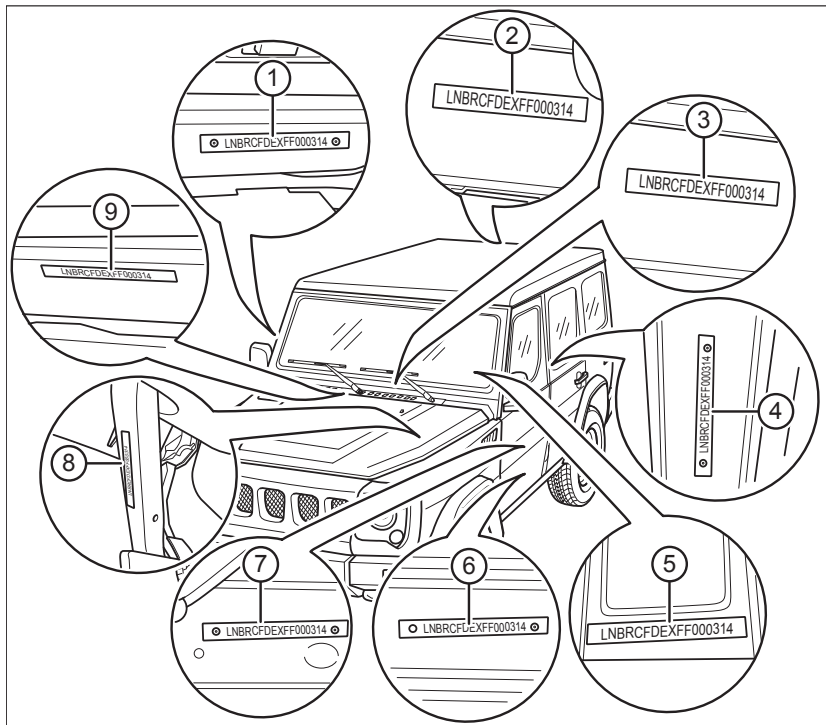
Attention

Pay attention to exert parking brake and fix four wheels, to prevent vehicle from moving during emergent braking.

6. Technical data

Identification number.....	302
Vehicle parameters.....	307

Identification number



In addition to the vehicle identification number (VIN) on the vehicle data plate, it is also marked in the following places: the rear end of the right longitudinal beam of the frame -1-, the inner panel of the tailgate -2-, the back of the dashboard body -3-, the left B-pillar Inside -4-, left windshield bottom -5-, front floor -6-, left front door inner panel -7-, upper brake pedal -8-, middle of lower air chamber (only when the engine compartment hood is fully opened) Visible) -9-.

In addition to marking the vehicle identification code on the vehicle, you can also connect the vehicle with the diagnostic tester by the vehicle OBD interface, select the engine controller EMS according to the model, and read the vehicle identification number VIN of the controller.

Purchase channels and contact information of the diagnostic tester.

At this stage, the diagnostic tester has two systems:

Accessory coding: T11200001

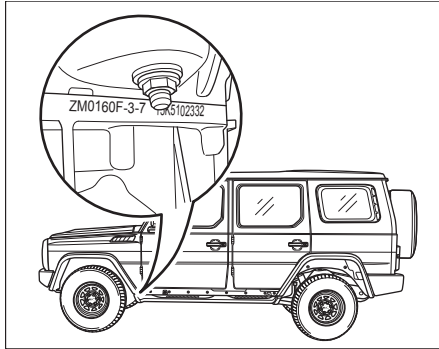
Accessory Name: BAIC diagnostic

Accessory coding:

Accessory name: PAD diagnostic tester kit

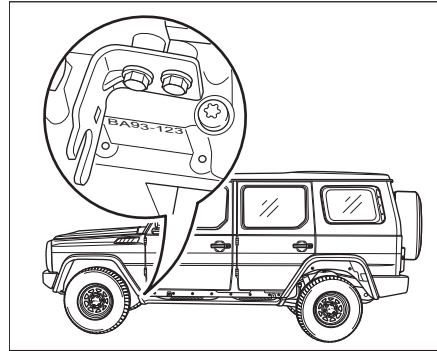
Engine, Transmission and Transfer Case Coding

Transmission code (manual models with gasoline engine)



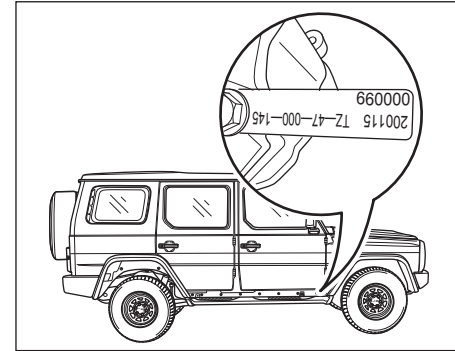
The transmission code is stamped on the transmission housing

Transmission code (automatic transmission model with gasoline engine)

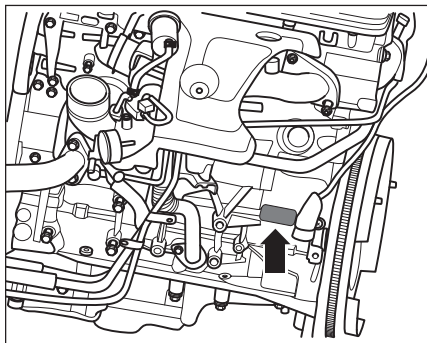
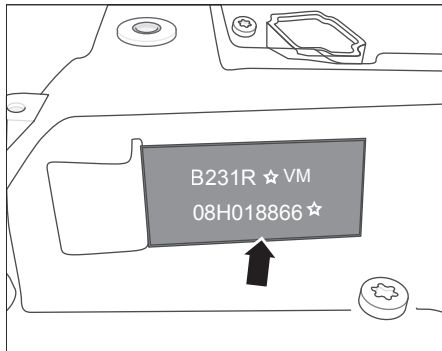


The transmission code is stamped on the transmission housing

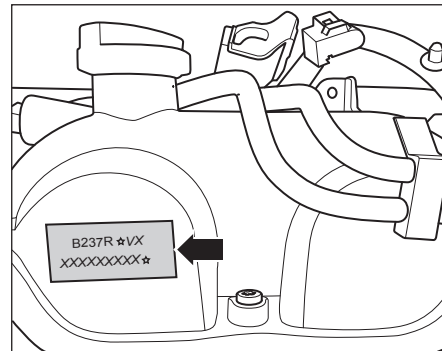
Transfer case code (vehicles with gasoline engine)



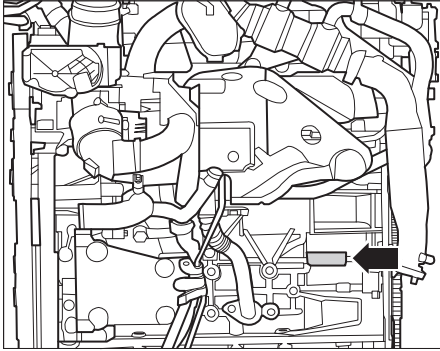
The transfer case code is stamped on the transfer case.

Engine model and number (gasoline engine)

The engine model and number shall be engraved on the cylinder block and pasted on the hood.

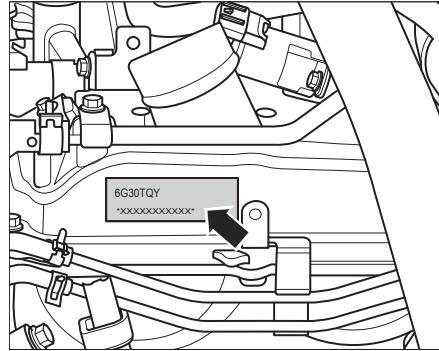
Engine model and number (B237R engine)

The engine code of the B237R gasoline model is affixed to the engine block.

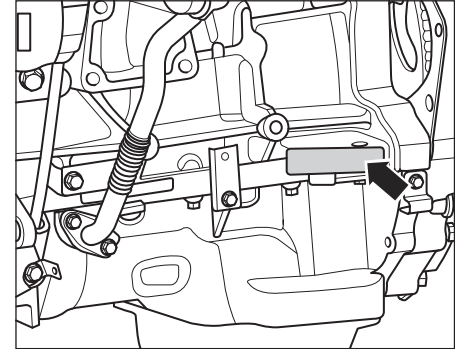


The engine code of the B237R gasoline model is engraved on the engine block.

Engine model and number (6G30T engine)



The engine code of the 6G30T gasoline model is affixed to the engine block.



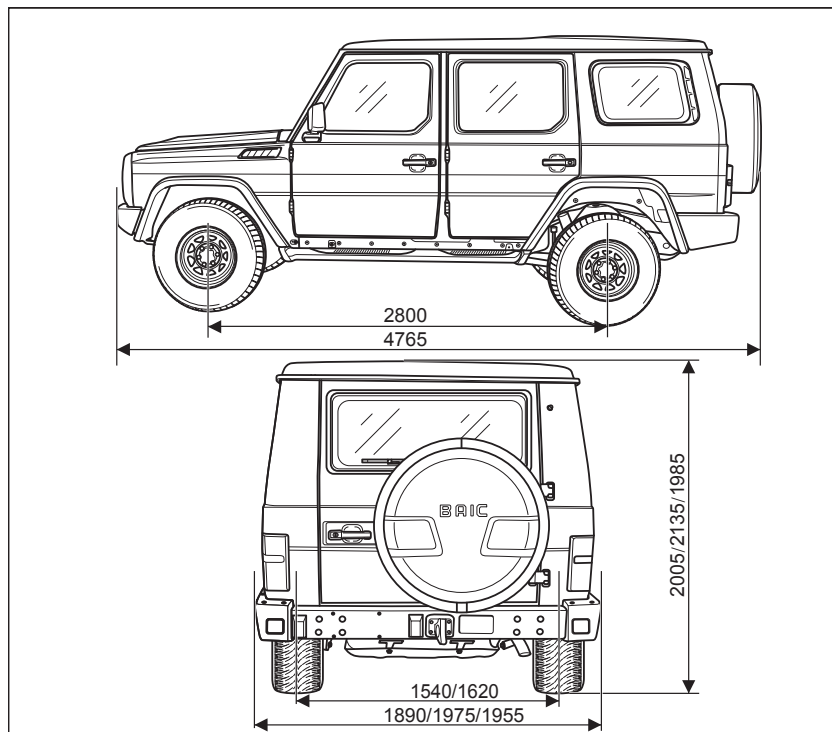
The engine code of the 6G30T gasoline model is affixed to the engine block.

Vehicle data nameplate

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the location of the vehicle data plate is as follows

- The vehicle data plate is affixed to the middle and lower part of the B-pillar on the right.
- The following information can be read on the data nameplate:
 1. Vehicle Identification Number
 2. Brand, complete vehicle model;
 3. Engine model, maximum net engine power
 4. Engine displacement, maximum allowable gross mass
 5. Number of passengers, year of manufacture and other information

Vehicle parameters



Project	Dimension
Total length (mm)	4765
Total width (excluding external rear-view mirror) (mm)	1890/1975/1955
Total height (mm)	2005/2135/1985
Axle distance (mm)	2800
Minimum ground clearance (mm)	215
Front wheelbase (mm)	1540/1620
Rear wheelbase (mm)	1540/1620
Drive Type	AWD
The emission level of the vehicle when it leaves the factory	National VI / National VI (6b)

The name and position of the part that is not included in the outer dimensions of the vehicle according to GB1589: exterior rear view mirror.

The exterior mirrors are located in the front center of the left and right front doors and above the door hinges.

Mass

Vehicle curb weight status (kg)	Complete vehicle kerb mass [*]	2285
	Complete vehicle kerb mass	2295
	Complete vehicle kerb mass [^]	2315
	Complete vehicle kerb mass [°]	2281
	Front axle load mass [*]	1167
	Front axle load mass #	1173
	Front axle load mass [^]	1160
	Front axle load mass [°]	1160
	Rear axle load mass [*]	1118
	Rear axle load mass #	1122
	Rear axle load mass [^]	1155
	Rear axle load mass [°]	1121
	Rear axle load mass [△]	1125

Maximum gross mass state (kg)	Gross mass [*]	2785
	Gross mass #	2795
	Gross mass [^]	2815
	Gross mass [°]	2815
	Front axle load mass [*]	1318
	Front axle load mass #	1322
	Front axle load mass [^]	1315
	Front axle load mass [°]	1256
	Front axle load mass [△]	1285
	Rear axle load mass [*]	1467
	Rear axle load mass #	1473
	Rear axle load mass [^]	1500
	Rear axle load mass [°]	1559
Rear axle load mass [△]	1500	
Rated Load Mass [°]	404	

^{*} Only for BJ2030F8VMBT, BJ2034F8VAK, BJ2034F8VAB models

[#] Only for BJ2030F8VABT, BJ2030F8VA3B, BJ2030F8VA4B models

[^] Only for BJ2032F8VAH, BJ2034F8VAK, BJ2034F8VAB models

[°] Only for BJ5032XZHD8VAK and BJ5032XXYD8VAK models

[□] Only for BJ5032XXYD8VAK model

[△] Only for BJ2034F8VAK, BJ2034F8VAB models

Engine parameters

Engine model	B231R	B237R	6G30T
Fuel type	Petrol	Gasoline	Gasoline
Type	In-line four-cylinder	In-line four-cylinder	V-shape 6-cylinder
Emissions standards	National V	National VI (6b)	National VI (6b)
Cylinder bore (mm)	90	90	86.4
Piston stroke (mm)	90	90	85
Displacement (L)	2.29	2.29	2.99
Compression ratio	9.3:1	10:1	9.0:1
Rated power (speed) (kW/r/min)	184/5300	170/5200	206/5200
Maximum net power /speed (kw/(r/min))	170/5300	160/5200	180/5200
Maximum torque/ speed (N.m/r/min)	350/1900~4300	345/1900- 4000	420/1750-3500
Idle speed (r/min) (when the A/C is not working)	750	700±50	650±50
Idle speed (r/min) (when the A/C is working)	750	700±50	700±50

Dynamic performance

0-100km/h starting continuous shifting acceleration (s)	≤13.0
0-100km/h starting continuous shifting acceleration (s) °	≤11.5
0-100km/h starting continuous shifting acceleration (s) #	≤12.5
Maximum speed (km/h) °	≥180
Maximum gradability (%) On dry and hard cement pavement	≥ 60(4L) ≥40(2H)

* Only for BJ2030F8VMBT and BJ2032F8VAH, BJ5032XZHD-8VAK, BJ5032XXYD8VAK models

Only for BJ2030F8VABT, BJ2030F8VA3B, BJ2030F8VA4B models

° Only for BJ2034F8VAK, BJ2034F8VAB models

Economical efficiency

90Km/h constant speed fuel consumption (L/100km)	≤12
90Km/h constant speed fuel consumption (L/100km)	≤13.5
90Km/h constant speed fuel consumption (L/100km)	≤10
Fuel consumption for comprehensive working conditions (L/100km) *	≤10.8
Fuel consumption for comprehensive working conditions (L/100km) #	≤11.2
Fuel consumption for comprehensive working conditions (L/100km) □	≤11.1

* Only for BJ2030F8VMBT, BJ5032XZHD8VAK and BJ5032XXYD8VAK, BJ2034F8VAK, BJ2034F8VAB models

Only for BJ2030F8VABT, BJ2030F8VA3B, BJ2030F8VA4B, BJ2032F8VAH, BJ2034F8VAK, BJ2034F8VAB models

^ Only for BJ2032F8VAH model

□ Only for BJ5032XZHD8VAK and BJ5032XXYD8VAK models

Structure parameter

Min. turning radius (m)	12.8/12.5
Approach Angle (°) **	39/34
Departure Angle (°) **	33/27
The number of seats (including driver)	4/5
The number of seats (including driver) #	2

** Only for B80C model

Only for BJ5032XZHD8VAK and BJ5032XXYD8VAK models

Front wheel alignment parameters (B80C/B80C-M01/M02)

Front wheel camber	$-20'_{0} \text{ }^{+20} / 0^{\circ} \pm 30'$
Kingpin caster	$3^{\circ}50' \pm 30' / 5^{\circ}30' \pm 30'$
Kingpin inclination angle	$12^{\circ}30' \pm 30' / 13^{\circ}24' \pm 20'$
Total front toe angle	$0^{\circ}0' \sim 0^{\circ}8'30' / 0^{\circ}18' \pm 6'$

Wheels

Project	Front wheel	Rear wheel	Spare tire
Cold state	(220±10)kPa	(220±10)kPa	(220±10)kPa
Specification of rim*	17×7.5J		
Specification of rim#	18×8J		
Specification of rim*	20×8.5J		
Tire specification#	265/70R17		
Tire specification#	265/65R18		
Tire specification [☆]	275/50R20		
Wheel nut torque, N.m	140±10 (front/rear wheel), 110±5 (spare tire)		

* Only for BJ2030F8VMBT model

Only for BJ2030F8VABT, BJ2030F8VA3B, BJ2032F8VAH, BJ5032XZHD8VAK and BJ5032XXYD8VAK, BJ2034F8VAK, BJ2034F8VAB models

☆ Only for BJ2030F8VA4B models and BJ2032F8VAH, BJ2034F8VAK, BJ2034F8VAB models

Brake System

Brake pedal free travel (mm)	≤10
Clutch pedal free travel (mm)	25
Front brake pads usage limit (excluding thickness of back plate) (mm)	3
Service limit of rear brake friction plate (excluding thickness of back plate) (mm)	3

Dosage or filling amount

Operating fluid filling part	Working fluid consumption (Reference)	Name of working fluid
Fuel tank (L)	88 (National V), 85 (National VI)	B201R/B231R/B237R is 95# and above gasoline; 6G30T is 92# and above gasoline;
Engine Oil (B231R) (L)	5.5	Caltex TITAN EM 5C 530 SAAB / API SN 5W-30
Engine Oil (B237R) (L)	5.5	SN 5W-30
Engine Oil (6G30T) (L)	7.5	SN 5W-30
Automatic transmission oil (L) (6AT)	11	NWS9638
Automatic transmission oil (L) (8AT)	8.5	Shell L12108
Transmission oil (Gasoline vehicle manual transmission) (L)	2.8	(GL-4)75W/90
Transfer case (L)	1.5±0.05	(ATF Dexlon III)
	1.8L (6G30T model)	SAE GL-4 75W85
Coolant (L)	11.8	Glycol-based antifreeze
Coolant (L) (3.0T model)	11 (high pressure)	Glycol-based antifreeze
	4.5 (low pressure)	Glycol-based antifreeze
Windscreen washer fluid (L)	4.0	—
Power steering fluid (L)	1.2	ATF IIIH or PanDongxing hydraulic transmission oil CHF 202
Low temperature resistant power steering fluid (recommended when the ambient temperature is lower than 20 °C)	1.2	Pandongxing hydraulic transmission oil CHF 202
Brake fluid (L)	0.63	HZY4 (DOT4)
Front axle gear oil (L)	1.5	Tropical area 80W-90/GL-5; cold area 75W-90/GL-5 (below -12°C)
Gear oil of rear axle (L)	2.8	Tropical area 80W-90/GL-5; cold area 75W-90/GL-5 (below -12°C)

- No description

Electrical

Battery type	Lead acid battery
20h rate capacity	70Ah
Voltage and Electrodes	12V, negative (-) grounding
Alternator output rating	13.5V/140A
Starter motor power	1.4KW

Bulb specifications

Name		Model	Specification
Headlight	High beam / low beam light	D3S	12V 35W
	Position light (daytime driving light)	LED	—
	Turn signal light	PY21WSV	12V/21W
Front fog light		H8	12V 35W
Side turn signal light		LED	—
Reverse light		W16W	12V 16W
Rear fog light (high configuration)		W21W	12V/21W
Rear combination light	Position light	LED	—
	Brake light	LED	—
	Turn signal light	LED	—
High brake light		Ceiling light	—
License plate light		LED	—
Front ceiling light		C8W	12V 8W
Rear ceiling light		C10W	12V 10W
Glove box light		C5W	12V 5W
Trunk lamp		LED	—
Atmosphere light		LED	—

- No description

7. Breakdown Call

Breakdown Call..... 316

Breakdown Call

BAIC provides rescue services 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. When your vehicle breaks down and cannot be handled by yourself, you can get help through the following methods:

- Call the local authorized dealer of BAIC:
- We will arrange rescue teams to implement rescue services in the shortest time.
- For the breakdown that occurred during the warranty period, the vehicle rescue service within the scope of warranty claim is a free rescue (including out-of-charge fare and towing fee), except for the following circumstances:
- Rescue activities without the prior consent of BAIC and its service providers;
- Vehicles already in the workshop;
- As a result of accident, robbery or man-made damage, and any damage caused by them;
- Loss caused by intentional or negligent behavior;
- Damage caused by participating in racing cars or other activities involving driving at extreme speed;
- Damage caused by installing parts not approved by BAIC or modifying vehicles without permission of BAIC.

For the vehicle rescue service that fails during the warranty period but is not within the scope of the claim, the customer shall pay for it at his own expense, including the fare, towing fee, working hours fee, and material fee.

8 Maintenance information.

Maintenance Specifications.....	318
--	------------

Maintenance Specifications

There are two kinds of maintenance specifications for this vehicle. Please carry out corresponding maintenance regularly according to the specifications.

"Class A maintenance specification" stipulates the maintenance interval under normal use conditions; If your vehicle is frequently used under the following conditions, it should be maintained in accordance with the Class B Maintenance Code:

- Frequent short-distance driving not exceeding 8km;
- Often driving in dusty environment;
- Often used as a trailer;
- Idle for a long time;
- In the environment above 32 °C , driving at high speed for more than 50% of the time;
- Off-road driving
- Driving in the desert.

In addition, please stop for refueling every time,

- Check the engine oil level and fill it as needed;
- Check windshield washer and refill as needed.

The following maintenance and inspections should be carried out monthly:

- Check tire pressure and wear;
- Check the voltage, clean the battery electrodes, and tighten them if necessary;
- Check the liquid level of coolant, brake fluid and power steering fluid, and refill if necessary;
- Whether all the lights and electrical' on the car work normally, and if there is any abnormality, they should be repaired immediately;
- Each time the user replaces the engine oil,
- Check the exhaust system;
- Check the brake hose;
- Check the engine coolant level, pipes and clips;
- Check whether there is oil leakage on the outer surface of the transmission and transfer case;
- Lubricate the sliding splines as required;

- After driving off-road, the bottom of the vehicle should be thoroughly inspected and loose parts should be tightened.

Attention

Inspection and maintenance should be carried out at any time when a component fails or when a component is suspected of not functioning, and a record of the repairs made should be kept. The first compulsory maintenance should be carried out after the new vehicle has driven 3000 kilometers. And check the vehicle.

Class A Maintenance Specifications (B201R/B231R Gasoline Models)

Maintenance Items	Maintenance time	First maintenance 5000km/6 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first	Regular maintenance 7500km/6 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Engine oil		•	•	Replace every 7500km/6 months (whichever comes first)
Engine oil filter		•	•	Replace every 7500km/6 months (whichever comes first)
Engine accessory driving belt		○(Replace if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	—
Power steering fluid		○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 60000km/36 months Whichever comes first
Automatic transmission oil		Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free
Manual transmission oil		•	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Transfer case oil		—	—	Replace every 50000km/24 months (whichever comes first) (6G30T engine model)
Spark plug (gasoline engine)		—	○(adjust if necessary)	Replace every 40000km
Air filter element		○(clean if necessary)	○(clean if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months (whichever comes first)
A/C filter element		○(clean if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months (whichever comes first) Check every 7500km (replace if necessary)
Fuel filter and bracket assembly (gasoline engine)		—	—	Replace every 20000km/12 months Whichever comes first
Engine coolant		○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Clutch system and brake system brake fluid		○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Transfer case oil (gasoline engine)		○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 60000km/36 months (whichever comes first) check every 10000km (replace if necessary)
Brake lining		○(Replace if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	—
Front and rear axle assembly gear oil		—	—	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Drive shaft spline grease		○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	—
Torque of transmission shaft connecting bolt		○	—	—

Maintenance Items	Maintenance time	First maintenance 5000km/6 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first	Regular maintenance 7500km/6 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Front/rear stabilizer bar bushings		—	—	Check every 20000km/12 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Fuel (gas) hose		—	—	No replacement, with the life of the vehicle
Differential pressure sensor and connecting hose for exhaust gas recirculation system (B237R)		○(clean if necessary)	○(clean if necessary)	Check for carbon deposits every 30,000km (replace if necessary), and clean the carbon deposits in the two connecting hoses of the differential pressure sensor.
Exhaust gas recirculation cooler(237R Model)		—	—	Clean the exhaust gas recirculation cooler air passages every 30,000km (replace if necessary). Please refer to the after-sales manual for specific operation specifications.
Ash filter assembly (fuel evaporative emission system, near carbon canister)		—	—	60000km/36 months overall replacement (whichever arrives first) (applicable to 6G30T models)

Note: ○ Inspection ● Replace — No instructions

Class B Maintenance Specifications

Maintenance Items	Maintenance time	The first maintenance interval is 2000km (subject to the purchase invoice)	Regular maintenance 5000km/3 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Engine oil		•	•	Replace every 5000km/6 months (whichever comes first)
Engine oil filter		•	•	Replace every 5000km/6 months (whichever comes first)
Engine accessory driving belt		○(Replace if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	—
Throttle body and idle valve		—	—	Check throttle body and idle bypass airway for sludge every 10000km/6 months (whichever comes first) and clean if necessary
Power steering fluid		○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months Whichever comes first
Manual transmission oil		•	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months Whichever comes first
Automatic transmission oil		Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free
Spark plug (gasoline engine)		—	—	Replace and adjust every 40000km Whichever comes first
Air filter element		○(clean if necessary)	○(clean if necessary)	Replace every 10000km/6 months Whichever comes first
A/C filter element		○(clean if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	Replace every 10000km/12 months Whichever comes first
Fuel filter and bracket assembly (gasoline engine)		—	—	Replace every 20000km/12 months Whichever comes first
Engine coolant		○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 20000km/12 months Whichever comes first
Clutch system and brake system brake fluid		○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	Replace every 40000km/24 months Whichever comes first
Transfer case oil (gasoline engine)		—	○ (refill if necessary)	From 15000km/9 months (subject to the purchase invoice) Whichever comes first Check every 20000km/12 months (the oil is normal 0-5mm under the filler port, fill or replace if necessary)
Brake lining		○(Replace if necessary)	○(Replace if necessary)	—
Front and rear axle assembly gear oil		—	—	Check every 10000km (add if necessary) Replace every 20000km/12 months (whichever comes first)

Maintenance Items	Maintenance time	The first maintenance interval is 2000km (subject to the purchase invoice)	Regular maintenance 5000km/3 months, whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Drive shaft spline grease		○ (refill if necessary)	○ (refill if necessary)	—
Torque of transmission shaft connecting bolt		○	—	—
Front/rear stabilizer bar bushings		—	—	Check every 20000km/12 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Fuel (gas) hose		—	—	No replacement, with the life of the vehicle
Differential pressure sensor and connecting hose for exhaust gas recirculation system (B237R)		○(clean if necessary)	○(clean if necessary)	Check for carbon deposits every 15000km (replace if necessary), and clean the carbon deposits in the two connecting hoses of the differential pressure sensor.
Exhaust gas recirculation cooler(237R Model)		—	—	Clean the exhaust gas recirculation cooler air passages every 15000km (replace if necessary). Please refer to the after-sales manual for specific operation specifications.
Ash filter assembly (fuel evaporative emission system, near carbon canister)		—	—	30000km/18 months overall replacement (whichever arrives first) (applicable to 6G30T models)

Note: ○ Inspection ● Replace — No instructions